This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

A propos de ce livre

Ceci est une copie numérique d'un ouvrage conservé depuis des générations dans les rayonnages d'une bibliothèque avant d'être numérisé avec précaution par Google dans le cadre d'un projet visant à permettre aux internautes de découvrir l'ensemble du patrimoine littéraire mondial en ligne.

Ce livre étant relativement ancien, il n'est plus protégé par la loi sur les droits d'auteur et appartient à présent au domaine public. L'expression "appartenir au domaine public" signifie que le livre en question n'a jamais été soumis aux droits d'auteur ou que ses droits légaux sont arrivés à expiration. Les conditions requises pour qu'un livre tombe dans le domaine public peuvent varier d'un pays à l'autre. Les livres libres de droit sont autant de liens avec le passé. Ils sont les témoins de la richesse de notre histoire, de notre patrimoine culturel et de la connaissance humaine et sont trop souvent difficilement accessibles au public.

Les notes de bas de page et autres annotations en marge du texte présentes dans le volume original sont reprises dans ce fichier, comme un souvenir du long chemin parcouru par l'ouvrage depuis la maison d'édition en passant par la bibliothèque pour finalement se retrouver entre vos mains.

Consignes d'utilisation

Google est fier de travailler en partenariat avec des bibliothèques à la numérisation des ouvrages appartenant au domaine public et de les rendre ainsi accessibles à tous. Ces livres sont en effet la propriété de tous et de toutes et nous sommes tout simplement les gardiens de ce patrimoine. Il s'agit toutefois d'un projet coûteux. Par conséquent et en vue de poursuivre la diffusion de ces ressources inépuisables, nous avons pris les dispositions nécessaires afin de prévenir les éventuels abus auxquels pourraient se livrer des sites marchands tiers, notamment en instaurant des contraintes techniques relatives aux requêtes automatisées.

Nous vous demandons également de:

+ *Ne pas utiliser les fichiers à des fins commerciales* Nous avons conçu le programme Google Recherche de Livres à l'usage des particuliers. Nous vous demandons donc d'utiliser uniquement ces fichiers à des fins personnelles. Ils ne sauraient en effet être employés dans un quelconque but commercial.

+ *Ne pas procéder à des requêtes automatisées* N'envoyez aucune requête automatisée quelle qu'elle soit au système Google. Si vous effectuez des recherches concernant les logiciels de traduction, la reconnaissance optique de caractères ou tout autre domaine nécessitant de disposer d'importantes quantités de texte, n'hésitez pas à nous contacter. Nous encourageons pour la réalisation de ce type de travaux l'utilisation des ouvrages et documents appartenant au domaine public et serions heureux de vous être utile.

+ *Ne pas supprimer l'attribution* Le filigrane Google contenu dans chaque fichier est indispensable pour informer les internautes de notre projet et leur permettre d'accéder à davantage de documents par l'intermédiaire du Programme Google Recherche de Livres. Ne le supprimez en aucun cas.

+ *Rester dans la légalité* Quelle que soit l'utilisation que vous comptez faire des fichiers, n'oubliez pas qu'il est de votre responsabilité de veiller à respecter la loi. Si un ouvrage appartient au domaine public américain, n'en déduisez pas pour autant qu'il en va de même dans les autres pays. La durée légale des droits d'auteur d'un livre varie d'un pays à l'autre. Nous ne sommes donc pas en mesure de répertorier les ouvrages dont l'utilisation est autorisée et ceux dont elle ne l'est pas. Ne croyez pas que le simple fait d'afficher un livre sur Google Recherche de Livres signifie que celui-ci peut être utilisé de quelque façon que ce soit dans le monde entier. La condamnation à laquelle vous vous exposeriez en cas de violation des droits d'auteur peut être sévère.

À propos du service Google Recherche de Livres

En favorisant la recherche et l'accès à un nombre croissant de livres disponibles dans de nombreuses langues, dont le français, Google souhaite contribuer à promouvoir la diversité culturelle grâce à Google Recherche de Livres. En effet, le Programme Google Recherche de Livres permet aux internautes de découvrir le patrimoine littéraire mondial, tout en aidant les auteurs et les éditeurs à élargir leur public. Vous pouvez effectuer des recherches en ligne dans le texte intégral de cet ouvrage à l'adresse `http://books.google.com`

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD

OF

PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY.

The French Language.

BY

DR. RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL,

AUTHOR OF THE MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM, ETC., ETC.

IN TEN PARTS.

NEW YORK. :: LONDON.

THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD

OF

PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY.

The French Language.

BY

DR. RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL,

AUTHOR OF THE MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM, ETC., ETC.

IN TEN PARTS.

NEW YORK. :: LONDON.

THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

748530

COPYRIGHT, 1901,

BY

THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

Teachers, students, and book-reviewers are requested to carefully read the "Explanation of Rosenthal's Common Sense Method of Practical Linguistry" before taking up the system itself.

Explanation of Rosenthal's Common Sense Method of Practical Linguistry.

About ten years ago the Hon. Charles Francis Adams, Jr., delivered a memorable speech before the members of Harvard University.

In a very clear, conclusive, and elaborate argument he showed that the study of Latin and Greek, as pursued in our schools and colleges, was practically worthless; that scarcely any of our students could read the ancient classics with ease and enjoyment, and that not even the teachers themselves were able to use these tongues colloquially.

He closed his speech with an eloquent appeal to the College authorities that greater attention should henceforth be paid to the study of modern languages, and many of our leading Universities have since then endeavored to act upon his advice.

But were Mr. Adams' suggestions carried out in the right spirit by any of our schools? Have the results been reached which he foretold and expected? Can our present college graduates express themselves with fluency and correctness in French, German, or Spanish? Or, isn't it rather a fact that, despite all efforts, the modern tongues have remained just as lifeless to our students as the so-called dead languages?

In our times, when international intercourse is constantly increasing, when steam and electricity are uniting the whole world into one great brotherhood, when the deep thoughts of philosophy and the marvelous discoveries of science are no longer confined to any one tongue, but are almost simultaneously expressed and carried out by all the great civilized nations,

THE PRACTICAL MASTERY OF MODERN LANGUAGES

has become an absolute necessity.

It is no longer sufficient to teach the pupils the intricacies of the German declensions or the grammatical technicalities of the French language:—*the present civilization demands higher and more practical results.*

LINGUISTRY MUST BE TAUGHT IN PLACE OF PHILOLOGY.

Our students must not only know the grammatical peculiarities of French and German, but must be enabled to use foreign languages just as readily and correctly as their own; they must not only be acquainted with the classical master-works of France or Germany, but must speak and understand the practical every-day language of common life.

Everybody knows how languages are taught in our seminaries, schools and universities.

For four, five, frequently seven years our young men and women study various text-books, manuals and grammars. They learn to parse, to analyze, to decline and conjugate; they can repeat whole pages of grammatical rules and foreign words by heart; they are capable of taking a piece of classical French or German and rendering it into smooth English; they frequently know the grammars of these tongues better than the natives themselves, and yet in

GOING ABROAD

they are utterly unable to ask for the common necessities of life in idiomatic French or German, and fail to understand the polite utterances of even a waiter or chambermaid.

LANGUAGE AND GRAMMAR

are in no sense synonymous, though our prevailing school methods might lead us to suppose so.

Grammar is but the science of language, and while without doubt necessary and desirable, it is by no means so important as the ability of speaking the language itself.

Can any one doubt this?

Look around at the majority of people you meet. Listen to their speech and examine it. Do they know the rules of English grammar? Do not the children of educated persons express themselves correctly without ever having studied a single line of grammatical definitions? Must not every one—cultivated or unrefined—speak and understand English first, before he can take up the grammatical study of his mother-tongue? Isn't it true that if grammar were a necessary element of speech nine-tenths of the American nation would surely be dumb?

Examine now in the light of these suggestions any of our school methods, and it will at once be apparent why I enter a solemn protest against them.

They are one and all

ANALYTICAL SYSTEMS

They give a multiplicity of rules and exceptions which the student cannot possibly remember when trying to speak in a foreign language; they teach theory of speech instead of practising it; they tear apart instead of building up; in a word, they educate philologists and grammarians and never try to impart practical linguistry.

THE STUDY OF GRAMMAR IS INDISPENSABLE,

"but it must be taught," as the great Erasmus long

ago advised "at the proper time and kept within proper limits."

Colloquial mastery must precede it. Grammar will then no longer confuse, but assist the pupil; it will cease to be a drudgery and hindrance and will become a plain and simple explanation of forms and idioms already mastered; it will no longer be an uncertain foundation, but will adorn, complete and cap the edifice which has been reared by practical linguistic exercises.

This is

THE TRUE OFFICE OF GRAMMAR

and in this sense it is taught throughout my method.

I have in my possession a letter from the renowned explorer of Greek antiquities,

THE LATE DR. HEINRICH SCHLIEMANN,

whom I had the privilege of knowing intimately, and whose opinion as to the merits of any language system is of unquestionable value, as he was himself a distinguished linguist,

"Your method," he writes, "is the only correct one, because it is a scientific adaptation of

NATURE'S OWN WAY,

by which all persons, whether children or adults, educated or otherwise, rapidly and correctly acquire the the language which they constantly hear and which they are instinctively impelled to imitate when resident in a foreign country."

In this cosmopolitan land of ours every intelligent observer must have noticed the ease and rapidity with which foreigners master our mother-tongue.

They have neither books, teachers, nor interpreters; they may be Russians, Germans, Frenchmen, Span-

lards, or Swedes; they generally understand nothing about the principles of grammar; they may be too young or uneducated to even read or write their own language; yet, despite it all, they invariably, within a few months, master sufficient English not only to make themselves understood, but to speak it grammatically and correctly, provided they have mixed with cultured classes of society, and, of course, faultily and badly, if they have had the misfortune of associating with uneducated people.

From these facts it is obvious that some system *must* exist which we intuitively follow when we reside abroad, and which always and under all circumstances leads to complete control of a foreign tongue.

The first question before us would therefore be:

WHAT IS THIS SYSTEM WHICH WE INSTINCTIVELY FOLLOW WHEN RESIDING IN A FOREIGN COUNTRY?

If you lived, for instance, in Paris, or Berlin, or the city of Mexico, or had gone, like Stanley, to darkest Africa, or, like those poor sailors of the "Jeannette," to the wilds of Siberia in acquiring a foreign language you would invariably pass through the following stages of experience:

At first, the mind becomes confused by the multiplicity of foreign sounds which we hear. We try to fathom the ideas which are expressed in this unknown tongue; failing to do so we naturally get bewildered.

This state of mental confusion—which, by the way, is exceedingly disagreeable—is generally passed in about three or four weeks.

The ear, by this time, has grown accustomed to some of these sounds, and quite instinctively we begin to imitate that PHRASE which we have heard most frequently

pronounced by the persons surrounding us, and which, at the same time, is most necessary to our wants.

Now, which is our greatest necessity? Which of the various needs to which humanity is subject is of paramount importance to young and old alike?

It is nourishment, food, eating and drinking.

Consequently the first sentence which is usually mastered is a phrase like this: "*Please give me something to eat,*" or "*Please bring me the bill of fare,*" or "*Pray, give me a steak and some potatoes.*"

Not a very intellectual phrase, but a sentence absolutely needful to every one; and, let me observe right here that nature, through the mastery of this first simple phrase, has pointed out

THE TRUE AND ONLY WAY

in which alone languages can be learned.

IT IS THROUGH SENTENCES, *and never through single, isolated words.* Disconnected words are never language.

Nature teaches phrases; grammarians and books, blind to the instructions which nature has placed so plainly before them, give words, and most absurdly of all, isolated nouns, which—as experience teaches—are not by any means the most important branch of the language. The *verbs* are the soul and backbone of all speech, and it is by and through the proper study of verbs that mastery of a language can be reached.

But to return to our sentence: "*Please bring me the bill of fare.*"

Not knowing any other expressions we naturally cling to these words and use them again and again for our various necessities.

For instance, when you want some matches, or an umbrella, or some towels, instead of saying to the attendant, "*Please bring me the bill of fare,*" you will

point to the object and address him thus: "*Please bring me.....*"

Consider here the simplicity of nature's mode of teaching. By mastering this first little phrase nature has furnished you a "*sentence-mould*" by the use of which thousands of correct and absolutely necessary sentences may be composed, as is plainly seen by the phrase given.

The attendant, understanding your abbreviated phrase and gesture, "*Please bring me.....*," will give you the words, "*some matches,*" "*an umbrella,*" or "*some towels,*" in Spanish, Chinese, or Teloogoo, wherever you may happen to reside; you repeat these new words a number of times until by repetition and reiteration they become quite natural to you: In this way we go on from day to day, in fact from hour to hour, until finally, at the end of a few months, we are capable of expressing ourselves quite readily and fluently.

This is the process by which *sounds* become language. This is the mode in which any language is mastered when we reside abroad. This is the way in which our missionaries, for instance, when they go to countries, of whose language no civilized man has the faintest idea, and of whose grammar everybody is ignorant; this, I say, is the way in which our missionaries, in one year's stay, master a language so fully that they not only can preach the Gospel therein, but abstract from a hitherto unknown tongue a scientific theory or grammar.

They have not studied a single book, have never seen a written sentence, have never learned a grammatical rule of this unknown, uncivilized tongue; and why indeed should they?

No one will ever learn a language by studying

isolated words, disconnected expressions, and abstract rules.

"A man is not a carpenter and cannot pass himself off for one," says a celebrated French writer, "simply because he has just purchased a complete outfit of carpenter's tools. The mere acquisition of the tools has not advanced him a single step in his art."

So also it is with the student who has mastered only the grammatical technicalities and isolated words of a language.

But the way I have endeavored to describe, is

NATURE'S OWN MODE

of acquiring a foreign language, and presents a rational, simple, and in fact the only true system. This is

PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY,

and my method follows it as closely as possible.

But in following nature my method does not copy or repeat nature, otherwise it would no longer be a method.

A true linguistic method is essentially a systematic art. Now, art can never in itself be natural. It is inspired by nature, but it exists only in so far as it does better than nature. To become art, nature must be recast in the mould of a human concept. To become a method, it must be scientifically adapted to the requirements of students who wish to master a foreign tongue while remaining in their own country. It must in no case be a "natural" method, but must follow and systematize nature. It must produce the same results which nature does, but in a much shorter time and by the simplest and yet most systematic means.

"Steam," says François Gouin "is a natural force, but the railway train set in motion by man is not a na-

tural fact; it is a thing which is not in nature and far superior to that which would be realized by Nature if left to herself."

The same is the case with a good language method The system that cannot compete with nature both in quantity and quality of its products, would indeed be defective. Its results must be superior to those of nature, and its means systematic, simple, scientific and both psychologically and philologically true.

In 1872 I was appointed General Interpreter of New York. To my horror I very soon found that though I understood the grammars of about twenty languages and could read and translate them without difficulty, I was nevertheless incapable of carrying on an hour's conversation in any of them.

Colloquial mastery of numerous tongues was an absolute necessity to me, and by degrees I began to develop a system of study for myself, and became a linguist.

The first results of my investigations were contained in my Meisterschaft, i. e., Mastery System.

Despite its phenomenal success no one can be more conscious of its glaring faults, imperfections and crudities than I am. It was the youthful work of an immature man who had not investigated his subject sufficiently, and it should be judged as such.

Science is ever progressive and must be so from its very nature.

"The wisdom of the ancients," says Prof. Henry Drummond, "where is it? It is wholly gone. A schoolboy to-day knows more than Sir Isaac Newton knew. His knowledge has vanished away. You put yesterday's newspaper in the fire. Its knowledge has vanished away. You buy the old editions of the great encyclopedias for a few cents. Their knowledge

has vanished away. The science and philosophy of this day will soon be old. But yesterday in the University of Edinburgh, the greatest figure in the faculty was Sir James Simpson, the discoverer of chloroform. The other day his successor and nephew, Professor Simpson, was asked by the Librarian of the University to go to the Library and pick out the books on his subject that were no longer needed. And his reply to the Librarian was this: '*Take away every text-book that is more than ten years old, and put it down in the cellar.*' Sir James Simpson was a great authority only a few years ago. Men came from all parts of the earth to consult him, and almost the whole teaching of that time is consigned by the science of to-day to oblivion, and in every branch of science it is the same."

The old has to give way to the new. The greater knowledge of to-day supersedes the imperfect works of the past. Science is an eternal fire to which each thinker can contribute but a small brand.

After twenty years of practical experience as a teacher, and aided by the investigations of many minds, I have at last completed a work which does not only contain a full presentation of my views in regard to rational linguistry, but gives such practical idiomatic exercises, vocabularies, and conversations as will make the book what it is intended to be,

A VADE-MECUM TO ALL LANGUAGE STUDENTS.

In the foregoing pages I have endeavored to explain Nature's way for the acquisition of foreign languages. Let us see how

THE ROSENTHAL METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY follows it

In the first place I divide the whole language, which

is *infinite*, and which *no one*, not even a Shakespeare, has ever mastered *in its entirety*, into

THE LANGUAGE OF LITERATURE AND THE LANGUAGE OF EVERY DAY LIFE.

A very simple and rational division, and yet, despite its evident simplicity, the idea has never been acted upon.

What part of English is used by the generality of people? The language of literature or the expressions of common life? What do our children speak when they enter school and receive their first lessons in spelling and reading? *The language of every day life.*

They understand, and MUST be able to understand and follow their teachers, before they can proceed to the study of English grammar. They *must* know common, every day English before they can appreciate and comprehend the beauties of Milton's, Shakespeare's and Tennyson's works.

Consequently I hold that in studying foreign tongues we must first acquire a working knowledge of practical every day French and German before we can enter upon the study of classical literature.

Is this the way in which languages are taught in our schools and universities? Decidedly not! How do our professors instruct?

After the students have stumbled through about fifty pages of German declensions and eighty more of regular and irregular conjugations, the teachers suddenly announce that "the class is now far enough advanced to commence the study of Schiller's Tell or Goethe's Faust."

Goethe's Faust, indeed! What utter absurdity! We might just as well put Hamlet or Paradise Lost in our children's hands as to expect mere tyros in German to

appreciate the beauteous style and deep thoughts of Goethe or Schiller.

The study of literature can be pursued only after the language of practical life has been acquired.

This is the first point to be insisted upon.

But here we meet immediately with a new and very great difficulty.

What is the language of practical life, which every childs speaks and understands? Does it refer to external facts only? Or is it not rather true that in each language there are two languages, one referring to external objects and the other to internal sentiments and reflections?

Man is not merely an animal. He does not only perceive the phenomena of the external world—as all animals do to a higher or lesser degree, but he is a thinking,reasoning being. He judges, he weighs, he receives this and rejects that; he enjoys certain things while others pain him; he believes this and doubts that; he reasons from effect to cause; he has—to use the biblical expression—eaten the fruit of the tree of knowledge and distinguishes between good and evil.

Hence we have an objective and subjective language.

In actual life these two cross each other so constantly and are so closely and finely interwoven that they form so to say, the warp and the woof of the whole texture.

A true language method must therefore deal with these two branches from the very start. Mere object-teaching—as some books advocate—is consequently wrong, because it is one-sided, Side by side these two languages must progress, working into one grand harmonious whole. Only thus can a real method be developed.

Secondly: *I divide the words of the language into the necessary and unnecessary ones.*

A simple and common-sense division which no philologist or grammarian ever attempted.

The necessary words, the expressions which all men use and understand, must be mastered first, before more unusual ones can be taken into consideration.

The question presents itself at once:

WHAT WORDS ARE NECESSARY?

Let me illustrate my meaning.

Take for instance, the three words, *money*, *fan* and *chisel;* how do they compare with each other?

The word *money* is so important that no one can get on without the use—and I might add—the substance of it. Everybody has to employ it and every one must consequently know it. It is plainly a necessary word.

Fan—our second example—belongs already to a different class of expressions. Though no doubt necessary, the word and the object itself is by no means so imperatively needful as *money;* it therefore belongs to another class, that is to say, to words which, though they ought to be learned, may be studied later.

Now, take our third example, the word *chisel.* A lady might live for twenty years in France without having any use for this word, while to a carpenter it would be absolutely necessary.

The word, therefore—as far as the generality of students is concerned—belongs to the class of unnecessary expressions.

Now, put these few simple remarks to the test. Take any of

OUR TEXT-BOOKS, GRAMMARS, MANUALS, OR VOCABULARIES,

and what do we find?

In the first place, mere grammatical rules and technicalities which, though very important in themselves,

teach nothing but the theory or science of language, instead of giving us LANGUAGE ITSELF.

Then glance at the vocabularies. Do they teach the necessary expressions of common life? Or doesn't it rather seem as if the author had drawn the words at random out of the dictionary more with the view of giving every word some chance of representation instead of teaching those expressions which we actually need and *must* know?

And finally look at the examples! Who does not know how the majority of grammars fill page after page with the most useless, and frequently most absurdly ridiculous sentences?

Imagine plodding through pages like this, and I wish to remark that I quote verbatim from a widely-used French grammar:

"*I have a rose. He has a book. You have a stick. My brother has a pen. His sister has an apple,*" and so forth through fifty pages.

Think of learning French from a so-called "Conversation Grammar" published a few years ago in New York, and from which I will quote the first four "*conversations*" only: "*Where are the monks? They are in the refectory. Who killed the elephant? It was the grocer. Where is the bird? It is sitting on the blacksmith's shop.*"

Would any one believe that such stuff could find a publisher, or that a book like this would be used in any school?

Or let us examine a German grammar, the work of a well known teacher, used in almost every High School in the land. I open it at random and here is the statement I find:

"*The Italian shoemaker has purchased an Egyptian antelope from the Andalusian merchant.*"

A truly startling sentence condensing the splendors of three nationalities in one grand luminous thought.

I scarcely venture to make another quotation after this sublime effort of word painting, but the fourth author, whose works I have before me, has composed some phrases which ought to be preserved. Think of studying sentences like these:

"*Has the baker our bread? No, but he has our fine asses. Has he our nails and hammers? No, but he has our good loaves. Have you seen the red cow of the sick general's wife? No, I have not seen the red cow of the sick general's wife, but I have seen the fierce dog of your mother-in-law.*"

Can any one read such barren nonsense without smiling? Are such phrases ever used by rational people? Is this the language of practical life?

I readily admit that all school methods do not sin as grievously as the books quoted, but they are all more or less tainted with the same defect, and "*not one of them,*" as Macaulay once remarked, "*teaches actual, living speech.*"

And yet actual, living speech is exactly what *must* be taught. What else do common-sense people wish to acquire?

Throughout my books I have therefore endeavored to give nothing but useful and practical phrases, sentences which we are in the habit of using in the common transactions of life, expressions which everyone *must* employ, be he merchant, scholar, physician. lawyer or tourist.

It is, of course, self evident that only

A LIMITED VOCABULARY

can be employed by the generality of mankind, and the question arises at once:

HOW MANY WORDS ARE NECESSARY FOR CONVERSATION ON ALL GENERAL TOPICS?

No one uses the 200,000 words which we find in the last edition of the Century Dictionary, or Webster, or Worcester. No one knows them. Open your dictionaries and you will find at least five words on every page which you either do not know at all, or, at any rate, so imperfectly that their meanings have to be explained to you.

Shakespeare, the greatest mind the world ever produced, had only 12,000 words at his command. Milton ranks next to him with about 11,000, while Carlyle, despite his drastic style and numerous original word formations, uses but 9,000 words in all his works.

THE EXTENT OF OUR EVERY DAY VOCABULARY

is, comparatively speaking, exceedingly small. Lepsius, the famous Egyptologist, limits the number of words necessary for conversation on all general subjects to 600. Prendergast estimates that only 300 words are used by the generality of mankind, and Bayard Taylor concludes that 1,500 words are needed for practical purposes.

My own estimate is considerably higher. I base it on the fluency of speech attained by the average educated man, and feel sure that at least 4,000 words are employed in the common transactions of life.

Even this number appears at first glance utterly insufficient. If you were to count the single words thus far used in my introductory remarks, their number would be far in excess of my above calculation. But you must consider how frequently the same words occur and re-occur; that with 40 words, for instance, we are able to form 1,024,000 sentences of 20 words each; then try to calculate how many phrases could be con-

structed with 4,000 words, and you will surely be convinced that with such a vocabulary, properly selected, you would be equipped for any and all transactions of life.

"Figures cannot lie," says the proverb. Nothing, however, is more elastic than figures. Just listen to congressmen of different parties, and you will soon find that from the same statistical figures diametrically opposite results can be proved. Nothing is so deceptive as figures, and those given by me are no exception; in fact, they are misleading, for, while arithmetically it is perfectly correct, that with 40 words we can form 1,024,000 sentences of 20 words each, in practice we would have to strike out at least nine-tenths of these phrases. The words would appear so unnaturally arranged that no one could use them.

But this apparent drawback does not affect the general result of my estimate in the slightest degree. One-tenth of the enormous number of sentences which can be constructed from 4,000 words is sufficient, and more than sufficient, for any man. They would supply him with a quantity of expressions needed in all walks of life. They would equip you for all practical purposes, whether you stay at home or travel, buy or sell, in pleading or preaching, in places of amusement or worship, in the halls of Congress or common every day transactions.

THE PROPER SELECTION OF THE VOCABULARY OF PRACTICAL LIFE IS THE FIRST DISTINGUISHING FEATURE OF MY METHOD, and while Nature *never* fails in providing a person with words best adapted for his own necessities, it has taken the investigations of many minds to determine the limits and extent of speech for a scientific system of linguistry.

Highly important, however, as this part of my work is, it is a mere detail of my whole plan, for it must not be overlooked that

DISCONNECTED, ISOLATED WORDS ARE NOT LANGUAGE.

A person might learn a whole dictionary by heart and yet would not be able to speak.

As long as a child can use single words only, he can not carry on a conversation. He may be capable of saying *drink, milk, walk, candy, out, garden, tired, bed,* etc., thus making his wants and desires known, but he is still utterly unable to sustain a connected conversation.

Now, why is this?

There exist in every language certain substrata of speech, certain formulæ of expression which contain its life and character, which can never be translated literally from one language into another, which cannot be parsed or analyzed, and which in themselves are absolutely senseless and absurd.

Let me illustrate my meaning.

The first question which we ask each other, and we ask it about thirty times a day, is an utter absurdity. "*How do you do?*" Parse this if you can. Do what? What are we supposed to be doing that we should anxiously inquire of each other *how* we do it?

Now, if we were to take this phrase, the meaning of which is perfectly clear to all of us, and translated it literally into French or German, we would render ourselves just as ridiculous as a Frenchman would, who, instead of saying: "*How is your grandmother?*" would gravely inquire: "*How carries herself Madam your grandmother? Comment se porte madame votre grand'mère?*" Or, as a German would, who, instead of stating: "*I am very sorry you have a headache,*" would literally say: "*It does to me great pain that you headache have. Es thut mir*

sehr leid, dass Sie Kopfweh haben." Or, as a Spaniard would, who, instead of asking: "*How old is your brother?*" would put his question thus from his national standpoint: "*How many years possesses his brother of your worship? ¿Cuántos años tiene su hermano de V.?*"

Now, what is the inference? To my mind it is perfectly clear and obvious.

I hold that instead of beginning our studies with those little bits of baby sentences, which no common-sense person was ever known to use, and with which all books and teachers commence their instructions, like: "I have. I have not. I have the hat. I have not the hat. I have the hat of my father. I have the hat of my mother. I have the hat of the good aunt of the wicked undertaker," and so on through the whole relationship; I hold that instead of beginning with these simple phrases which no one can ever put to practical use, we ought to commence with complex, long, flowing, connected, rational sentences, such as we are in the habit of employing in practical life. Instead of teaching phrases whose constructions are the same as those of our own native tongue, we ought on the contrary, to commence with idiomatic sentences, whose formations are utterly foreign to our mode of speaking, thereby dis-accustoming our minds from thinking in English, and becoming familiarized with the foreign ways of expression and thought.

For this, after all, is the great difficulty; this is the "punctum saliens" of the whole problem. We must learn

TO THINK IN THE FOREIGN LANGUAGE ITSELF.

We must no longer think about our French or about our German, but in the language itself. No one can speak a foreign tongue who does not think in it.

This is so old established a maxim that no one can doubt it, but while unquestionably true the difficulty of thinking in a foreign language seems at first glance so insurmountable that most of our teachers have hopelessly given up the task, convinced that it is impossible.

Can it be accomplished?

Is it possible to learn to think in a foreign tongue without residing in the country itself, where one, so to say, lives in the very atmosphere of these sounds and modes of expression?

Can this be effected here, in this land of ours?

Of course, when we reside abroad, it is easily understood how we acquire the power of thinking in a foreign language. There we are surrounded by Frenchmen, Spaniards, Swedes or Germans; we hear nothing but the foreign vernacular, and being continuously obliged to make use of these strange sounds, we imperceptibly get so accustomed to them that finally they come just as readily and unconsciously to our tongues as the sounds of our own native language. The words become, in fact, so fully our mental and bodily property, that, as the French say, "we possess them" and think in them.

But how can we hope to effect the same results here, in the United States, where we cannot always associate with foreigners? where we speak nothing but English and think in English solely? where other cares, duties and avocations continually crowd in upon us, and where the little French or German learned to-day is almost wiped out and forgotten by to-morrow? How can we with all these drawbacks and disadvantages learn to think in a foreign tongue?

Various replies have been given to this question, and the most plausible answer has been furnished by the teachers of the objective, or so-called 'natural' methods.

"Learn a foreign language as a child learns his own," say these gentlemen.

But reasonable as this proposition sounds, it is nevertheless based on a grave and erroneous misconception.

"Learn a foreign language as a child learns his own." How does a child learn it?

I shall have occasion to speak of this interesting psychological process later; just now I desire to call your attention only to the following facts:

Every parent can tell you that long before a child can talk he understands what is said to him. The sounds he has so frequently heard suggest ideas to him and he naturally associates them with certain objects, facts, actions, commands, etc. During two long years he hears and listens before he constructs a single phrase; he is in possession of both the sound and its corresponding idea long before attempting to produce it himself.

Is that the student's case when trying to master a foreign tongue? Do the strange sounds we hear in Russian, French or Swedish suggest any meaning to us? Do we associate them with certain facts, objects or ideas? Certainly not!

"But," reply these gentlemen in answer to this, "you do not understand our system perfectly. Ours is the object method. We point to certain objects surrounding us, and by uttering little phrases referring to them and repeating them hundreds of times in the foreign language, the pupils are enabled not only to understand what we say, but to think at once in French, as we speak nothing but French during our lessons."

But how can you think in French if you don't know any French?

I grant that you may understand the meaning of certain phrases by pointing to certain objects. But how

about things which you cannot point out? How about abstract thoughts? How about past or future actions? How about idiomatic expressions? How can they be explained or mastered when you confine yourself to a language which the student does not understand, instead of giving him a clear explanation in his own tongue? Why substitute the imperfect language of gestures and signs when a perfect medium of communication between teacher and student exists?

"Every one, at times," says Prof. Maltus Questell Holyoake in a very able article on "A Cosmopolitan Language," "has doubtless had recourse to the universal language of gesticulation, signs and sounds. In every clime and age there has always been an international language of this kind. There is an amusing anecdote which illustrates this. An English traveler being desirous of knowing the nature of the meat on his plate at some remote Chinese entertainment, turned to the native waiter behind him and, pointing to the dish with an inquiring look, said: 'Quack? quack?' The Chinaman at once replied with a natural imitation of the canine: 'Bow! wow!' Thus the two parties were mutually intelligible, though they did not understand one word of each other's language."

Gesticulations and signs in a case of this kind are not only appropriate, but necessary. As a method of teaching a language, however, they are but an awkward and unsatisfactory substitute.

Consider, moreover, how many years must of necessity elapse before a child attains practical mastery of his mother tongue.

Can any adult devote that length of time to the study of foreign languages?

Is it not also true that the adult's state of mind is vitally different from that of a child?

No adult can study as a child learns. The child in mastering his own tongue reaches not only the power of expression, but the ability of thinking. From the perception of external facts he proceeds to mental conceptions. Each new word is a new discovery to him; each sound reveals to him a new world. Language is the basis of his whole mental development; it underlies the acquisition of all knowledge.

The adult, on the other hand, has passed all these preliminary stages; he has attained all this. His intellect has been developed and trained. His mind is no longer a "tabula rasa," and his memory is not nearly so fresh and retentive as that of an untutored infant. He can already express his thoughts in one language, and in studying other tongues he aims solely at the acquisition of

A NEW VEHICLE OF SOUNDS

which shall enable him to convey the same thoughts which he is in the habit of uttering to his own country people, to natives of other climes and nationalities.

Herein lies the vital difference between the so-called natural methods of which Gouin, Henness and Sauveur are the main representatives, and my own.

Their views and arguments—ingenious though they may be—are based, as I think I have shown, on a grave misconception. We cannot learn foreign tongues as a child learns his own, but must acquire them as foreigners master our language when they come to the United States.

For, when we learn a foreign language, we know one tongue already, our own native language. Whether we are seven, seventeen, or seventy years old, is immaterial. The fact remains the same; we speak and can use one language. All we want, therefore, is the mas-

tery of an additional tongue, a new medium of sounds for expressing our thoughts.

The distinction is obvious, and the difference between the two methods vital.

But all this is no answer to our previous question:

HOW CAN WE LEARN TO THINK IN A FOREIGN LANGUAGE?

Of recent years great progress has been made in the study of psychological problems. Inspired and guided by the teachings of Schopenhauer and Hartmann a new school of thinkers has arisen, and a strikingly original system of philosophy has been developed in Germany, France and England.

The first results of these deeply interesting investigations were embodied in Hartmann's "Philosophie des Unbewussten," the Philosophy of the Unconscious, or, as Professor Carpenter more aptly calls it, "The Philosophy of Unconscious Cerebration." The work is of standard value and has been translated into English.

Without entering into details, which in an essay of this kind would be out of place, I will only state the central idea of the system.

It is this: No action can be done well which is not done unconsciously.

Mark the principle! Any action which is to be done well, must be done unconsciously, and not consciously.

This sounds like a paradox, and is nevertheless absolutely true.

Take walking, one of our simplest actions, as an instance. How is it accomplished? Consciously or unconsciously? Are we conscious of the active exercise of our nerves and muscles while we are walking? Do we realize that our mind superintends the effort and that our will-power through the nerves sets the various

necessary muscles in motion? Do we walk consciously or unconsciously?

How on the other hand, does a child learn to walk? In the most painful and self-conscious manner. For months he watches and observes how his parents and brothers move around. His innate, imitative faculties lead him to copy their actions. He first learns to creep, in an awkward and self-conscious manner; then he begins to stand, and finally he toddles from chair to chair. He now walks, badly as yet, because he does it consciously, but by and by rapidly and well, because by repeated exercises the play of the muscles has become second nature to him. At last he can run. The whole circle has now been accomplished. He stands; he walks; he runs. He does it well, because he does it unconsciously.

How do we learn to read? In the most laborious and self-conscious manner. Months elapse before a child knows his letters; years must pass before he can spell. Finally he reads, badly at first, because he is still conscious of all his actions. At last he does it so well that his eyes unconsciously glide over the pages. And then what happens? Why, frequently we sit down with the most interesting novel of the season. We read it rapidly, excitedly. Suddenly our mind is taken up with some other subject. A great care may be upon us; a new line of thought, foreign to the matter we are reading about, has somehow been suggested to us. Still we read on, mechanically perusing page after page. Finally we stop; we look at our book; we turn back ten, twenty, thirty pages, and exclaim in startled tones "Bless me! Here I have been reading for the last half hour without the faintest idea as to what it is!"

Have we read consciously or unconsciouly?

Nothing can be done well, unless we do it unconsciously. We cannot even breathe naturally unless we do so without being self-conscious of the act.

Do you doubt this? Ask any one who has been unfortunate enough to have his lungs examined by a physician. What is his experience? After pounding your back and chest in various spots and listening to your breathing, the medical expert finally places his stethoscope on your chest and says: "Now, breathe just as naturally as you can."

Breathe as naturally as you can! The moment you try to do so, you become self-conscious and your breathing grows at once unnatural and labored.

We cannot even *look* natural unless we are unconscious of our outward appearance.

What renders the dressed up servant-girl so absurd and ridiculous? She is conscious of her fine clothes, and the same girl who seemed pretty in her simple calico gown, becomes a guy in her finery. Why? Because she is self-conscious and consequently awkward.

Or let me give you another instance.

You go to a photographer to have your picture taken. After placing you in a chair and posing you to his liking, the artist puts that modern instrument of torture, the so-called head-rest, behind your ears and cheerfully says: "Now look here, right here, if you please. At this bird-cage, pray. That's very nice! Now, just for one moment, please, sit quiet. Steady now, and look just as natural as you can!"

Look just as natural as you can! The moment you try to appear so you become self-conscious. Either a most idiotic grin spreads over your countenance, or such a woe-begone, melancholy expression settles down upon your features, that your best friends cannot recognize

the picture when it gets home. You were self-conscious and hence the consequences.

And yet, when you go back to the photographer and complain to him, he will reply with calm superiority: "Why, Madam, this is an exact likeness of you. That is just the way you looked. My machine is true and cannot lie."

And it *did not* lie; the picture *is* true. It is an absolutely perfect likeness of the idiot you looked, when self-conscious of your outward appearance.

Nothing can be done well, unless it is done unconsciously.

This is especially noticeable in speaking. No one realizes that any mental activity of thought is going on in his brains while he is talking, and yet there is and must be such action of the mind, although we are entirely unconscious of it.

Now try a simple experiment. Watch yourself and see if you can find out whether you are thinking while you make some commonplace remarks, and you will soon discover that you can neither think nor talk. You have grown self-conscious, and neither the brain nor the tongue can act when that is the case.

By constant use and application the words of our own language become, as a matter of course, flesh and blood to us. We think in them; in fact, we cannot think without them, and, while we talk, our mind—unconscious to ourselves—thinks the very thoughts we utter. It guides and superintends all our efforts and is in constant activity, though we are unconscious of it.

I have shown before how a child listens and hears for two long years before attempting to construct a single phrase. He is in possession of both the sound and its corresponding meaning long before he ventures to produce it himself.

Thus each infant passes his first two years; another year must yet elapse before he can talk and converse.

How does he reach it? How does it happen that bright and stupid children alike can prattle intelligently when but three years old? Why is this a universal fact, true without exception among civilized and uncivilized nations alike, among the poor as well as the wealthy? Can this problem be solved, and if so, would not its solution furnish us with the key to a rational and true method? For Nature's teaching is true and must be true; the universal results prove this.

What happens in this short space of time that changes the lisping infant into an intelligently speaking being?

For years I tried in vain to fathom Nature's secret. I watched my children's mental and bodily development, but though I made many valuable observations I was for a long time on a wrong track. I counted the words they could utter and gathered a vocabulary instead of discovering Nature's method of teaching.

Suddenly the whole truth dawned upon me.

A carpenter was employed in my house mending a damaged ceiling which a fire had destroyed. My youngest boy was eagerly watching him. Every slight act, the use of every instrument, had to be explained to him.

"What has he in his hand, papa?" the little one would ask. "That is a saw, my boy." "What does he do with it?" "He saws the beams to their proper length."

While the man was busy sawing the boy watched and watched, never uttering a word.

The man raised the beam and put it in its proper spot, using the hammer and driving in the nails.

"And what is he doing now?" "He drives in the

nails with his hammer, and the nails keep the beam in its proper place." And again the boy watched and stayed there and asked his questions and listened to my explanations for over two hours.

What happened then? For more than an hour the little fellow was quiet. He evidently was thinking of all he had seen. Then he began to play. He got a little hammer, some nails, a ruler, and some wood. He played carpenter and he played aloud.

"I am the carpenter," he began. "Where is my saw?" Here is my saw," and he grasped the ruler. "Now I must saw this beam," and he made believe that he was sawing with the ruler.

"Now I must put the beam in its place. Here is my hammer, and here are the nails. Now I must drive them in and keep the beam in its proper place."

And he suited his action to the words and went on playing and chattering. And day after day, until some new occurrence attracted his attention, he would play carpenter always proceeding in exactly the same manner as the real carpenter had done, and always using the same or nearly the same expressions he had heard.

This simple observation showed me Nature's whole process.

The child observes the various actions of his elders. From perception of external facts he proceeds after a sort of "mental incubation" to an imitation of all he has seen and heard. He repeats the acts and corresponding sentences over and over during his childish play, and in one year he has learned to talk. He has learned to express in living sounds all his perceptions of external facts and his various mental conceptions of them.

He has acquired a language.

He knows nothing about grammar, and yet the child of cultured parents uses correct expressions. He has never seen a printed word, nevertheless his pronunciation is perfect. He has never read a single book, but his speech is fluent and idiomatic. By Nature's method he has accomplished what no college graduate attains: he has gained colloquial mastery of a tongue.

How has he reached it? How has he learned his language? What is the meaning of this phrase, "to learn a language?"

It means to translate our own individuality into comprehensible sounds. It does not mean to study grammatical peculiarities. It is not to be attained by the study and translation of the classic works of literature. It is vain to attempt it by any school system. It must be accomplished by a sort of mental reconstruction and visualization—if such word is permissible—of our whole outer and inner life. We must live over again the various incidents and sentiments of our life and must learn to express them in a foreign tongue. Life's various scenes have to be represented *anew* in strange sounds which constantly repeated will soon become second nature to us. "Repetitio est mater studiorum." Again and again we have to hear and repeat these sounds; again and again we must apply them until, at last, they become just as familiar to us as the sounds of our native tongue.

There will then no longer be any talk of translation from one language into the other. The words will have become so thoroughly impressed upon the nerves of our memory that they come just as easily, readily, and unconsciously to our lips as the sounds of our mother tongue.

Remember that we possess but one intelligence, and

our thoughts must ever be the same whether we express them in English, Russian, French or German.

Language appeals, therefore—at first at least—solely to the *ear*, *tongue* and *memory*, but though our intellect superintends and guides the whole initiatory process, it does not and cannot come into real action until the foreign sounds come just as unconsciously to our tongue as the sounds of our native language.

The eloquence of a Gladstone, the brilliancy of a Blaine, the depth of a Pasteur, the poetic fancy of a Tennyson, the learning of a Virchow, would all be useless and of no avail among a nation whose language they have not mastered. A child or a waiter speaking the tongue would have the advantage of the greatest intellect unversed in that language.

Remember also that *the ear* is the natural organ of language. To substitute for it the eye—as is done in all schools—is to commit a blunder so vital that the greatest philologist is unable to accomplish in ten years what a humble, illiterate child attains in six months. To learn from a dumb book leaves the student just as speechless as the source from whence his knowledge proceeds. If you want to learn to swim, plunge in the water and strike out boldly. If you desire to learn to speak, listen to foreign speech and imitate what you have heard until by habit it becomes second nature to you.

This is the method of nature, and this is the method I teach.

Since 1873 I have instructed thousands of adult students in this manner. The results have invariably been satisfactory to pupils as well as to myself. Numerous other teachers who have used my method have had the same experience. I therefore have no doubt as to the soundness of my system.

All my sentences are practical phrases, based on the actual occurrences of practical every day life.

Other authors, like François Gouin, whom I consider the greatest teacher of the so-called "Natural Method," make the same claim. I leave the student to judge whose system is more practical, his or mine.

Here is Gouin's first lesson:

THE WELL.

THE MAID GOES TO DRAW WATER AT THE WELL.

The maid takes the bucket,	TAKES
The maid goes out of the house,	GOES OUT
The maid bends her steps towards the well,	BENDS HER STEPS
The maid draws near to the well,	DRAWS NEAR
The maid gets to the well,	GETS TO
The maid stops at the well,	STOPS AT
and sets down the bucket on the brink of the well.	SETS DOWN
The maid leans over the well,	LEANS
She stretches out her arm,	STRETCHES OUT
She catches hold of the chain,	CATCHES HOLD
She draws this chain toward her,	DRAWS
She opens the hook,	OPENS
places the handle of the bucket in	PLACES
the hook, and closes this hook,	CLOSES
She puts one hand to the crank,	PUTS
and with the other pushes the bucket into the mouth of the well.	PUSHES
The bucket swings to and fro over the depths, the	SWINGS
chain rattles,	RATTLES
and makes the depths resound,	MAKES RESOUND

It would be unfair to judge a whole system by one lesson. I shall therefore quote Gouin's fourteenth chapter:

THE STOVE.

THE GIRL CHOPS SOME WOOD.

The girl goes and seeks a piece of wood,	GOES AND SEEKS
She takes a hatchet,	TAKES
She draws near to the block,	DRAWS NEAR
She places the wood on the block,	PLACES
She raises the hatchet,	RAISES

She brings down the hatchet,	BRINGS DOWN
The blade strikes against the wood,	STRIKES
The blade penetrates the wood,	PENETRATES
The blade cleaves the wood,	CLEAVES
The pieces fall right and left,	FALL
The girl picks up one of the pieces,	PICKS UP
places it upon the block,	PLACES
raises her hatchet,	RAISES
brings down her hatchet,	BRINGS DOWN
and chops the piece of wood,	CHOPS
She chops another piece, and then another,	CHOPS
She chops up all the wood,	CHOPS
She puts down her hatchet,	PUTS DOWN
gathers up the pieces into her apron,	GATHERS UP
takes one or two logs and some shavings,	TAKES
and carries them to the stove.	CARRIES

Without pronouncing an opinion upon Mr. Gouin's method, I simply desire to draw the reader's attention to it, leaving a comparison between the two systems to him. It will be seen from the following pages that my method does not begin with the pump, or well, or woodshed, or stove, but with such events of every day life as concern and interest the adult student. After a few necessary and merely preliminary exercises we commence with phrases which refer to the speaking and understanding of a language, expressions which are of absolute necessity in our intercourse with foreigners. I shall quote but a few of them from the first part:

I speak French. I do not speak it. I speak it but brokenly. Are you speaking to me? Do you understand me? Don't you understand me when I speak German to you? I understand you when you speak slowly and distinctly, but cannot follow you when you speak rapidly, etc., etc.

We continue our studies by entering a store to make some purchases. The next lesson transfers us to the railway; we take tickets, check the baggage, arrive at

the station, take a cab and drive to the hotel, we enter it, select rooms, give some necessary orders to the waiter, sit down to our meal and finally retire.

Surely these are actual scenes of practical every day life; these are occurrences with which any adult is familiar.

After these lessons have been thoroughly mastered, we proceed to conversational exercises. English is now discarded and the foreign tongue alone is used.

No new words or constructions are introduced. Every sentence is based on the previous exercises. Each phrase. therefore, presents facts and conceptions just as clearly to the student as the English equivalents, and translation becomes unnecessary. Our own life is thus lived over again in the sounds of the foreign language. Our individuality is reconstructed in French or German or Spanish.

In this way the foreign language becomes in reality "a tongue" to the learner. Its study is now no longer a laborious translation dependent on a clumsy calculation which of the numerous grammatical rules is to be used in a given case. The words cease to be meaningless, printed, dumb signs, and are at once associated with actual, living facts. The student now no longer hesitates and weighs, but expresses his own ideas just as readily in the foreign tongue as his own. He thinks and *lives* in French or German. The language has become flesh and blood to him. He possesses it, as the French say, it is his own.

In another chapter some useful directions for private study are given. They are based on practical experience and ought to be followed by teachers and students.

RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL.

Directions For Private Study.

The ear is the natual organ, the first organ, the most immediate organ of language.

The ear, therefore, must be addressed first and principally. The student must have the accent and intonation of a phrase in his ear, before the tongue is able to reproduce it.

The spoken word must precede the word as spelled or written.

The teacher must therefore read and re-read the main sentence frequently to the pupil.

Where a teacher is not available, any cultivated native or any American who knows the language, ought to be consulted by the student.

The sentence ought first to be read slowly, but the foreign intonation must always be given clearly and naturally.

After the sentence has been read several times by the teacher, the student must pronounce it after him, word by word first and then the whole phrase in connection.

The student must always practice *aloud.* The ear and tongue must be exercised at the same time. While practicing the pronunciation the student, who has, of course, read the English equivalent, knows the general meaning of the phrase, and by the time that he can pronounce the sentence smoothly and correctly, the words will have become associated with the meaning.

This does away with literal translation.

The pupil must not attempt to learn the main sentence by heart. By frequently reading it aloud, the words will unconsciously impress themselves so indel-

ibly upon his memory that in a few days they will become flesh and blood to him and can never be forgotten.

After the pronunciation of the main sentence has been mastered the pupils will proceed in a similar manner with the variations given in the exercises.

All study—whether private or in classes—must be carried on *aloud.*

This rule is all-important and must never be neglected.

Study should never exceed fifteen to twenty minutes; the mind must always be fresh for it. As soon as the slightest fatigue shows itself the study must be interrupted, whether the pupil knows his lesson or not.

Read first your foreign exercises aloud; then turn your book over, look only at the English words and without trying to translate, give the foreign equivalent as smoothly and naturally as possible.

Never trust to your memory. If a word has escaped you do not think about it, but prompt your memory by reading the foreign sentence once more.

These short exercises ought to be repeated at least three or four times a day.

In a few days the phrases will become second nature to the learner. He will no longer think *about* them, but *in* them. He will begin to think in the foreign language itself, and will now be able to form thousands of new phrases by inserting a new noun here, and a verb there and an adverb in another place, and so on.

The study of grammar is carried on in connection with each sentence. The foot notes, which contain the grammatical peculiarities, must therefore be studied by the pupil.

A full grammatical outline is found at the end of the whole work.

PRONUNCIATION.

A figured pronunciation has been adopted. It will be of advantage not only to those students who have to study without a teacher, but will also be of material help to persons who study under a competent instructor. The sounds they have heard will thereby be recalled to them.

The pronunciation-marks have mostly been taken from Webster and represent—as far as possible—the equivalent French sounds.

Of course the "ü," the nasal and liquid and other peculiar French sounds ought to be heard.

Pronunciation-marks refer to the eye.

The ear is the natural organ of language.

The spoken word must therefore precede the word as spelled or written.

Proper intonation and pronunciation can not be acquired without the assistance of a living instructor.

A cultivated native, or an Englishman who knows the language, ought therefore to be consulted by the student.

INTONATION AND ACCENT.

Every language has its own, peculiar intonation. It stands so-to-say in a certain key; is sung according to a certain melody.

The French modulation of voice—owing to its numerous labial and dental sounds—is perhaps, more noticeable and striking than any other, and is more difficult to acquire than the intonation of most other tongues.

The majority of English, German, Spanish or Italian sounds are produced from the throat or chest.

It is therefore comparatively easy to acquire a correct intonation of these languages.

French sounds on the other hand, are formed flat, on the tip of the tongue—a proceeding so foreign to our whole mode of speaking that but few Americans acquire it.

For this reason French elocutionists give a special training to their pupils, a mode of study which ought to be adopted by all students of the French language. All phrases have to be practiced "avec les dents serrées" —with closed teeth. These exercises produce the well-known penetrating quality of "the French voice," which is so justly admired in their actors and orators.

Any one who has listened to a Frenchman talking English must have noticed a peculiar rising accent at the end of every word and phrase. This is owing entirely to the peculiarities of French intonation.

Almost any American can mimic a Frenchman's English pronunciation.

Students ought to remember this; they must therefore pronounce French sentences in a "Frenchified" manner. This will soon lead to correct intonation.

A Frenchman scarcely ever drops his voice (as we do). A rising inflection appears at the end of every word, clause or sentence.

As an invariable rule, the student must bear in mind that there is always a slight, rising "staccato" accent which falls on the last syllable of each word, or (when the last syllable is *mute*) upon the one before the last.

These hints must suffice. Wherever possible a cultivated French native or an American who understands the language thoroughly ought to be consulted by the student.

VOWEL SOUNDS.

Sounds of a.

1. The usual sound of **a** is the same which we have in *random*, marked ă by Webster.

The quality of this sound is the same as that of our open Italian a (marked ä by Grammarians), only much shorter and lighter in quality.

Examples: ami (ă-mē′), friend; aller (ă-lā′), to go; l'opéra (lo-pā-rā′), the opera.

2. We have also another sound of **a**; the same as we have in *father*, marked ä.

This sound occurs:

Before final **tion** or **sion**, as: nation (nä-sē‿oń′), nation; occasion (ŏ-ka-zē‿oń′), occasion.

Before final **se**, as: phrase (fräz′), phrase.

Before final **s**[1], as: pas (pä), not.

Before **ill**[2], as: caille (kä′-ł′), quail.

Before **rr**, as: carré (kä-ra′), square.

3. When written with a circumflex (ˆ) **â**, it has also the long Italian sound, except in the conjugation of verbs, as: l'âme (lām'), the soul.

The circumflex accent is merely a *tense sign* in the conjugation of verbs, but does not affect the usual sound of **a**. Thus: Nous donnâmes, nōō dō-nä′-m', we gave.

Sounds of e.

1. When written with an acute accent=é, **e** sounds like a in ɜhape, marked ɜ, as: parlé (pär-lɜ′), spoken; loué (lōō-ɜ′), praised; café (kä-fɜ′), coffee.

2. When occurring before final *d*, *r* and *z* it is also

[1]If however, final *s* is the plural sign this rule is not followed and *a* remains short.

[2]This at least, is generally the case.

pronounced ä, as: pied (pē‿ä'), foot; parler (pär-lä'), to speak; parlez (pär-lä'), speak. It must be remembered however, that these consonants must appear in the *same* syllable.

Exception: Monosyllables in *er* are pronounced with a somewhat broader *e* from that in our word met, as: fer (fĕr), iron.

3. When written with the grave accent=è, or before any consonant except *d*, *r* and *z*, e sounds a little broader than our e in met. Sign: ĕ—(usually an *h* is placed after ĕ=eh in the figured pronunciation in order that its broad value might be more clearly indicated). Thus: très (treh), very; c'est (seh), that is.

Note.—**es** and **ent** in conjugations are silent, as: tu parles (tū pärl'), thou speakest; ils parlent (el pärl'), they speak.

Es in the plural of nouns, is not pronounced, as: malles (mäl'), trunks; bretelles (brū-tĕl'), suspenders.

4. When written with the circumflex accent=ê, e sounds like our e in there. Sign: ê. Thus: vous‿êtes (vōō zêt), you are; même (mêm'), same, even.

Note.—In **femme**, woman, e is pronounced like ä, fäm The same is the case in **solennel**=sŏ-lä-nĕl', solemn.

In all adverbial terminations in **emment** e is pronounced like ä, as **apparemment** (ä-pä-rä-mäń'), apparently.

The unaccented e.

The unaccented e at the end of syllables is called the mute or silent e and is not sounded. This is especially the case in conversation.

When sounded in full—as in monosyllables—it has the sound of our *u* in but, only shorter. Sign: ŭ. As. me (mŭ), me; le (lŭ), him, it.

At the end of a word followed by another word beginning with a *consonant* the sound of e simply gives the full articulation to the preceding consonant and slightly lengthens it. This is represented in my book by an apostrophe.

When ending one word and followed by another beginning with a *vowel* (or silent *h*) it entirely disappears, as: votre‿ami (vŏ-trä-mē'), your friend.

Sounds of i.

1. Its usual sound is that of our ee in *seen* (but somewhat shorter). Sign: ē.

2. It has also a long sound, when written a circumflex or before a mute vowel. Its sound is then quite the same as that of our ee in seen. Sign: ē.

There is practically very little difference between the usual and occasional sound of *i* and for this reason I have given the same pronunciation mark.

Sounds of o.

1. Usually it is pronounced like our o in *shot*. Sign: ŏ.

2. It has also a long sound like that of our o in *note*. Sign: o. This sound occurs

Before final **s**, as: gros (grō), thick.

Before final **t**, as: mot (mō), word.

Before final **tion**, as: notion (nō-sē‿oń').

Before final **se**, as: la rose (lä-rōz'), the rose.

With a circumflex accent, dôme (dōm'), dome.

Sounds of u.

This sound has no equivalent in English, but persons who have studied German will find no difficulty in producing it.

When sounding it, round your lips, as if going to whistle and pronounce *ee* for the long *u* sound, and I for the short sound.

Sign: ü.

OTHER VOWEL SOUNDS.

1. **Ai** (**ay, ei, ey**) are sounded like a in **shape**. Sign: a.

This sound occurs:

1. When ai closes a word, as: j'ai (zhā), I have.

2. When beginning a word, as: aimable (ā-mă'-bl'), amiable.

But when followed by a syllable beginning with a *vowel* or **s**, a somewhat longer sound than that of our *e* in *met* is given. As: plaisir (pleh-zēr), pleasure; ayons (eh-yoń'), let us have.

2. **Ai** (**ay, ei, ey**) are sounded like e in mĕt (but somewhat longer). Sign: eh.

This sound occurs:

1. Before a *mute* syllable, as: J'aime (zhehm), I like, I love.

2. Before a *final* consonant, as: Soleil (sŏ-leh'-ł'), sun.

3. **Au** and **eau** sound like o in note. Sign: o. As: L'eau (lo), the water.

4. **Eu** and **oeu** sound like u in but. Sign: û.

But when occurring before *s*, *x* or *t* or at the end of words **eu** and **oeu** sound considerably longer and deeper than our u in urge. Sign: û.

To produce this sound, pronounce the English word *urge* in the following way: Round your lips and hold them closely together; pronounce the û from the chest (and not from the throat) in a long and deep manner. As: Je veux (zhŭ- vû), I will; il pleut (ēl plû), it rains.

5. **Oi** is sounded similar to *wa* in our word *wagon*. Sign: o‿ă', as moi (mo‿ă'), me; loi (lo‿ă'), law.

6. **Ou**=oo in room. Sign: ȣ.

7. **Y** between two vowels=i-y, as: moyen (mo‿ä-yiń'), means.

NASAL SOUNDS.

These are peculiar French sounds which ought to be heard, in order to be correctly imitated.

They do not at all resemble the peculiar Yankee twang. A Frenchman's voice generally dwells on these sounds with a certain caressing emphasis without closing the organs of speech (mouth, teeth, or lips).

No *g* or *k* sound is to be heard in them.

To pronounce *mon*, for instance, sound it like our word *monk*, but stop short of the k and arrest the sound of *n* half way.

The nasal sounds occur when a vowel (or diphthong) is followed by a *single* **n** or **m**, which itself is not followed by another *n* or *m* or by a vowel. Sign: ń.

These sounds occur with the following vowels:

1. **An, am, en** and **em**. Sign: ań.
2. **In, im, ain, aim, ein, eim.** Sign: iń.
3. **On, om.** Sign: oń.
4. **Un, um, eum.** Sign: uń.

CONSONANTS.

C before **e** and **i** sounds like *s*. Example: Ici (ē-sē'), here; ce (sŭ), this.

C before **a, o** and **u**=*k*. Example: Coli (kŏ-lē'), package; canne (kăn), cane.

But when marked with a cedilla (ç) it sounds like *s*.

Ch=*sh*, as: chat (shă), cat.

When followed by a consonant **ch** sounds like *k*, as: **Chrétien (kra-tē‿iń')**, Christian.

G before **a**, **o** and **u** sounds like **g** in *great*, as: **gare** (găr), depot; garçon (găr-soń'), boy, waiter.

Gu before **e** and **i** sounds also like g in *great*, as: fatigué (fă-tē-gā'), tired.

G before **e** and **i**=su in *pleasure*. Sign: zh. As: bagage (bă-găzh'), baggage.

Gn=ny, as: magnifique (măn-yē-fēk'), magnificent.

H is **never** aspirated as in English.

When vowels can be elided before it and consonants carried over, it is called *silent*, as: l'hôtel (lo-tēl'), the Hotel

It is called *aspirate* when the above can not take place, as: Le haut (lŭ o), the top. (No aspiration of the *h* in the English manner).

J has always the sound of su in *pleasure*. Sign: zh. As: jamais (zhă-meh'), ever, never.

LIQUID L.

Liquid *l* is pronounced in two ways. In the South the *ll* is sounded like our ll in William; in Paris it is pronounced like our *y*.

Either pronunciation is correct. It must be noted however, that the *y* has a prolonged soft sound; I therefore mark it ł' in the figured pronunciation.

It appears in the following combinations:

Ail=ă'-y', as: travail (tră-vă'-ł'), labor.

Aille=ă'-y', as: caille (kă'-ł'), quail.

Eil and **Eille**=ĕh'-y', as: pareil (pă-rĕh'-ł'), similar; bouteille (bœ̆-tĕh'-ł'), bottle.

Euil=ŭ'-y', as: feuille (fŭ'-ł'), leaf.

Ouil=œ̆'-y', as: brouillard (brœ̆-łăr'), fog.

Il and **ille**=ē'-y', as: fille (fē'-ł'), daughter.

Exceptions: The following words (and a few others) retain the ordinary *l* sound:

fil (fēl), thread. tranquille (traṅ-kēl) ,quiet.
mille (mēl), thousand. ville (vēl), town.
million(mē-lē‿ōṅ'),million. Achille (ă-shēl'), Achilles.

Note: Observe that *i* preceding the *l* must be in the *same* syllable, otherwise there is no liquid sound, as: familier (fă-mē-lē‿a'), divided fa-mi-li-er.

Ill beginning a word has no liquid sound, as: illustre (ē-lūs'-tr'), illustrious.

M is silent in condamné (kōṅ-dă-na'), condemned, and automne (ō-tŏn'), autumn.

P is silent in compter (kōṅ-ta'), to count; baptiser (bă-tē-za'), to baptize; corps (kōr), the body; sept (sĕt), seven; temps (tăṅ), time; printemps (prīṅ-tăṅ'), spring,

Q sounds generally like *k*, as: quand (kăṅ), when. There are a few exceptions to this rule, which will be noticed when occurring.

R is pronounced more forcibly than in English.

S sounds sharp like *s* in *sound*, when not occurring between two vowels.

S=z, when standing between two vowels, as: phrase (frăz'), phrase, sentence; visiter (vē-zē-ta'), to visit.

S at the end of words is pronounced in Latin and Greek names, and in *fils* (fēs), gratis (grá-tēs'), mars (mārs) and a few others.

T sounds like our *t*.

T in the syllables **tion, tial** and **tiel** sounds like our *s* in *sound*; as: perfection (pĕr-fĕk-sē‿ōṅ'); additionnel (ă-dē-sē‿ō-nĕl'), additional.

But when preceded by **s** or **t** it is sounded like **t**, as: question (kĕs-tē‿ōṅ') question.

T at the end of words when preceded by **c** or **s** must be sounded, as: correct (kŏ-rĕkt'); exact (ĕg-zăkt').

The same is the case in dot (dŏt), dowry; fat (făt), fop, and chut (shŭt), hush.

TH sounds always like *t*, as théâtre (tā-ā'-tr'), theatre.

W is generally sounded like *v*, as: wagon (vă-gŏń'), car.

X sounds like the English *x*, except when followed by a vowel, when it is pronounced like *gz*, as: examen (ĕg-ză-măń'), examination.

Exception: Bruxelles (brū-sĕl'), Brussels.

It is silent when occurring in the plural or in geographical names.

FINAL CONSONANTS.

Consonants at the end of a word are generally *not* sounded in French. (Compare the rules about the "liaison"). As: pas (pā); voulez-vous (vōō-lā' vōō); porter (pŏr-tā').

Final **c**, **f**, **l** and **r** are generally sounded, as: avec (ă-vĕk'); bal (băl); soeur (sûr); soif (sŏ‿ăf'); venir (vĕ-nēr').

Final **er** in verbs of the first conjugation is silent, as: parler (păr-lā'); arriver (ă-rē-vā'); donner (dŏ-nā').

Final **c** is silent in estomac (ē-stŏ-mā'), stomach; blanc (blăń), white; franc (frăń); accroc (ă-krō') and a few others.

Final **f** is silent in clef (klā), key; cerf (sehr), deer; chef-d'oeuvre (sheh-dû'-vr'), masterpiece. Also in the plurals oeufs (û), eggs; boeufs (bû), oxen; nerfs (nehr), nerves.

Final **l** is silent in fils (fēs), son; gentil (zhăń-tē'), nice; sourcil (sōōr-sē') eye-brow; pouls (pōō), pulse, and a few others.

LIAISON (lē‿eh-zŏñ').

The "*liaison*" *i. e.* the joining of words is a peculiar French habit.

The general rule is this:

When one word closes with a consonant and the next one begins with *a vowel* or *silent h*, they are joined together.

As: Pas à Paris (pä zä pä-rē'), not in Paris. Il voudrait aller (ēl vōō-dreh' tä-lā'), he would like to go. Vous êtes (vōō zêt), you are.

The *liaison* in my book is generally marked by this sign ‿.

In conversation the *liaison* is omitted whenever it would produce a disagreeable impression or in rapid talk.

Observe that final c is carried over with the sound of k;
" d " " " " " t;
" f " " " " " v;
" s " " " " " z;
" x " " " " " z.

As: avec elle (ä-vĕh-kĕl'), with her. Grand hôtel (gräñ-to-tĕl'), Grand Hotel. Neuf heures (nū-vūr'), nine o'clock. Pas à Paris (pä-zä pä-rē'), not in Paris. Deux heures (dû zûr), two o'clock.

DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

1. A single consonant in the middle of a word goes with the following syllable, as: inimitable. Divide i-ni-mi-ta-ble.

2. Two consonants in the middle of a word are divided so that the first belongs to the previous, and the second to the following syllable, as: enveloppes. Divide: en-ve-lop-pes.

3. When the second consonant is **h**, **l** or **r** they are considered as one consonant, and follow the first rule. As: Riche. Divide: ri-che. Sabre; divide: sa-bre.

4. When there are three consonants the division takes place after the first, as: institution; divide: in-sti-tu-tion.

Note.—These rules are very important. They enable the student to decide whether **e** (unaccented) is *final* and therefore **mute**, As: en-ve-lop-pe. **E** here is silent in *ve* and *pe*.

The same is the case with **n** *nasal*, as: inutile, divided: i-nu-ti-le. N here goes to the second syllable, hence is not nasal.

THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

The French alphabet has 25 letters. W is used, but as a foreign letter only.

A,	a.	ä.	ä.	**N,**	n.	ën.	nü.
B,	b.	bä.	bü.	**O,**	o.	ö.	ö.
C,	c.	sä.	sü.	**P,**	p.	pä.	pü.
D,	d.	dä.	dü.	**Q,**	q.	kü.	kü.
E,	e.	ä.	ü.	**R,**	r.	ër.	rü.
F,	f.	ëf.	fü.	**S,**	s.	ës.	sü.
G,	g.	zhä.	gü.	**T,**	t.	tä.	tü.
H,	h.	äsh.	üh.	**U,**	u.	ü.	ü.
I,	i.	ë.	ë.	**V,**	v.	vä.	vü.
J,	j.	zhë.	zhü.	**X,**	x.	ëks.	ksü.
K,	k.	kä.	kü.	**Y,**	y.	ë grëk.	ë grëk.
L,	l.	ël.	lü.	**Z,**	z.	zëd.	zü.
M,	m.	ëm	mü.				

I.

a. General Exercises..... 54
b. To Speak and Understand..... 60
c. Conjugation of the Present Tense..... 70
d. In a Store..... 82
e. Cardinal Numbers..... 84
f. Conjugation of the Future Tense..... 90
g. Arrival—Hotel—Rooms..... 93
h. Vocabulary..... 96

MAIN SENTENCE.

What do you want to do this forenoon? I should like to leave by the first train for Paris, but, unfortunately, that is impossible; for I expect a friend from Chicago and must stay in Boulogne till the steamer arrives.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

What will you do this morning? I would like to leave by the first train for Paris, but unfortunately that is impossible, for I expect a friend from Chicago and must stay in Boulogne until that the steamer may arrive.

PHRASE PRINCIPALE.

Que voulez-vous faire ce matin? Je voudrais partir par le premier train pour Paris, mais, malheureusement, cela est impossible, car j'attends un ami de Chicago et dois rester à Boulogne jusqu'à ce que le vapeur arrive.

PRONONCIATION.

Kŭ vōō-lā' vōō fair' sŭ mă-tĭń'? zhŭ vōō-dreh' păr-tēr' păr lŭ prŭ-mē‿eh' trĭń pŏŏr pă-rē' meh mă-lŭ-rŭ-zŭ-măń' sŭ-lā' a tĭń-pō-sē'-bl', kăr zhă-tăń' zŭń nă-mē' dŭ Chicago, ă do‿ă' rē-stā'‿ră bōō-lōn'y' zhūs-kăs' kŭ lŭ vă-pŭr'‿ă-rēv'.

ŏ shŏt; ō nōte; ōō rōōm; ŏŏ fŏŏt; ŭ bŭt; û ûrge.

What do you want to do this forenoon?

What
will you? (do you want to? do you desire to? (Questions in English are asked with the auxilary verb *to do.* We say: What do you want to do? The French say simply: What will you do? We say: Do you go? The French: Go you?)
do (to do, to make)
this morning (this forenoon)?

---

1. What do you want? (Literally: What will you?)
2. What do you want to do? (Literally: What will you do)?
3. What do you want to do this morning? (Literally: What will you do this morning)?
4. What do you desire to do to-morrow? (Literally: What will you do to-morrow (demain)?
5. Will you do it? (Literally: Will you it (le[1]) do)?
6. Do you want to do it to-morrow? (Literally: Will you it do to-morrow)?

---

[1]The so-called *conjunctive personal pronouns*, me, thee, him, her, it, us, you, them are placed *before* the verb in French. The pupil ought to commit these pronouns to memory:

me, *me*, (to me).	lui, *to him, to her.*
te, *thee*, (to thee).	nous, *us*, (to us).
le, *him*, (it).	vous, *you*, (to you).
la, *her.*	les, *them.*
leur, *to them.*	

Que voulez-vous faire ce matin?
Kü vöö-lá'-vöö fair' sü mä-tlń'?

Que (kü)
voulez-vous (vöö-lá'-vöö)

faire (fair')
ce matin (sü mä-tlń')?

---

1. Que voulez-vous?
2. Que voulez-vous faire?

3. Que voulez-vous faire ce matin?

4. Que voulez-vous faire demain? (dü-mlń').

5. Voulez-vous le[1] faire? (lü).
6. Voulez-vous le faire demain?

We say in English: Will you tell me? In French: Will you *me* tell? Voulez-vous me dire? We say: He has written to him; the French: He *to him* has written, il lui a écrit.

I want to do it—I want *it* to do, Je veux le faire. Do you understand it?—*It* understand you? Le comprenez-vous? Yes, I understand it.—Yes, I it understand. Oui, je le comprends. He has sent them a letter.—He *to them* has sent a letter. Il leur a envoyé une lettre.

---

7. Do you want to do it to-day? (Literally: Will you it do to-day (aujourd'hui)?

I want.	we want.
thou wantst.	you want.
he wants.	they want.

8. I don't want to do it this forenoon. (Literally: I will not (je ne veux pas[1]) it do this morning).

9. Why don't you want to do it to-day? (Literally: Why will you not (ne voulez-vous pas[2]) it do to-day)?

I do not want.	we do not want.
thou doest not want.	you do not want.
he does not want.	they do not want.

10. When do you want to do it? (Literally: When will you it do)?
11. Can you do it this forenoon? (Literally: Can you (pouvez-vous) it do this morning)?

---

[1]English negative statements are formed with the auxiliary verb *to do.* We say: I *do* not want to do it. In French such an auxiliary verb is not used. They simply say: I not want to do it.

The negation however consists of two words, viz.: **ne-pas.**

Ne must be placed *before* the verb. This *ne* was formerly the real negation, but has now become a simple *warning*—so to say—that something *negative* is going to be stated.

The real negation **pas** is usually placed *after* the verb, that is to say, the verb, in simple tenses at least, is so to speak, *sandwiched* between *ne* and *pas.*

As:	I speak.	Je parle.
	I do not speak.	Je ne parle pas.

7. Voulez-vous le faire aujourd'hui? (ō-zhŏŏr-dū‿ē').

je veux. (zhū vû).	nous voulons. (nōō vōō-loń').
tu veux. (tū vû).	vous voulez. (vōō vōō-lā').
il veut. (ēl vû).	ils veulent. (ēl vûl').

8. Je ne veux pas[1] le faire ce matin.

9. Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas[2] le faire‿aujourd'hui? (pŏŏr-kō‿ā').

je ne veux pas.	nous ne voulons pas.
tu ne veux pas.	vous ne voulez pas.
il ne veut pas.	ils ne veulent pas.

10. Quand voulez-vous le faire? (kăń).

11. Pouvez-vous le faire ce matin? (pōō-vā'-vōō).

We speak.	Nous parlons.
We don't speak.	Nous ne parlons pas.
Speak!	Parlez!
Don't speak!	Ne parlez pas!

[2] In negative questions the negation *ne-pas* is placed in the following manner:

Do you speak?	Parlez-vous?
Don't you speak?	Ne parlez-vous pas?
He will do it.	Il veut le faire.
Doesn't he want to do it?	Ne veut-il pas le faire?
Does he speak French?	Parle-t-il français?
Doesn't he speak French?	Ne parle-t-il pas français?

---

12. No, I can't do it this morning. (Literally: No, I can not (je ne peux pas) it do this morning).

I can.	we can.
thou canst.	you can.
he can.	they can.

13. Can you do it to-morrow? Yes, I can do it to-morrow morning. (Literally: Can you it do to-morrow? Yes, I can it do to-morrow morning).

To speak.

14. Do you speak French? (Literally: Speak you French (français)?
15. I speak it slightly. (Literally: I it speak a little (un peu).
16. Do you speak it well? (Literally: It speak you well (bien)?
17. No Sir, I don't speak it very well. (Literally: No Sir (monsieur[1]) I *not* (ne) it speak *not* (pas) very well (très bien).

I speak.	we speak.
thou speakst.	you speak.
he speaks.	they speak.

18. Can you express yourself in French? (Literally: Can you yourself express (vous exprimer) in (en) French)?

---

[1]The correct pronunciation of monsieur gives generally great trouble to pupils. There is a general tendency of pronouncing it mŏ-shyû' or mŏ-syûr'. It is needless to say that this is utterly wrong.

Pronounce the word as divided by me, viz.: first syllable mŏs, second syllable yû. Be sure to imitate this pronunciation correctly and practice it till you can say it fluently,

[2]Compare the remarks on verbs of the first conjugation, page 70 and Part X.

---

12. Non, je ne peux pas le faire ce matin. (nŏń zhŭ nŭ pû pă).

je peux. (zhŭ pû). nous pouvons. (nœ̆-pœ̆-vŏń').
tu peux. (tŭ pû). vous pouvez. (vœ̆-pœ̆-vă').
il peut. (ēl pû). ils peuvent. (ēl pûv').

13. Pouvez-vous le faire demain? Oui, je peux le faire demain matin.

Parler. (păr-la').

14. Parlez-vous français? (frăń-seh').

15. Je le parle un peu. (zhŭ lŭ pärl' ŭń pû).

16. Le parlez-vous bien? (bē‿ĭń).

17. Non monsieur[1], je ne le parle pas très bien. (nŏń mŏs-yû', zhŭ nŭ lŭ pärl' pă treh bē‿ĭn').

je parl*e*[2]. (zhŭ pärl'). nous parl*ons*. (nœ̆ păr-lŏń').
tu parl*es*. (tŭ pärl'). vous parl*ez*. (vœ̆ păr-la').
il parl*e*. (ēl pärl'). ils parl*ent*. (ēl pärl').

18. Pouvez-vous vous‿exprimer‿en français? (vœ̆-zĕgz-prē-ma'-äń frăń-seh').

It will be observed that in the whole singular, the verb, though spelled differently, sounds the same, viz.: pärl'.

The same is the case in the third person plural, where *ent* is *not* pronounced.

Let the pupil bear this in mind. It will help him to master the French conjugation.

Only the first and second person in the plural sound differently, viz.: nous parlons, vous parlez.

---

19. I speak it sufficiently to make myself understood. (Literally: I it speak sufficiently (suffisamment) for (pour) me make understand (me faire comprendre).
20 I can not express myself very well in French, but I speak it sufficiently to make myself understood. (Literally: I can not express *me* (m'exprimer) very well in French, but I it speak sufficiently for me make understand).
21. Does this gentleman speak French? (Literally: This gentleman (ce monsieur) speaks he (parle-t-il[2]) French)?
22. Yes, he speaks it fluently. (Literally: Yes (oui[2]), he it speaks fluently).
23. Is he a Frenchman? (Literally: Is he (est-il) French[4])?
24. Yes Sir, he is a Frenchman. (Literally: Yes Sir, he is (il est) French).

I am.	we are.
thou art.	you are.
he is (it is).	they are.
she is.	they are (fem).

25. And you, Sir, are you an American or a Frenchman? (Literally: And (et) you, Sir, are you American (américain) or (ou) French)?
26. Why do you ask that? (Literally: Why me ask you that (demandez-vous cela)?

---

[1]It really ought to be me exprimer. When monosyllables ending in *e* or *a* are followed by a word commencing with a vowel or silent h, these vowels are elided. As: de aller—d'aller; me écrire—m'écrire; le ami—l'ami; la amie—l'amie; le homme—l'homme.

[2]We have already seen that the French do not employ the English auxiliary verb *to do* when asking a question. Thus: Do you speak French? is simply rendered; Speak you French? Parlez-vous français?

When however, the subject of a question is a noun, the inverted form of speech is used, that is to say, the noun begins the sentence and the verb and its corresponding pronoun (*il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*) are placed after it.

19. Je le parle suffisamment pour me faire comprendre. (sŭ-fē-ză-măń'—kŏń-prăń'-dr').

20. Je ne peux pas m'exprimer[1] très bien en français, mais je le parle suffisamment pour me faire comprendre. (zhŭ nŭ pû pă mĕgs-prē-ma').

21. Ce monsieur parle-t-il[2] français? (sŭ mŏs-yû' pärl'-tĕl frăń-seh').

22. Oui[3], il le parle couramment. (ŏŏ‿ē kŏŏ-ră-măń').

23. Est-il français[4]? (a-tĕl).

24. Oui monsieur, il est français. (ēl eh).

je suis. (zhŭ sŭ‿ē').	nous sommes. (nŏŏ sŏm').
tu es. (tŭ eh).	vous êtes. (vŏŏ zêt').
il est. (ēl eh).	ils sont. (ēl sŏń').
elle est. (ĕl eh).	elles sont. (ĕl sŏń').

25. Et vous monsieur, êtes vous‿américain ou français? (a vŏŏ êt'vŏŏ ză-mā-rē-klń' ŏŏ frăń-seh').

26. Pourquoi me demandez-vous cela? (pŏŏr-kŏ‿ă' mŭ dŭ-măń-dă' vŏŏ sŭ-lă').

Does this gentleman speak French? Literally: This gentleman speaks he French?

Ce monsieur parle-t-il français?

Is Madam B. here? Literally: Madam B. is she here?

Madame B. est-elle ici?

[3]This word oui is pronounced with a slight *w* sound.

[4]We say in English: Are you *a* Frenchman? The French express this by saying: Are you French? Etes-vous français? No, I am an American. Non, je suis‿américain.

---

27. I put this question, because you speak English so well. (Literally: I you make (fais) this question (cette question[1]), because (parce que) you speak so (si) well the English (l'anglais[2]).

28. I am a Frenchman, but my mother was an Englishwoman, and I speak both French and English fluently. (Literally: I am French, but (mais) my mother (ma mère[3]) was (était) English (anglaise[4]) and I speak French and English fluently).

29. Is French a difficult language? (Literally: The French is it a language difficult[5]) (une langue difficile)?

30. I was born in Paris and French is my mother-tongue. (Literally: I am[6] born (né) in (à) Paris and the[7] French is my language maternal (maternelle).

31. Is the French pronunciation very difficult? (Literally: The pronunciation French is it (=she) very difficult?)

---

[1]We have two forms in French for this, viz.: ce this, for the masculine, and cette this, for the feminine.

Nouns ending in ion are feminine, consequently we say cette question.

[2]After parler the definite article is (generally) *not* used before names of languages, as: Je parle français, I speak French. Parlez-vous anglais? Do you speak English?

But with an adverb as bien, well, mal, badly, the definite article *must* be used, as: Je ne parle bien le français, I do not speak French well. Vous parlez si bien l'anglais, you speak English so well.

[3]We have two forms for my (*singular*), namely mon for the masculine and ma for the feminine, as: mon père, my father; ma mère; my mother.

---

27. Je vous fais cette[1] question, parce que vous parlez si bien l'anglais[2]. (fa sĕt kĕ-stĕ‿ŏń' păr-sŭ-kŭ—sĕ bĕ‿ĭń' läń-gleh').

28. Je suis français, mais ma[3] mère était‿anglaise[4], et je parle français et anglais couramment. (mä-mair a-teh täń-glehz').

29. Le français est-il une langue difficile[5]? (ŭn läń' dĭ-fĕ-sĕl').

30. Je suis né[6] à Paris et le[7] français est ma langue maternelle. (nä—mä-tĕr-nĕl').

31. La prononciation française est-elle très difficile? (lä pro-nŏń-sĕ‿ä-sĕ‿ŏń' a-tĕl treh dĭ-fĕ-sĕl').

---

[4]The feminine of adjectives is generally formed by adding e to the masculine, as anglais, anglaise; petit, petite.

[5]The qualifying adjective is generally placed *after* the noun, as: une langue difficile, a difficult language; votre‿habit noir, your black coat (= your coat black).

For full rules see Part X.

[6]The French do not use the past tense in connection with this phrase, but say: Where *are* you born? I *am* born in Paris. Où êtes-vous né? Je suis né à Paris.

[7]The definite article is very generally employed. It must be used in French before all nouns employed in a general or indefinite sense, as:

L'homme, man; la nature, nature; la fortune, fortune; le français est ma langue maternelle, French is my mother tongue.

32. The French pronunciation is not very difficult, on the contrary, it is very easy. (Literally: The pronunciation French is not very difficult, on the contrary (au contraire) it (=she[1]) is very easy (aisée).

33. It is very difficult for me to pronounce French phrases correctly. (Literally: It me is very difficult to (de) pronounce correctly (correctement[2]) the phrases French).

34. I think the French pronunciation is very difficult. (Literally: I think (je pense) that (que) the pronunciation French is very difficult).

35. On the contrary, the English pronunciation is much more difficult than ours. (Literally: On the contrary, the pronunciation English is much (beaucoup) more difficult than *the* ours (que la nôtre).

36 English is my mother-tongue. (Literally: The English is my language maternal).

37. Were you born in New York? No sir, I was born in London. (Literally: *Are* you born in New York? No, sir, I *am* born in London).

---

[1] *Elle* must be used in this connection because it refers to la prononciation which in French is feminine; for the same reason the adjective *aisée* is used in the feminine form, as the adjective must agree in gender and number with the noun it qualifies.

[2] The usual position of adverbs is immediately after the verb, if the verb stands in a simple tense, as: Vous prononcez très bien, you pronounce very well. Compare the above phrase. Other rules follow later.

32. La prononciation française n'est pas très difficile, au contraire elle[1] est très‿aisée (o kŏń-trair' ël a' treh za-za').

33. Il m'est très difficile de prononcer correctement[2] les[3] phrases françaises. (ël ma'-dŭ pro-nŏń-sa' kŏ-rĕk-tu măń' leh fräz' fräń-sehz').

34. Je pense que[4] la prononciation française est très difficile. (zhŭ päńs).

35. Au contraire, la prononciation anglaise est beaucoup plus difficile que[5] la nôtre. (bo-kŏ plū-nŏtr').

36. L'anglais est ma langue maternelle.

37. Etes-vous né à New York? Non monsieur, je suis né à Londres.

---

[3]We have three forms for the English *the*, viz: le for the masculine, la for the feminine and les for the plural of both genders. See Definite Article, Part X. Compare also Note 1.

[4]*Que* means also that (conjunction).

[5]*Than* after an adjective used in the comparative is generally rendered by *que*. Compare above phrase.

---

88. The French pronunciation is much easier than yours. We have definite rules for the pronunciation. (Literally: The pronunciation French is much more easy than the yours (la vôtre). We have (nous‿avons) some (des[1]) rules definites (règles définies) for the pronunciation).

AFFIRMATIVE:

I have.	we have.
thou hast.	you have.
he has (it has).	they have (mas).
she has.	they have (fem).

NEGATIVE:

I have not.	we have not.
thou hast not.	you have not.
he has not.	they have not (mas.).
she has not.	" " " (fem.).

QUESTION:	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
have I?	have I not?
hast thou?	hast thou not?
has he?	has he not?
has she?	has she not?
have we?	have we not?
have you?	have you not?
have they (mas.)?	have they not (mas.)?
" " (fem.)?	" " " (fem.)?

[1]In English we can say either: We have definite rules, or: We have *some* definite rules. In French this is not the case. *Some* or *any* must always be expressed.

It is to be rendered by du (for the masculine singular); by de la (for the feminine singular) and by des (for the plural of both genders). As

88. La prononciation française est beaucoup plus aisée que la vôtre. Nous avons des[1] règles définies pour la prononciation. (plū zā-zā' kū lā votr'—nœ̃ zā-vœ̃ń' deh reh'-gl' dā-fē-nē').

AFFIRMATIVE:

j'ai (zhā).	nous avons (nœ̃ zā-vœ̃ń').
tu as (tū ā).	vous avez (vœ̃ zā-vā').
il a (ēl ā).	ils ont (ēl zœ̃ń').
elle a (ēl ā).	elles ont (ēl zœ̃ń').

NEGATIVE:

je n'ai pas.	nous n'avons pas.
tu n'as pas.	vous n'avez pas.
il n'a pas.	ils n'ont pas.
elle n'a pas.	elles n'ont pas.

QUESTION:	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
ai-je?	n'ai-je pas?
as-tu?	n'as-tu pas?
a-t-il?	n'a-t-il pas?
a-t-elle?	n'a-t-elle pas?
avons-nous?	n'avons-nous pas?
avez-vous?	n'avez-vous pas?
ont-ils?	n'ont-ils pas?
ont-elles?	n'ont-elles pas?

Give me bread (*or* some bread).	Donnez-moi du pain.
He is drinking beer (*or* some beer).	Il boit de la bière.
Have you rules (*or* any rules)?	Avez-vous des règles?
Bring me some towels.	Apportez-moi des serviettes.

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT TENSE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

To Pronounce.

AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVE:
I pronounce.	I do not pronounce.
thou pronouncest.	thou doest not pronounce
he pronounces.	he does not pronounce.
we pronounce.	we do not pronounce.
you pronounce.	you do not pronounce.
they pronounce.	they do not pronounce.
QUESTION:	**NEGATIVE QUESTION:**
Do I pronounce?	Do I not pronounce?
doest thou pronounce?	doest thou not pronounce?
does he pronounce?	does he not pronounce?
do we pronounce?	do we not pronounce?
do you pronounce?	do you not pronounce?
do they pronounce?	do they not pronounce?

[1]Verbs of the first conjugation end in er in the infinitive, as parl*er*, to speak; donn*er*, to give; trouv*er*, to find; achet*er*, to buy; arriv*er*, to arrive.

The infinitive is the *ground form* of the verb, on which its conjugation depends.

Er is called the ending.

By striking off the *er* we get the root or stem of the verb.

Thus *parl* is the stem of the verb parler; *arriv* the stem of arriver; *pronone* the stem of prononcer.

The stem remains *unaltered* in all regular verbs.

To the stem various terminations are added, by which persons, tenses and moods are distinguished, and which are common to all verbs of the same conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT TENSE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.[1]

Prononc-er.

AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVE:[2]
je prononc-*e*.	je ne prononc*e* pas.
tu prononc-*es*.	tu ne prononc*es* pas.
il prononc-*e*.	il ne prononc*e* pas.
nous prononç-*ons*[2].	nous ne prononç*ons* pas.
vous prononc-*ez*.	vous ne prononc*ez* pas.
ils prononc-*ent*.	ils ne prononc*ent* pas.
QUESTION:[3]	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
est-ce que je prononc*e*[4]?	est-ce que je ne prononc*e* pas?
prononc*es*-tu?	ne prononc*es*-tu pas?
prononc*e*-t-il?	ne prononc*e*-t-il pas?
prononç*ons*-nous?	ne prononç*ons*-nous pas?
prononc*ez*-vous?	ne prononc*ez*-vous pas?
prononc*ent*-ils?	ne prononc*ent*-ils pas?

In the present tense of the first conjugation the following terminations are added:

je ——— e
tu ——— es
il ——— e
nous ——— ons
vous ——— ez
ils ——— ent

The endings of the whole singular and of the third person plural are *never* pronounced. They therefore invariably sound like the stem of all regular verbs.

(*See foot notes on the following pages.*)

ŏ shŏt; ō nōte; ŏŏ rŏŏm; ŏŏ fŏŏt; ŭ bŭt; â ârge.

THE PRESENT TENSE.

To Think.

AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVE:
I think.	I do not think.
thou thinkest.	thou doest not think.
he thinks.	he does not think.
we think.	we do not think.
you think.	you do not think.
they think.	they do not think.

QUESTION:	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
Do I think?	Do I not think?
doest thou think?	doest thou not think?
does he think?	does he not think?
do we think?	do we not think?
do you think?	do you not think?
do they think?	do they not think?

1. Will you please pronounce this word for me? (Literally: Will you please (veuillez[5]) pronounce this word (ce mot) for me (pour moi[6])?
2. Will you please pronounce it once more? (Literally: Will you please it pronounce yet (encore) one time (une fois).

---

[1]In verbs ending in cer, as prononcer, commencer, placer, a cedilla must be placed under the *c*, whenever this letter is followed by a or o, as: nous prononçons, nous commençons, nous plaçons.

[2]In the negative and interrogative forms the English auxiliary *to do* can not be expressed.

[3]This form with *est-ce-que* is always used instead of the obsolete prononcè-je? Literally it means: is that I pronounce? It is sounded ehskŭzh' prō-noṅs'.

THE PRESENT TENSE.

Pens-er.

AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVE:
je pense.	je ne pense pas.
tu pens-*es*.	tu ne pens*es* pas.
il pens-*e*.	il ne pense pas.
nous pens-*ons*.	nous ne pens*ons* pas.
vous pens-*ez*.	vous ne pens*ez* pas.
ils pens-*ent*.	ils ne pens*ent* pas.
QUESTION:	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
est-ce que je pense?	est-ce que je ne pense pas?
pens*es*-tu?	ne pens*es*-tu pas?
pense-t-il?	ne pense-t-il pas?
pens*ons*-nous?	ne pens*ons*-nous pas?
pens*ez*-vous?	ne pens*ez*-vous pas?
pens*ent*-ils?	ne pens*ent*-ils pas?

1. Veuillez[5] prononcer ce mot pour moi[6]. (vŭ-łeh-mo).

2. Veuillez le prononcer encore une fois. (ăń-kor' ŭn fŏ‿ă').

---

[4]The -t- is inserted for euphony; as: il a, he has; a-t-il? has he? parle-t-il? does he speak? arrive-t-il? does he arrive? trouve-t-il? does he find?

[5]Veuillez means *will you please.* It is followed by the infinitive.

[6]We have two words signifying *me*, viz: me and moi. The former *me* is placed *before* the verb, as: Veuillez me dire, will you please tell me.

After *prepositions* moi must be used, as: Venez‿avec moi, come with me Il parle de moi, he is talking about me. Prononcez ce mot pour moi, pronounce this word for me.

---

3. How is this word pronounced? (Literally How this word pronounces it itself (se prononce-t-il)?
4. I cannot pronounce this word; will you please repeat it (le répéter) once more?
5. Do you know now how this word is pronounced? (Literally: Know you (savez-vous) now how this word itself pronounces)?
6. Yes, now I know how it is pronounced. (Literally: Yes, now I know (je sais) how it to pronounce).
7. Can you understand French? (Literally: Understand you (comprenez-vous) the French[2])?
8. I can understand it slightly. (Literally: I it understand (je le comprends[2]) a little (un peu).
9. Can you understand me when I speak French? (Literally: Me understand you when I you speak French)?
10. I can understand you when you speak slowly and distinctly. (Literally: I you understand when you speak slowly (lentement) and distinctly (distinctement).
11. Can you understand me when I speak fast? (Literally: Me understand you when I speak fast (vite)?
12. No sir, I cannot understand you when you speak so (si) fast.

---

[1] I know, je sais belongs to the irregular verbs. The present tense is conjugated thus:

je sais.	I know.
tu sais.	thou knowest.
il sait.	he knows.
nous savons	we know.
vous savez.	you know.
ils savent.	they know.

[2] The definite article before names of languages is used with all verbs, except parler, where it is employed only when used with an adverb, as:

ă răndom; ā fär; ā shāpe; ĕ mĕt· ē thēre; ē ēve;

3. Comment ce mot se prononce-t-il? (kŏ-măń').

4. Je ne peux pas prononcer ce mot; veuillez le répéter encore une fois. (rā-pā-tā').

5. Savez-vous[1] maintenant comment ce mot se prononce? (sā-vā'—mĭń-tŭ-năń').

6. Oui, maintenant je sais comment le prononcer.

7. Comprenez-vous le[2] français? (kŏń-prŭ-nā').

8. Je le comprends[3] un peu. (zhŭl' kŏń-prăń' zŭń pŭ).

9. Me comprenez-vous quand je vous parle français?

10. Je vous comprends quand vous parlez lentement et distinctement. (lăń-t'măń dĭs-tĭń-t'măń').

11. Me comprenez-vous quand je parle vite? (vēt).

12. Non monsieur, je ne peux pas vous comprendre quand vous parlez si vite. (sē).

Comprenez-vous *le* français? Do you understand French? Je ne parle pas bien *le* français, I do not speak French well. But without an adverb Parlez-vous allemand? Do you speak German?

[3]The present tense of comprendre, to understand is conjugated:

je comprends.	I understand.
tu comprends.	thou understandst.
il comprend.	he understands.
nous comprenons.	we understand.
vous comprenez.	you understand.
ils comprennent.	they understand.

---

13. Will you please speak slowly and distinctly. I am an American and cannot understand you when you speak so rapidly (rapidement).
14. Will you please repeat (répéter) this phrase (cette phrase) once more? I cannot understand you when you speak so quickly.
15. Do you understand me now? (Literally: Me understand you now (maintenant)?
16 Yes, now I understand you perfectly. (Literally: Yes, now I you understand perfectly(parfaitement).
17. What do you say? (Literally: What say you (dites-vous[1])?
18 What does he say? (Literally: What says he (dit-il)?
19. What does this man say? (Literally: What says this man (cet homme)?
20. Do you understand what this man says? No, I don't understand him. (Literally: Understand you what (ce que) says this man? No, I *not* him understand *not*).
21. Do you understand every thing I say? (Literally: Understand you all (tout) what I say)?
22. Yes, I can understand every thing you say, if you speak slowly and distinctly. (Literally: Yes, I can understand all what you say if (si) you speak slowly and distinctly).

---

[1]The present tense of the irregular verb **dire**, to say, to tell is conjugated thus:

je dis,	I tell.
tu dis,	thou tellst.
il dit,	he tells.
nous disons,	we tell.
vous dites,	you tell.
ils disent,	they tell.

13. Veuillez parler lentement et distinctement. Je suis‿américain et je ne peux pas vous comprendre quand vous parlez si rapidement. (rä-pē-d'-mäń').
14. Veuillez répéter cette phrase encore‿une fois. Je ne vous comprends pas quand vous parlez si vite.

15. Me comprenez-vous maintenant?

16. Oui, maintenant je vous comprends parfaitement. (pär-fait'-mäń').
17. Que dites-vous[1]? (kŭ dēt'-vōō).

18. Que dit-il? (dē-tēl').

19. Que dit cet‿homme[2]? (zŭ-tŏm').

20. Comprenez-vous ce que[3] dit cet‿homme? Non, je ne le comprends pas.

21. Comprenez-vous tout ce que je dis? (toos'-kŭzh' dē).
22. Oui, je peux comprendre tout ce que vous dites si vous parlez lentement et distinctement. (toosk' vōō dēt sē).

---

[1]Before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or silent *h* the French use **cet**, as: cet‿ami, this friend, cet‿homme, this man.

We have therefore three forms for our demonstrative pronoun this, viz.: **ce**, cet and cette, used as follows:

ce (masculine), as: ce monsieur, this gentleman.
cet (masculine), as: cet‿ami, this friend; cet‿homme, this man.
cette (feminine), as: cette dame, this lady.

[3]What (if not used in a question) is expressed by **ce que**. Observe that the relative pronoun must always be expressed in French. In English we frequently omit it. This can never be done in French.

---

23. I don't understand this word; will you please repeat it once more?
24. Do you understand it now? Yes, now I understand it, (Literally: It understand you now? Yes, now I it understand).
25. What does this word mean? (Literally: What means (signifie[1]) this word)?
26. What is the meaning of this word in English? (Literally: What means this word in (en) English)?
27. What does this mean? (Literally: What means this (cela)?
28. Will you please repeat that once more. I don't understand what that means.
29. Explain this word, pray. (Literally: Explain (expliquez[1]) this word if it you pleases (s'il vous plaît).
30. Will you please explain this word once more to me? (Literally: Will you please me explain this word once more)?
31. Do you know now what this word means in English? (Literally: Know you now what (ce que) this word signifies in English)?
32. Yes, now I know the meaning of this word. (Literally: Yes, now I know what this word signifies).
33. Will you please explain this French phrase to me; I dont know what it signifies in English. (Literally: Will you please me explain this phrase French, I *not* know *not* what *she* signifies in English).

---

[1]With que the simple form can be used in questions. (Compare note page 62). As: Que dit ce monsieur? What does this gentleman say?
The same is the case with où, where. As: Où demeurent ces dames? Where do these ladies live?

---

23. Je ne comprends pas ce mot; veuillez le répéter encore‿une fois.
24 Le comprenez-vous maintenant? Oui, maintenant je le comprends.

25. Que signifie[1] ce mot? (sĭn-yē-fē').

26. Que signifie ce mot‿en‿anglais? (mō-tăñ-nāñ-glēh).

27. Que signifie cela?

28. Veuillez répéter cela encore‿une fois. Je ne comprends pas ce que cela signifie.
29. Expliquez[2] ce mot, s'il vous plaît. (ēks-plē-kā'-sēl vōō plēh').

30. Veuillez m'expliquer ce mot‿encore‿une fois.

31. Savez-vous maintenant ce que ce mot signifie en‿anglais?

32. Oui, maintenant je sais ce que ce mot signifie.

33. Veuillez m'expliquer cette phrase française; je ne sais pas ce qu'elle signifie en‿anglais.

---

[2]Expliquez is the imperative of expliquer, to explain. Thus we say: Parlez lentement s'il vous plaît, speak slowly if you please. Prononcez ce mot pour moi, pronounce this word for me. Répétez cela, repeat that.

---

34. Do you understand the meaning of this phrase now? (Literally: Understand you now what this phrase signifies)?
35. Yes, now I know what this phrase means and can say it in French and English. (Literally: Yes, now I know what this phrase means and I can *her*[1] say in French and in English).
36. Do you know the meaning of "dire encore"? No, I don't. (Literally; Know you what "dire encore" signifies? No, I *not* it know *not*).
37. "Dire encore" means to repeat. I can say: "Will you please repeat that" or "Will you please say it again." Both phrases have the same meaning. (Literally: "Dire encore" signifies to say again. I can say: "Will you please repeat that" or "Will you please it say again (encore). These (ces) two phrases signify the same thing (la même chose).
38. It is very hard for me to pronounce all these phrases correctly. I think the French pronunciation is very difficult. (Literally: It me is very difficult to pronounce correctly all these phrases (toutes ces phrases). I think that the pronunciation French is very (bien) difficult).
39. On the contrary, the French pronunciation is very easy.
40. French words are pronounced in accordance with definite rules. (Literally: The words French themselves (se) pronounce following (suivant) some (des) rules definite).

[1]La, because it refers to the feminine word cette phrase.
[2]No, I don't, must be given by the repetition of the full phrase.

34. Comprenez-vous maintenant ce que cette phrase signifie?

35. Oui, maintenant je sais ce que cette phrase signifie et je peux la[1] dire‿en français et en‿anglais. (dēr).

36. Savez-vous ce que "dire‿encore" signifie? Non, je ne le sais pas[2].

37. "Dire‿encore" signifie répéter. Je peux dire: "Veuillez répéter cela" ou "Veuillez le dire‿encore." Ces[2] deux phrases signifient la même chose. (seh dû frăz' sĭn-yē-fē' là mē'-m' shōz').

38. Il m'est très difficile de prononcer correctement toutes ces phrases. Je pense que la prononciation française est bien difficile. (tōōt').

39. Au contraire, la prononciation française est très facile.
40. Les mots français se prononcent suivant des règles définies. (sû‿ē-vănt').

---

[1]The plural of ce, cet and cette is ces, both for the masculine and feminine.

ē shōt; ē nēte; ōō rōōm; ŏŏ fŏŏt; ū būt; û ûrge.

In a Store.

1. What do you want to do in this store? I want to buy something. (Literally: What will you do in (dans) this store (ce magasin)? I want to buy (acheter) something (quelque chose).
2. What do you want to buy? I wish to purchase a hat. (Literally: What will you buy? I wish (je désire[1]) to buy a hat (un[2] chapeau).
3. Pray accompany me. I want to buy a hat and I don't speak French well enough. (Literally: Will you please me accompany (m'accompagner). I want to buy a hat and I *not* speak *not* enough (assez) well the French)
4. Good morning[3] Sir. My friend would like to buy a hat. (Literally: Good day (bonjour), Sir. My friend (mon‿ami) would like (voudrait) to buy a hat).

   I should like.
   thou wouldst like.
   he would like.
   we should like.
   you would like.
   they would like.

5. Do you wish a high hat or a round one? (Literally: Desire you a hat high (haut) or (ou) a hat round (rond)?
6. I want a round hat. (Literally: I want a hat round).

---

[1]Désirer, to wish, to desire.

[2]For the indefinite article we have two forms, viz.: un, a (for masculine nouns) and une, a (for feminine nouns). As: un chapeau, a hat; une paire, a pair. Un frère, a brother; une soeur, a sister.

Dans un Magasin.

(dăń zŭń mă-gă-ziń').

1. Que voulez-vous faire dans ce magasin? Je veux‿ acheter quelque chose. (zhŭ vŭ zăsh-ta' kĕl-kŭ shōz').

2. Que voulez-vous‿acheter?—Je désire[1] acheter‿un[2] chapeau. (da-zēr'-ŭń shă-pō').

3. Veuillez m'accompagner. Je veux‿acheter‿un chapeau et je ne parle pas‿assez bien le français. (mă-kŏń-păn-ya'-pă zā-seh').

4. Bonjour[3], monsieur Mon‿ami voudrait‿acheter un chapeau. (bŏń-zhœr'—mŏń nă-mē' vœ-dreh. tăsh-ta').

   je voudrais (zhŭ vœ-dreh).
   tu voudrais (tŭ vœ-dreh).
   il voudrait (ēl vœ-dreh).
   nous voudrions (nœ vœ drē-yoń).
   vous voudriez (vœ vœ-drē-ya).
   ils voudraient (ēl vœ- dreh).

5. Désirez-vous‿un chapeau haut ou un chapeau rond? (o œ ŭń shă-pō' roń).

6. Je désire un chapeau rond.

---

[1]We can not say *good morning* or *good afternoon* in French, but always salute each other with bon jour, good day (frequently written in one word). Good evening, bon soir.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

NOMBRES CARDINAUX.

Un,	uń,	1	Dix-neuf,	dēz-nŭf',	19
Deux,	dû,	2	Vingt,	viń,	20
Trois,	trŏ‿ä',	3	Vingt‿et un,	viń-ta-un',	21
Quatre,	kä-tr',	4	Vingt-deux,	vińt-dû',	22
Cinq,[1]	sińk',	5	Vingt-trois,	viń-trŏ‿ä',	23
Six,[2]	sēs,	6	Vingt-quatre,	viń-kä-tr',	24
Sept,[3]	sĕt,	7	Vingt-cinq,	viń-sink',	25
Huit,[3]	ü‿ĕt',	8	Vingt-six,	viń-sēs',	26
Neuf,[3]	nŭf',	9	Vingt-sept,	viń-sĕt',	27
Dix,[2]	dēs',	10	Vingt-huit,	viń-tü‿ĕt',	28
Onze,	ońz',	11	Vingt-neuf,	viń-nŭf',	29
Douze,	dōōz',	12	Trente,	trań'-t',	30
Treize,	trĕz',	13	Trente‿et un,	trań-ta-un',	31
Quatorze,	kä-torz,.	14	Trente-deux,,	trańt-dû',	32
Quinze,	kińz',	15	Quarante,	kä-rań'-t',	40
Seize,	sehz',	16	Quarante‿et un,[4]		41
Dix-sept,	dē-sĕt',	17	Quarante-deux, etc.,		42
Dix‿huit,	dē-zü‿ĕt',	18			

---

[1]Cinq is pronounced sińk, when alone, or before a word beginning with a vowel (*or* silent h). Otherwise, siń. Cinq‿heures, siń-kŭr, five o'clock. Cinq minutes—siń mē-nüt', five minutes.

[2]Six and dix are pronounced sēs and dēs, when alone, sēz and dēz when before a vowel (or silent h), and sē and dē before a consonant (or h aspirate). Six heures—sē-zŭr', six o'clock. Six minutes—sē mē-nüt', six minutes.

[3]Sept, huit, and neuf before a consonant are generally pronounced sĕh, ü‿ē, nŭ. Thus: Sept jours—sĕh zhōōr, seven days.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

NOMBRES CARDINAUX.

Cinquante, siń-kań'-t',	50	Quatre-vingt-dix,	90
Cinquante‿et un,[4]	51	Quatre-vingt-onze,	91
Soixante, so‿ă-sań't',	60	Quatre-vingt-douze,	92
Soixante‿et un,[4]	61	Quatre-vingt-treize,	93
Soixante-dix,[5]	70	Quatre-vingt-quatorze,	94
Soixante et onze,[7]	71	Quatre-vingt-quinze,	95
Soixante-douze,	72	Quatre-vingt-seize,	96
Soixante-treize,	73	Quatre-vingt-dix-sept,	97
Soixante-quatorze,	74	Quatre-vingt-dix-huit,	98
Soixante-quinze,	75	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf,	99
Soixante-seize,	76	Cent sań,	100
Soixante-dix-sept,	77	Cent un, sań uń,	101
Soixante-dix-huit,	78	Mille, mēl, A thousand.	
Soixante-dix-neuf,[6]	79	Un million, mē-lē‿oń', [a million.	
Quatre-vingt,	80		
Quatre-vingt-un,[8]	81	Un milliard, mē-lē‿ăr', [a billion.	

---

[4]Kă-rań-tă-uń'; Siń-kań-tă-uń', Sŏ‿ă-sań-tă-uń'. The t of the conjunction et is never carried forward.

[5]Sŏ‿ă-sań-dēs; Sŏ‿ă-sań-tă-ońz'; sŏ‿ă-sań-dōōz'; . . . Kă-trŭ-viń'; Kă-trŭ-viń-uń'; Kă-trŭ-viń ońz'.

[6]As will have been observed, the French count from 60 to 100 in two series of twenty each, instead of four series of ten. Thus they say, *sixty-nine, sixty-ten, sixty-eleven, sixty-twelve.... sixty-nineteen, eighty;* and *eighty-nine, eighty-ten, eighty-eleven....eighty-nineteen, hundred.*

[7]Some say also, soixante‿onze (so‿a-sań-tońz').

[8]After eighty the word et is dropped from before un. Thus, quatre-vingt-un, not *et* un; quatre-vingt-onze, not *et* onze; cent un, not *et* un.

---

7. What number do you wear? (Literally: What number (quel numéro) wear you (portez-vous)?
8. I wear number seven. (Literally: I wear the number seven (sept[1]).
9. I would also like to buy a pair of gloves. (Literally: I would like also (aussi) to buy a pair (une paire) of gloves (de gants).
10. What kind of gloves do you wear?—Kid gloves.—(Literally: What kind (quelle sorte) of gloves wear you?—Some (des) gloves of kid (chevreau).
11. And what number do you wear?—Number six. (Literally: And what number wear you?—Number six).
12. Do these gloves fit?—Yes, these gloves fit me very well. (Literally: These gloves you go they (vont-ils[2])?—Yes, these gloves me go very well).

I go.	we go.
thou goest.	you go.
he goes.	they go.

13. And how does this hat fit?—It fits all right. (Literally: And how (comment) you goes this hat?—It me goes very well).

---

[1]The numerals are most important and ought to be mastered at once. They are very difficult, but the pupil must learn them so thoroughly that he can give any number at once and without hesitation. See pages 84 and 85 and Part X.

[2]Je vais etc. is the present tense of the irregular verb *aller*, to go. Pupils generally experience great difficulties in mastering this verb. The conjugation of the present tense resembles that of *avoir*, to have. When the two verbs are learned *together* all difficulties vanish. The student ought therefore to learn the two verbs as per following table:

7. Quel numéro portez-vous? (kĕl nū-ma-ro′ pŏr-ta′-vōō).
8. Je porte le numéro sept[1].

9. Je voudrais‿aussi acheter une paire de gants. (vōō-dreh-zŏ-sē—ūn' pair' dŭ gań').

10. Quelle sorte de gants portez-vous?—Des gants de chevreau. (kĕl sŏrt' shŭ-vro′).

11. Et quel numéro portez-vous?—Numéro six. (sēs).

12. Ces gants vous vont-ils[2]?—Oui, ces gants me vont très bien. (vōō vŏń-tēl).

je vais (zhŭ veh).	nous‿allons (nōō zä-loń′).
tu vas (tū vä).	vous‿allez (vōō zä-la′).
il va (ēl vä).	ils vont (el vŏń').

13. Et comment vous va ce chapeau?—Il me va très bien. (kŏ-mäń′ vōō vä).

I HAVE:	I GO:
j'ai.	je vais.
tu as.	tu vas.
il a.	il va.
nous avons.	nous allons.
vous avez.	vous allez.
ils ont.	ils vont.

It will be found that the two verbs rhyme, as: j'ai—je vais; tu as—tu vas; il a —il va etc.

Aller is here used idiomatically for *to fit.*

ŏ shŏt; ō nōte; ōō rōōm; ŏŏ fŏŏt; ū būt; û ûrge.

14. Please show me some other gloves; these do not fit well. (Literally: Will you please me show (montrer) some other (d'autres[1]) gloves; these here (ceux-ci) *not* me go *not*).

15 How much is this hat?—This hat costs ten francs. (Literally: How much (combien) costs (coûte) this hat?—This hat costs ten franes (dix francs).

16. And what is the price of these gloves?—Eight francs. (Literally: And what is the price (le prix) of these gloves?—Eight (huit) francs).

17. That is very dear.—Oh no, Sir, that is very cheap. (Literally: That is (c'est) very dear (cher).—Oh no, Sir, that is very good bargain (bon marché).

18. Do you want to pay for these gloves now? (Literally: Will you pay (payer) these gloves now (maintenant)?

19. Yes, I want to pay for them now. Here is your money.—Many thanks. (Literally: Yes, I want them (les) to pay now. Here is (voici) your money (votre argent).—Thanks much (merci beaucoup) Sir).

20. Do you want to pay for this hat now? (Literally: Will you pay this hat now)?

21. No, please send this hat and your bill to my hotel. I'll pay for it there. I haven't money enough with me. (Literally: No, will you please send (envoyer) this hat and your bill (votre facture) to (à) my hotel. I her (la) shall pay (paierai[2]) there (là). I have not enough of money (assez d'argent) upon me (sur moi).

---

[1]We have already seen that *some* or *any* must always be rendered in French by **du, de la, de l'** in the singular and by **des** in the plural, except in three cases, when it is given by **de** (or **d'**):

These are

1. Before an adjective;
2. After an adverb of quantity;
3. After a negation.

---

14. Veuillez me montrer d'autres[1] gants; ceux-ci ne me vont pas. (mŏn-trā'-dōt'-r'—sû-sē).

15. Combien coûte ce chapeau? Ce chapeau coûte dix francs. (kŏn-bē‿ań' kōōt—dē frăń).

16. Et quel‿est le prix de ces gants? Huit francs. (prē—ū‿ē').

17. C'est très cher. Oh non, monsieur, c'est très bon marché. (seh—shehr—bŏń măr-sha').

18. Voulez-vous payer ces gants maintenant? (pā-yā' —mań-t'-năń').

19. Oui, je veux les payer maintenant. Voici votre‿ argent. Merci beaucoup monsieur. (vŏ‿ā-sē' vŏt-rār-zhăń'—mĕr-sē' bo-kōō').

20. Voulez-vous payer ce chapeau maintenant?

21. Non, veuillez‿envoyer ce chapeau et votre facture à mon‿hôtel. Je la paierai[2] là[3]. Je n'ai pas‿assez d'argent[1] sur moi. (vū-ła-zăń-vŏ‿ā-yā'—fāk-tūr' —pā-yū-rā lā'—pā-zā-seh' dār-zhăń' sūr' mŏ‿ā').

As: Montrez-moi d'autres gants, show me some other gloves. Avez-vous de bonnes plumes? Have you good pens? J'ai assez d'argent, I have money enough. Je ne bois pas de vin, I don't drink wine.

[2]For the formation of the future tense see next page.

[3]Là (with the grave accent) means there.

CONJUGATION OF THE FUTURE TENSE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

To Pronounce.

AFFIRMATIVE;	NEGATIVE:
I shall pronounce.	I shall not pronounce
thou wilt pronounce.	thou wilt not pronounce.
he will pronounce.	he will not pronounce.
we shall pronounce.	we shall not pronounce.
you will pronounce.	you will not pronounce.
they will pronounce.	they will not pronounce.

QUESTION:	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
shall I pronounce?	shall I not pronounce?
wilt thou pronounce?	wilt thou not pronounce?
will he pronounce?	will he not pronounce?
shall we pronounce?	shall we not pronounce?
will you pronounce?	will you not pronounce?
will they pronounce?	will they not pronounce?

[1]The future tense of regular verbs of the first conjugation is formed by adding *erai*, *eras*, *era*, *erons*, *eres*, *eront* to the stem. (Compare page 70). We have therefore the following table:

je ——— erai.
tu ——— eras.
il ——— era.
nous ——— erons.
vous ——— erez.
ils ——— eront.

These endings are pronounced ü-rā, ü-rās, ü-rā, ü-rōn, ü-rā, ü-rōn.

CONJUGATION OF THE FUTURE TENSE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Prononc-er[1].

AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVE:
je prononc*erai*.	je ne prononc*erai* pas.
tu prononc*eras*.	tu ne prononc*eras* pas.
il prononc*era*.	il ne prononc*era* pas.
nous prononc*erons*.	nous ne prononc*erons* pas.
vous prononc*erez*.	vous ne prononc*erez* pas.
ils prononc*eront*.	ils ne pronoc*eront* pas.
QUESTION:	**NEGATIVE QUESTION:**
prononc*erai*-je?	ne prononc*erai*-je pas?
prononc*eras*-tu?	ne prononc*eras*-tu pas?
pronoc*era*-t-il?	ne prononc*era*-t-il-pas?
prononc*erons*-nous?	ne prononc*erons*-nous pas?
prononc*erez*-vous?	ne prononc*erez*-vous pas?
prononc*eront*-ils?	ne prononc*eront*-ils pas?

Form and conjugate the future tense of the following verbs: penser, to think; arriver, to arrive; demander, to ask; trouver, to find; manger, to eat; dîner, to dine; causer, to chat; chercher, to seek; prier, to beg; donner, to give.

The future must be used in French for our "I will" when futurity is expressed, that is to say whenever "I will" cannot be changed to "I want to, I wish to, I desire," the future tense must be used, as:

When will you do it? (=When do you want to do it)? Quand voulez-vous le faire?

I'll do it at once. Je le ferai tout de suite.

---

22. Have you any money with you (=upon you)?
23. How much money have you with you? (Literally: How much of[1] money have you upon you)?
24. Have you much money with you? (Literally: Have you much of[1] money upon you)?
25. I have very little money with me. (Literally: I have very little of[1] money upon me).
26. I haven't much money with me. Send this hat to my hotel; I'll pay for it there. (Literally: I have not much of money upon me. Send (envoyez) this hat to my hotel. I it shall pay (paierai) there).

Arrival.—Hotel.—Rooms.

1. What do you want to do when when we get there? (Literally: What will you do on arriving (en arrivant)?
2. I am very tired. I should like to go at once to a good hotel. (Literally: I am very tired (fatigué). I would like to go directly (directement) to (dans) a good hotel (un bon hôtel).
3. To which hotel do you want to go?—To the "Opéra Hotel." (Literally: To (à) which (quel) hotel will you go? To the Hotel of the Opéra (l'Hôtel de l'Opéra).

[1]De must be employed after the following *adverbs of quantity:*

Assez, enough.	Moins, less.
Beaucoup, much; a great deal; a great many.	Rien, nothing.
	Trop, too much; too many.
Combien, how much? how many?	Tant, so much; so many.
Peu, little; few.	Quelque chose, something.

CONJUGATION OF THE FUTURE TENSE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Prononc-er[1].

AFFIRMATIVE:	NEGATIVE:
je prononc*erai*.	je ne prononc*erai* pas.
tu prononc*eras*.	tu ne prononc*eras* pas.
il prononc*era*.	il ne prononc*era* pas.
nous prononc*erons*.	nous ne prononc*erons* pas.
vous prononc*erez*.	vous ne prononc*erez* pas.
ils prononc*eront*.	ils ne pronoc*eront* pas.

QUESTION:	NEGATIVE QUESTION:
prononc*erai*-je?	ne prononc*erai*-je pas?
prononc*eras*-tu?	ne prononc*eras*-tu pas?
pronoc*era*-t-il?	ne prononc*era*-t-il-pas?
prononc*erons*-nous?	ne prononc*erons*-nous pas?
prononc*erez*-vous?	ne prononc*erez*-vous pas?
prononc*eront*-ils?	ne prononc*eront*-ils pas?

Form and conjugate the future tense of the following verbs: penser, to think; arriver, to arrive; demander, to ask; trouver, to find; manger, to eat; dîner, to dine; causer, to chat; chercher, to seek; prier, to beg; donner, to give.

The future must be used in French for our "I will" when futurity is expressed, that is to say whenever "I will" cannot be changed to "I want to, I wish to, I desire," the future tense must be used, as:

When will you do it? (=When do you want to do it)? Quand voulez-vous le faire?

I'll do it at once. Je le ferai tout de suite.

---

22. Have you any money with you (=upon you)?
23. How much money have you with you? (Literally: How much of[1] money have you upon you)?
24. Have you much money with you? (Literally: Have you much of[1] money upon you)?
25. I have very little money with me. (Literally: I have very little of[1] money upon me).
26. I haven't much money with me. Send this hat to my hotel; I'll pay for it there. (Literally: I have not much of money upon me. Send (envoyez) this hat to my hotel. I it shall pay (paierai) there).

Arrival.—Hotel.—Rooms.

1. What do you want to do when when we get there? (Literally: What will you do on arriving (en arrivant)?
2. I am very tired. I should like to go at once to a good hotel. (Literally: I am very tired (fatigué). I would like to go directly (directement) to (dans) a good hotel (un bon hôtel).
3. To which hotel do you want to go?—To the "Opéra Hotel." (Literally: To (à) which (quel) hotel will you go? To the Hotel of the Opéra (l'Hôtel de l'Opéra).

[1] De must be employed after the following *adverbs of quantity:*

Assez, enough.	Moins, less.
Beaucoup, much; a great deal; a great many.	Rien, nothing.
	Trop, too much; too many.
Combien, how much? how many?	Tant, so much; so many.
Peu, little; few.	Quelque chose, something.

22. Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?
23. Combien d'argent[1] avez-vous sur vous?

24 Avez-vous beaucoup d'argent[1] sur vous?

25. J'ai très peu d'argent sur moi.

26. Je n'ai pas beaucoup d'argent sur moi. Envoyez ce chapeau à mon‿hôtel; je le paierai là.

L'Arrivée.—L'Hôtel.—Les Chambres.

1. Que voulez-vous faire en‿arrivant?(ăń-nă-rē-văń).

2. Je suis très fatigué. Je voudrais‿aller directement dans‿un bon‿hôtel. (fă-tē-ga'—dē-rĕk-t' măń' dăń zŭń).

3. A quel hôtel voulez-vous‿aller?—A l'Hôtel de l'Opéra. (lō-tĕl' d'lō-pā-rā').

EXAMPLES:

J'ai vu beaucoup *de* personnes.	I have seen a great many persons.
J'ai très peu *d'*argent sur moi.	I have very little money with me.
Combien *d'*argent avez-vous sur vous?	How much money have you with you?
Montrez-moi quelque chose *de* beau.	Show me something nice.
Vous avez fait trop *de* fautes.	You have made too many mistakes.
Je ne sais rien *de* nouveau.	I don't know anything new.

ō shŏt; ō nōte; ŏŏ rŏŏm; ŏŏ fŏŏt; ŭ bŭt; â ârge.

4. Are you going to walk? No, I am going to take a cab. (Literally: Go you[1] walk (marcher)? No, I go take (prendre) a cab (un fiacre).

5. I am very tired. I cannot walk to the hotel. I am going to take a cab.

6. Are you going to walk to your hotel, or will you take a cab? (Literally: Go you walk to your hotel, or shall you take (prendrez-vous[2]) a cab)?

7. I am not tired. I am going to walk.

8. Have you any baggage (des bagages)?

9. Have you much baggage? (Literally: Have you much of baggages)?

10. How much baggage have you? (Literally: How much (combien) of baggages have you)?

11. I have a great deal of luggage. I cannot walk to my hotel. I am going to take a cab. (Literally: I have much of luggage, etc).

12. I have very little baggage. I am going to take the street-car. (Literally: I have very little of baggage. I go take the street-car (le tramway[3]).

---

[1]We have no progressive conjugation in French. Whether we say in English: *I speak* or *I am speaking* is immaterial in French. We have only *one* form for both expressions, viz.: je parle. I go *or* I am going, je vais. Are you thinking? *or* do you think? Pensez-vous?

[2]We have already learned the future tense of regular verbs of the first conjugation. The future terminations of verbs of the other conjugations and of irregular verbs are almost similar and present few difficulties.

The future tense of prendre, to take and comprendre, to understand is formed thus:

---

4. Allez-vous[1] marcher? Non, je vais prendre‿un fiacre. (mär-shä'—präń'—d'r ŭń fē-ä'-kr').

5. Je suis très fatigué. Je ne peux pas marcher à l'hôtel. Je vais prendre‿un fiacre.

6. Allez-vous marcher à votre‿hôtel ou prendrez-vous‿un[2] fiacre? (präń-drä'-vœ).

7. Je ne suis pas fatigué. Je vais marcher.

8. Avez-vous des bagages? (bä-gäzh').

9. Avez-vous beaucoup de bagages?

10. Combien de bagages avez-vous? (köń-bē‿ïń).

11. J'ai beaucoup de bagages. Je ne peux pas marcher à mon‿hôtel. Je vais prendre un fiacre.

12. J'ai très peu de bagages. Je vais prendre le tramway[3]. (träń-veh').

---

je prend*rai*, I shall take.
tu prend*ras*, thou wilt take.
il prend*ra*, he will take.
nous prend*rons*, we shall take.
vous prend*rez*, you will take.
ils prend*ront*, they will take.

je comprend*rai*, I shall understand.
tu comprend*ras*, thou wilt understand.
il comprend*ra*, he will understand.
nous comprend*rons* we shall understand
vous comprend*rez*, you will understand.
ils comprend*ront*, they will understand.

[3]This word is of course English, Street-cars in England are called "tramways." The French adopted this word, but pronounce it in a French manner.

VOCABULAIRE.	VOCABULARY.
La Langue; les langues.	**The Language; the languages.**
LA PRONONCIATION.	THE PRONUNCIATION.
Vous‿avez‿une bonne prononciation.	You have a good pronunciation.
Sa prononciation est très mauvaise (mŏ-vehz').	His pronunciation is very bad.
L'accent (lăk-săń').	The accent.
Les‿accents.	The accents.
Vous ne mettez pas l'accent juste sur cette syllabe. (mĕ-ta—zhûst'—sĕ-lăb').	You do not put the right accent on this syllable.
Mettez l'accent juste sur cette syllabe.	Put the right accent on this syllable.
Prononcer.	To pronounce.
Vous prononcez bien.	You pronounce well.
Vous prononcez mal.	You pronounce badly.
Vous ne prononcez pas ce mot correctement.	You do not pronounce this word correctly.
Vous prononcez ce mot‿incorrectement. (ıń-kŏ-rĕk-t'măń').	You pronounce this word incorrectly.
Corriger. (kŏ-rĕ-zhā').	To correct.
L'erreur. (lĕ-rûr').	The mistake.
Les‿erreurs. (leh-zĕ-rûr')	The mistakes
Veuillez me corriger quand je fais des‿erreurs dans la prononciation.	Will you please correct me when I make mistakes in the pronunciation.
Vous‿avez fait‿une‿erreur.	You have made a mistake.

L'Arrivée.—L'Hôtel.—Les Chambres.

Suite.

13. J'ai beaucoup de bagages. Je ne peux pas‿aller à pied à mon‿hôtel. Je vais prendre‿une voiture. (pē⁀a'-vo⁀ä-tür').

14. Cocher, à l'Hôtel d'Angleterre. (kō-shä' dań-lü-tërr').
15. Bonjour monsieur; pouvez—vous me donner une bonne[1] chambre? (bŏn shäń'-br').

16. Pouvez-vous me donner une bonne chambre au premier⁀étage (*or* au premier[2])? (ō-prü-mē⁀ ra-täzh').
17. Je suis très fatigué et désire me coucher[3] de suite. (kōō-sha dü sü⁀ēt').

18. Veuillez me donner une bonne chambre au premier ⁀étage.

---

floor, will find himself taken to the third story by his innocent host who will be utterly incapable of understanding his guest's disappointment.

The word **étage** may be omitted. **Au premier, au second, au troisième,** etc., are in fact much more frequently used than **au premier ‿étage, au deuxième‿étage, au troisième‿étage,** etc.

[3]**Se coucher** is a so-called reflexive verb. Reflexive verbs are those in which the action is reflected upon the subject, as: I wash myself; she flatters herself, etc. Many verbs however, are reflexive in French which are not so in English, as: **se coucher,** to retire, to go to bed.

For full rules and conjugation see Part X.

748530

Arrival.—Hotel.—Rooms.

Continuation.

13. I have a great deal of baggage. I cannot walk to my hotel. I am going to take a cab. (Literally: I have much of *baggages*. I not can *not* go afoot (à pied) to my hotel. I go take a cab (une voiture).
14. Driver, to the "Hotel of England" (l'Hôtel d'Angleterre).
15. Good day, sir; can you give me a good room? (Literally: Good day, sir; can you me give a good room (une bonne[1] chambre)?
16. Can you give me a good room on the first floor? (Literally: Can you me give a good room on the first floor (au premier étage[2])?
17. I am very tired and wish to go to bed at once. (Literally: I am very tired and desire (désire) *me* to retire (me coucher[3]) at once (de suite).
18. Please give me a good room on the first floor. (Literally: Will you please (veuillez) me give a good room on the first floor).

---

[1]Adjectives ending in **on** or **ien** form their feminine forms by doubling the **n** and adding **e**, as: **bon, bonne,** good; **ancien, ancienne,** old. It has been stated before that all adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns they determine or qualify.

[2]In French houses and hotels the *first* story frequently corresponds to our *third* floor.

The first or ground floor is **le rez-de-chaussée**; the second is **l'entresol**; the next or *third* **le premier**; the fourth, **le second**; the *fifth*, **le troisième**, etc.

Great care ought therefore to be taken by travelers when ordering rooms by telegraph. The tourist who has engaged rooms on the *first*

L'Arrivée.—L'Hôtel.—Les Chambres.

Suite.

13. J'ai beaucoup de bagages. Je ne peux pas‿aller à pied à mon‿hôtel. Je vais prendre‿une voiture. (pē‿a'-vo‿ä-tür').

14. Cocher, à "l'Hôtel d'Angleterre. (kō-shä' dań-lō-tērr').
15. Bonjour monsieur; pouvez—vous me donner une bonne[1] chambre? (bōn shäń'-br').

16. Pouvez-vous me donner une bonne chambre au premier‿étage (*or* au premier[2])? (ō-prü-mē‿ra-täzh').
17. Je suis très fatigué et désire me coucher[3] de suite. (kōō-sha dü sü‿ēt').

18. Veuillez me donner une bonne chambre au premier‿étage.

---

floor, will find himself taken to the third story by his innocent host who will be utterly incapable of understanding his guest's disappointment.

The word **étage** may be omitted. **Au premier, au second, au troisième,** etc., are in fact much more frequently used than **au premier‿étage, au deuxième‿étage, au troisième‿étage,** etc.

[3]**Se coucher** is a so-called reflexive verb. Reflexive verbs are those in which the action is reflected upon the subject, as: I wash myself; she flatters herself, etc. Many verbs however, are reflexive in French which are not so in English, as: **se coucher,** to retire, to go to bed.

For full rules and conjugation see Part X.

748530

19. Please show me a good room on the second floor. (Literally: Will you please me show a good room on the second floor (au deuxième‿étage).
20. At what price can you give me this room? (Literally: At what price can you me give this room (cette chambre)?
21. What is the price of this room per day? (Literally: What is the price (le prix) of this room per day (par jour)? *Or:* Of what price this room is *she* per day)?
22. How much is this room per day? (Literally: How much costs this room per day? *Or:* Of how much is this room per day)?
23. This room is five francs per day. (Literally: This room costs five francs per day. *Or:* This room is of five francs per day).
24. That's too dear. Could I get one for three francs? (Literally: That is (c'est) too dear (trop cher); could I (pourrais-je) *of it*[1] (en) have (avoir) one (une) at (à) three francs)?

---

[1]The proper use of en presents great difficulties, as it is scarcely ever expressed in English.

In English we give as a general rule short replies to preceding questions. Not so in French where anything expressed in a previous question must be referred to again. Thus we say in English:

Question: Have you a pen?

Answer: { ENGLISH: Yes, I have one.
FRENCH: Yes, I have one *of them*, Oui, j'en‿ai une.

Question: Did Mr. B. give you any money?

Answer: { ENGLISH: No, he didn't.
FRENCH: No, he didn't give me *of it*, Non, il ne m'en‿a pas donné.

As seen from these examples en means of it, of them, from it, from them, for it, for them, about it, about them, some, any, from there, and must be supplied in sentences though it cannot be expressed in English.

---

19 Veuillez me montrer une bonne chambre au deuxième‿étage (*or* au second). (ö dû'-zĕ‿êm a-tăzh —ö s'goñg).

20. A quel prix pouvez-vous me donner cette chambre?

21. Quel est le prix de cette chambre par jour?
De quel prix cette chambre est‿elle par jour? (prē).

22. Combien coûte cette chambre par jour?
De combien est cette chambre par jour?

23. Cette chambre coûte cinq francs par jour.
Cette chambre est de cinq francs par jour.

24. C'est trop cher; pourrais-je en[1]‿avoir‿une à trois francs? (seh trō shehr pōō-reh zhŭ ăñ nă-vō‿ăr).

The position of **en** is always immediately before the verb (with the exception of the affirmative imperative when **en** is placed after the verb).

This mode of employing **en** is by no means restricted to answers, but **en** must be used whenever anything previously mentioned is referred to again.

Examples:

S'il vous faut de bon sucre, nous pouvons vous‿en fournir à bien bon marché.	If you need good sugar, we can furnish you some at very cheap rates.
Ce filet a bonne mine. Veuillez m'en couper une tranche.	This steak looks very nice. Please cut me a slice of it.
Garçon, je n'ai pas de serviette. En voici une, monsieur.	Waiter, I have no napkin. Here is one, sir.
Je ne trouve pas d'allumettes. Ah, en voici.	I don't find any matches. Ah. here are some.

25. I do not like this room; show me another one. (Literally: The room not me suits (convient) *not;* make (faites) me of it see (m'en voir) another (une autre). *Or:* Will you please me of it show (m'en montrer) another).
26. I haven't another room on this floor, but I can give you a very large and cheap room in the third story. (Literally: I not have *not* of other room upon (sur) this floor (cet‿étage), but I can you give a room very large (très grande) and cheap (bon marché) on the third (au troisième).
27. I do not wish to mount so many stairs. Could I get a room on the first floor? (Literally: I not would like *not* to be (être) lodged (logé) too high (haut). Could I have a room on the ground floor au rez-de-chaussée)?

Conditional of "Pouvoir, To can, to be able."

I could.
thou couldst
he could.
we could.
you could.
they could.

28. This room is very large and handsome. At what price can you give it to me? (Literally: This room is very large (grande) and handsome (belle[1]). For how much can you me *her* give)?

[1] Beau (masc.), beautiful, handsome forms its feminine in an irregular manner, viz. **belle.**

25. La chambre ne me convient pas; faites m'en voir une‿autre. (*Or:* Veuillez m'en montrer une‿autre). (koń-vē‿iń feht' măń vō‿ăr' ūn nōtr').

26. Je n'ai pas d'autre chambre sur cet‿étage, mais je peux vous donner une chambre très grande et bon marché au troisième. (ō tro‿ā-zē‿ēm').

27. Je ne voudrais pas‿être logé trop haut. Pourrais‿je avoir‿une chambre au rez-de-chaussée? (zētr' lo-gha tro o rad'—sho-sa').

Conditional of "Pouvoir."

Je pourrais	(zhŭ pōō-reh).
tu pourrais	(tū pōō-reh).
il pourrait	(ēl pōō-reh).
nous pourrions	(nōō pōō-rē‿oń').
vous pourriez	(vōō pōō-rē‿ā').
ils pourraient	(ēl pōō-reh).

28 Cette chambre est très grande et belle[1]. Pour combien pouvez-vous me la donner? (grăńd'—bĕl.)

ă fär; ā pale; ē eve; ē there; ō note; ōō rōōm.

29. This room is very cheap. It costs but three francs a day. (Literally: This room is very cheap (très-bon marché). *She* not costs but (que[1]) three francs per day).

30. All right, I'll take it. Please send my baggage up and pay the cabman. (Literally: Very well, I *her* take. Will you please *make* bring up (faire[2] monter) my baggages and pay the cabman).

31. Porter, on what floor could you put us? (Literally: Porter (concierge[2]), in (à) what story could you us lodge (loger)?

32. I cannot tell you. I'll have to call the proprietor. (Literally: I not can *not* you tell (dire); I must (je dois) call (appeler) the master of the hotel (le maître de l'hôtel).

33. Good day, sir. You would like to have some rooms? (Literally: You would like some (des) rooms)?

34. How many rooms would you like? (Literally: How much of rooms would like you)?

---

[1]Ne—que, only, but. Cette chambre ne coûte que cinq francs, this room costs but five francs.

[2]There is some difficulty in regard to faire when employed together with another verb. The difficulty, however, does not lie so much in the French, as in the English language.

We say in English: I have done it, je l'ai fait, expressing thereby a past action. So far the two languages correspond in the use of the verb "*to have*," avoir.

But we also say: I will have it done, meaning thereby: I will *cause* some other person to do something for me. This is expressed in French by faire, as: Je veux le faire faire. I want to have it done.

A few examples will make this clear:—

---

29. Cette chambre est très-bon marché. Elle ne coûte que[1] trois francs par jour.

30. Très bien, je la prends. Veuillez faire[2] monter mes bagages et payer le cocher. (fair' mŏñ'-ta—pa-ya).

31. Concierge[3], à quel étage pourriez-vous nous loger? (kŏñ-sē‿airzh' lŏ-zha').

32. Je ne peux pas vous dire; je dois‿appeler le maître de l'hôtel[4].(dĕr' zhŭ dŏ‿ă zā-plā' l'mê'-tr' dā lo-tĕl).

33. Bonjour, monsieur. Vous voudriez des chambres?

34. Combien de chambres voudriez-vous?

Je veux le faire,	I want to do it.
Je veux le **faire** faire,	I want to *have* it done.
Voulez-vous porter votre sac de voyage?	Do you want to carry your valise?
Voulez-vous **faire** porter votre sac de voyage?	Do you wish to *have* your valise carried?
Voulez-vous‿enregistrer vos bagages?	Do you want to check your baggage?
Voulez-vous **faire**‿enregistrer vos bagages?	Do you want to *have* your baggage checked?

[3]**Le concièrge** means also the janitor, who is employed in all French houses which correspond to our *flats*.

[4]**Le maître de l'hôtel** means the hotel-proprietor, the landlord, and must not be confounded with **le maître d'hôtel**, meaning the butler.

---

35 Could you let us have a parlor and two bedrooms adjoining each other? (Literally: Could you us give a parlor (un salon) and two bedrooms (chambres à coucher) contiguous (contiguës[1])?

36. Where could you give us these rooms?

37. On the second floor.—That is too high. My wife cannot go up so high. Couldn't you give us some rooms on a lower floor? (Literally: My wife (ma femme) can not mount (monter) so high. Not could you *not* us give some rooms more low (plus bas)?

38. Why, certainly. (Literally: But without doubt (sans doute).

39. And on what floor?—On the first floor. (Literally: In which story then (alors)? On the ground floor (au rez-de-chaussée).

40. What is the price of these rooms per day?

41. Forty francs. (Literally: They are of forty francs per day).

42. That's very dear.

43. I can let you have cheaper ones. (Literally: I can (je puis[2]) you give some rooms at cheaper rate (à meilleur marché).

44. On the second floor, probably?—No sir, on the "*entresol.*" (Literally: On the second floor, is this not (n'est-ce pas[3])? No sir, on the entresol (à l'entresol).

---

[1]Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun they refer to. Contiguës is therefore the feminine plural, because chambres is feminine plural.

[2]Je puis is a somewhat weaker form than je peux, I can, I am able.

[3]N'est-ce pas is used in place of the English *has he? has he not? is he? is he not? do you? don't you? will you? won't you?* etc. A few examples will make its use clear:

Elle chante bien, n'est-ce pas?	She sings well, doesn't she?
Elle ne chante pas bien, n'est-ce pas?	She doesn't sing well, does she?

---

35. Pourriez-vous nous donner un salon et deux chambres‿à coucher contiguës[1]? (ŭń sä-lòń'—dû shäń'-br' zä kœ̄-sha kòń-tē-gū').

36. Où pourriez-vous nous donner ces chambres?
37. Au second.—C'est trop haut. Ma femme ne peut pas monter si haut. Ne pourriez-vous pas nous donner des chambres plus bas? (seh trō ō mä fäm—mòń-ta sē-o—plû bä).

38. Mais, sans doute. (säń dœ̄t').

39. A quel étage alors?—Au rez-de-chaussée. (ä-lōr').

40. Quel est le prix de ces chambres par jour?
41. Elles sont de quarante francs par jour.

42. C'est très cher. (seh treh shehr).
43. Je puis[2] vous donner des chambres‿à meilleur marché. (pû‿ē' zä mē-yŭr mär-sha').

44. Au deuxième‿étage, n'est-ce pas[3]? Non, monsieur, à l'entresol. (ō dû-zē‿ém a-täzh' nehs pä).

Il est malade, n'est-ce pas?	He is ill, is he not?
Elle n'a pas de frère, n'est-ce pas?	She has no brother, has she?
Vous connaissez mon beau-frère, n'est-ce pas?	You know my brother-in-law, don't you?
Vous comprenez l'anglais, n'est-ce pas?	You understand English, do you not?
Vous devriez‿apprendre le français, n'est-ce pas?	You ought to learn French, ought you not?
Il ne partirait pas, n'est-ce pas?	He would not start, would he?

45. And what would you charge for them? (Literally: And of what price would be they (seraient-elles[1])?

I should be.
thou wouldst be.
he would be.
we should be.
you would be.
they would be.

46. Thirty francs a day. (Literally: They would be of thirty francs per day).
47. All right! I'll take the rooms on the "entresol." (Literally: Very well (eh bien)! I shall take the rooms of the entresol).
48. Do you wish to dine now, sir? (Literally: Desire you to dine (dîner) now (maintenant), sir)?
49. No, thanks, I am very much fatigued and want to retire at once. (Literally: No thanks, I am very tired and desire me to retire (me retirer[2]) at once (de suite).

---

[1] **Elles** (fem. plur.), they, must be used here, because it refers to **les chambres** (fem. plur.), the rooms.

[2] A reflexive verb. The conjugation of these verbs presents but slight difficulties. In their simple tenses they are conjugated like the regular verbs of the conjugation to which they belong. Two pronouns are used in the conjugation, viz.:

Je me, I myself.	**Nous nous**, we ourselves.
tu te, thou thyself.	**vous vous**, you yourself, yourselves.
il se, he himself.	**ils se**, they themselves.
elle se, she herself.	**elles se**, they themselves.

Therefore **s'habiller**, to dress one's self, is conjugated:

Je m'habille,	I dress myself.
tu t'habilles,	etc.
il / elle s'habille,	etc.

---

45. Et de quel prix seraient‿elles[1]? (s'reh-tĕl).

Je serais	(zhŭ s'reh).
tu serais	(tŭ s'reh).
il serait	(ĕl s'reh).
nous serions	(nōō sŭ-rĕ‿oń').
vous seriez	(vōō sŭ-rĕ‿a').
ils seraient	(ĕl s'reh).

46. Elles seraient de trente francs par jour.

47. Eh bien! Je prendrai les chambres de l'entresol.

48. Désirez-vous dîner maintenant, monsieur? (dĕ-na mìń-t'năń').

49. Non, merci; je suis très fatigué et désire me retirer de suite. (rŭ-tĕ-ra d'sŭ‿ĕt').

---

nous nous‿habillons,	we dress ourselves.
vous vous‿habillez,	etc.
ils / elles } s'habillent,	etc.

All reflexive verbs are conjugated with être, to be in their compound tenses, as:

Je me suis‿habillé,	I have dressed myself.
tu t'es‿habillé,	thou hast dressed thyself.
il s'est‿habillé,	he has dressed himself.
elle s'est‿habillée,	she has dressed herself.
nous nous sommes‿habillés,	we have dressed ourselves.
vous vous‿êtes‿habillé(és),	you have dressed yourself, yourselves.
ils se sont‿habillés, / elles se sont‿habillées, }	they have dressed themselves.

The participle agrees in gender and number with the subject it relates to. For full conjugation and rules see Part X.

---

50. Do you wish anything else? No thanks, I have everything. (Literally: Desire you other thing? No thanks, I have all that to me is necessary (tout ce qu'il me faut[1]). *Or:* No thanks, I have all this whereof I have need (tout ce dont j'ai besoin[1]).

I need	(=it to me needs).
thou needst	(=it to thee needs).
he, she needs	(=it to him (to her) needs).
we need	(=it to us needs).
you need	(=it to you needs).
they need	(=it to them needs).

51. I don't see any matches in the room. Please bring me a box of matches, waiter. (Literally: I not see *not* of matches (pas d'allumettes) in (dans) the room. Waiter (garçon), will you please me bring (m'apporter) a box of matches (une boîte d'allumettes).

---

[1]To need is either expressed by **Il faut** (impersonal verb used with **me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur**), or by **avoir besoin de** (to have need of). A few examples will suffice to make this construction clear:

Il me faut des gants, / J'ai besoin de gants,	I need (I want) gloves.
Est-ce tout ce qu'il vous faut? / Est ce tout ce dont vous avez besoin?	Is that all you need?

50. Désirez-vous‿autre chose? Non, merci, j'ai tout ce qu'il me faut[1]. (*Or:* Non merci, j'ai tout ce dont j'ai besoin[1]). (tōō s'kēl mü fō doń-bü-zo‿ıń').

il me faut.

il te faut.

il lui faut.

il nous faut.

il vous faut.

il leur faut.

51. Je ne vois pas d'allumettes dans la chambre. Garçon, veuillez m'apporter une boîte d'allumettes. (dä-lü-mět' bō‿ät').

C'est tout ce qu'il me faut, C'est tout ce dont j'ai besoin,	That's all I need (want).
Il vous faut‿un plus grand bureau,	You need a larger office.
N'avez-vous pas besoin d'un bon domestique?	Don't you need a good servant?

52. Here are the matches, sir. Do you need anything else? (Literally: Here are (voici[1]) *of the* matches (des allumettes), sir. Have you need of other thing)?

53. No thanks, I have everything. I wish to retire at once. (Literally: No thanks, I have all that to me is necessary. I want myself retire (me retirer) at once (de suite).

I sleep	*or*	I am sleeping[2].
thou sleepst	"	thou art sleeping.
he sleeps	"	he is sleeping.
we sleep	"	we are sleeping.
you sleep	"	you are sleeping.
they sleep	"	they are sleeping.

54. Good night, sir. Sleep well!

---

[1]**Voici**, here is, here are. **Me voici**, here I am. **Voilà**, there is, there are. **Vous voilà**, there you are!

[2]The pupil must not forget that we have no progressive or periphrastic

52. Voici[1] des‿allumettes, monsieur. Avez-vous besoin d'autre chose? (vo‿ä-sē').

53 Non, merci, j'ai tout ce qu'il me faut. Je veux me retirer de suite. (rü-tē-rā).

Je dors[2]	(dor).
tu dors.	
il dort.	
nous dormons	(dŏr-moń').
vous dormez	(dŏr-mā').
ils dorment	(dorm').

54. Bonne nuit, monsieur; dormez bien! (nü‿ē').

---

conjugation in French. Whether we say in English: *I am going* or *I go*, in French we can only render it **je vais.** Where are you going? **Où allez-vous?** He is sleeping, **il dort.**

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

I should like to leave by the first train for Paris, but, unfortunately, that is impossible.

I should like (I would like).
to leave (to start, to set out)
by
the first train
for[1]
Paris,
but
unfortunately
that
is impossible.

A Journey.

1. What do you want to do to-morrow forenoon? I should like to leave by the first train for Boulogne. (Literally: What desire you to do to-morrow morning? I would like to leave by the first train for Boulogne).
2. Excuse me, sir, I should like to go to Boulogne. Can you tell me where the Northern depot is? (Literally: Excuse me (excusez-moi[2]), sir; I would like to go to Boulogne. Can you me tell where is the depot of the North (la gare du Nord)?

---

[1]**Partir,** to leave, to start, is followed by **pour**; **aller** by **à**.

[2]We have stated before that **moi** must be used in connection with prepositions, as: Venez avec moi, come with me. This is also the case with **toi,** thee, **lui,** him, **elle,** her, **nous,** us, **vous,** you, **eux** (masc.), them, **elles** (fem.), them. These are the so-called disjunctive personal pronouns.

When the verb is in the affirmative imperative these forms must always be used, as:

Je voudrais partir par le premier train pour
zhŭ vōō-dreh′ păr-tĕr′ păr lŭ prŭ-mē‿eh trĭn pŏŏr
Paris, mais, malheureusement cela est
pă-rē′ meh mă-lŭ-rŭ-z'măn′ s'lă ā
impossible.
tĭn-pō-sē′-bl'.

Je voudrais (zhŭ vōō-dreh′).
partir (păr-tĕr′)[1]
par (păr)
le premier train (lŭ prŭ-mē‿eh trĭn)
pour (pŏŏr)
Paris (pă-rē′)
mais (meh)
malheureusement (mă-lŭ-rŭ-zŭ-măn)
cela (zŭ-lă′)
est impossible (a tĭn-pō-sē′-bl').

Un Voyage.

ŭn vō‿ă-yăzh'.

1. Que désirez-vous faire demain matin? Je voudrais partir par le premier train pour Boulogne. (bōō-lōn′-yŭ').

2. Excusez-moi[2], monsieur; je voudrais‿aller[2] à Boulogne. Pouvez-vous me dire où est la gare du Nord? (ĕx-kŭ-zā găr' nōr').

Excusez-moi,	Excuse me,
parlez-lui,	speak to him, to her.
envoyez-leur,	send them (to them).
apportez-moi,	bring me.

For full rules see Part X.
[2]To go to, to leave for is given either by **aller à** or **partir pour.**

3 Excuse me, where is the Northern station? (Literally: Excuse me, where (où) is the station of the North? (*Or:* Pardon, sir; the station of the North if you please)?

4. Pardon me, which is the way to the Orléans-Station? (Literally: Pardon me (pardonnez-moi), which is the way (le chemin) for to go to the depot of Orléans (d'Orléans)?

5. Excuse me, which is the waiting-room? (Literally: Excuse me, where (où) is the room of waiting (la salle d'attente)?

6. I beg your pardon, where is the ticket-office? (Literally: I you ask pardon, where is the office of the tickets (le bureau des billets)?

7. Pardon me, I would like to go to Versailles; where is the ticket-office? (Literally: I you ask pardon; I would like to go to Versailles; where is the office of the tickets)?

8. I beg your pardon, sir; will you please direct me to the Eastern terminus? (Literally: Pardon, sir, will you me indicate (indiquer) the station of the East (la gare de l'Est)?

---

[1]This form of inquiry is very generally used. Thus we say:

Pardon, monsieur, l'opéra, s'il vous plaît?	Excuse me, sir, whereabouts is the opera-house?

---

3. Excusez-moi, où est la gare du Nord?
Pardon, Monsieur; la gare du Nord, s'il vous plaît[1]? (păr-doń').

4. Pardonnez-moi, quel est le chemin pour aller à la gare d'Orléans? (lŭ sh' mĭń' dŏr-lā-ăń).

5. Excusez-moi, où est la salle d'attente? (lā săl dā-tăń'-t').

6. Je vous demande pardon, où est le bureau des billets? (bē-yeh').

7. Je vous demande pardon; je voudrais aller à Versailles; où est le bureau des billets? (vĕr-sā'-yŭ').

8. Pardon, monsieur, voulez-vous m'indiquer la gare de l'Est? (mĭń-dē-kā' gār dŭ lĕst).

Pardon, monsieur, la gare du Nord, s'il vous plaît?	I beg your pardon, which is the way to the Northern station?

ā far; ă pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

9. Yes sir, right there, straight ahead.—Thank you. (Literally: Yes sir, it is (c'est[1]) there (là), quite straight (tout troit) before (devant) you. Thanks, sir).
10. Pardon me; I should like to leave by the Express-train for Orléans. Could you please tell me where the ticket-office is? (Literally: Pardon, sir; I should like to leave by the train express (le train express) for Orléans. Could you me tell where is the office of tickets)?
11. Go straight ahead (tout droit).
Straight ahead! (Literally: Right before you).
Right opposite (en face).
12. The booking-office is on the right side (on the left side). (Literally: The office of the tickets is to right (à droite); to left (à gauche).
13. I beg your pardon, could you please tell me on which side the ticket-office is? (Literally: Excuse me, could you *not* me tell *of*[2] which side (de quel côté) is the office of the tickets)?

---

[1]Pupils frequently experience great difficulties in the proper use of c'est, it is.

He, she, it or they before the verb être are rendered by ce instead of il or ils:

a. Before a noun: He is my brother, c'est mon frère.
They are my brothers, ce sont mes frères.

b. Before a pronoun: It is I, c'est moi.
It is he, c'est lui.

c. Before an adjective (when *not* followed by a verb in the same clause)
It is just, c'est juste.
It is easy, c'est facile.

But: It is just to do that, il es juste de faire cela. (This rule does not hold if the adjective is followed by à, pour or sans. For instance

---

9. Oui, monsieur; c'est[1] là, tout droit devant vous. Merci, monsieur. (seh lä tōō dro‿ä' d'väń' vōō-mër-së').

10. Pardon, monsieur; je voudrais partir par le train express pour Orléans. Pourriez-vous me dire où est le bureau des billets? (trīń ëx-prës' ŏr-la-äń').

11. Allez tout droit!
Droit devant vous!
En face! (äń fäs').

12. Le bureau des billets est‿à droite (à gauche). (eh tä drō‿ät'—tä gōsh').

13. Excusez-moi, ne pourriez-vous pas me dire de[2] quel côté est le bureau des billets? (dü kël kō-ta').

That's easy to do, c'est facile à faire.

d. Before a possesive pronoun:

It is mine, c'est le mien.

They are mine, ce sont les miens.

e. Before a demonstrative pronoun:

It is that one, c'est celui-là.

d. Before a superlative:

It is the finest, c'est le plus beau.

But whenever with a single adjective we cannot say that instead of *it* in English, as for instance: He is tall, il est grand, the personal pronoun must be used.

[2]De ce côté, on this side; de l'autre côté on the other side. Idiomatic expression.

ä far; ă pale; ë eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

14. On which side is the ticket-office?—On the right. On the left. On this side. On the other side. (Literally: *Of* which side is the office of the tickets? (To right (à droite). To left (à gauche). Of this side (de ce côté). Of the other side (de l'autre côté).
15. Where do we get the tickets for Versailles? (Literally: Where takes one (on[1]) the tickets for Versailles)?
16. Will you please tell me where to get the tickets for Versailles?—There, Madam, to the right. (Literally: Will you please me tell where on (où l'on[1]) takes the tickets for Versailles? It is there (c'est là), Madam (Madame); to right).
17. Would you be kind enough to tell me where to get tickets to Versailles? (Literally; Would have you (auriez-vous) the kindness (l'obligeance) *of* me to tell where one takes the tickets for Versailles)?
18. Yes, sir, on the other side, at the third wicket. (Literally: Yes, sir, *of* the other side, at the (au) third (troisième) wicket (guichet).
19. Many thanks. (=Thousand thanks)

---

[1]**On**, one has no exact equivalent in English. **On** is very frequently used and applies to persons only. It is always followed by the third person singular and is used for our *one*, *they*, *people*, *we*, etc. and for our passive voice.

On cherche toujours le bonheur,	People always seek for happiness. We always seek for happiness. One always seeks for happiness.
On‿a déchiré mon‿habit,	My coat has been torn.
On nous‿a dit qu'elle viendra,	We have been told she will come.
Que dit‿on de moi?	What do they say of me?
On me dit que vous nous quittez,	I am told you are about to leave us.

14. De quel côté est le bureau des billets? A droite! A gauche. De ce côté. De l'autre côté. (dŭ sŭ kō-tā'—dŭ lō'-tr' kō-tā').

15. Où prend-on[1] les billets pour Versailles? (œ̆ prăń-tōń' leh bē-yeh pœ̆r vĕr-sā'-yŭ).

16. Veuillez me dire‿où l'on[2] prend les billets pour Versailles?—C'est là, Madame, à droite. (vŭ-yā'-œ̆ lōń prăń—seh lā mā-dăm').

17. Auriez-vous l'obligeance de me dire‿où l'on prend les billets pour Versailles? (ōr-ē‿ā vœ̆ lō-blē-zhań'-s').

18. Oui, monsieur; de l'autre côté, au[3] troisième guichet. (gē-sheh).

19. Mille remerciments. (mēl rŭ-mĕr-sē-măń).

---

[2]After où, where, si, if, que, that, l'on, is used instead of on. Also in some other cases for euphony.

[3]The definite articles le (masc.), and la (fem), the, are declined:

Nom.	le,	la,	the.
Gen.	du,	de la,	of the.
Dat.	au,	à la,	to the.
Acc.	le,	la,	the.

There is only one form for the plural:

Nom.	les,	the.
Gen.	des,	of the.
Dat.	aux,	to the.
Acc.	les,	the.

See Part X.

20. Is the ticket-office open? (Literally: The ticket-office is it open (ouvert)? (*Or:* Is it that the wicket is open)?
21. Is this the ticket-office for Asnières? (Literally: Is this here (ici) the wicket for Asnières)?
22. Please give me a ticket for Asnières. (Literally: Will you please me give a ticket for Asnières).
23. Which class?—Second, please. (Literally: *Of* which class (quelle classe)? *Of* second, if you please).
24. Please give me a second class ticket for Versailles. (Literally: Will you please me give a ticket of second class for Versailles).
25. Single or return? (Literally: To go or (ou) to go and return (retour)?
26. Pray give me a round-trip ticket. (Literally: Will you please me give a ticket *of* to go and return)?
27. Pray give me a ticket.—Which class?—First, please. (Literally; Will you please me give a ticket? Which class? A first (une première[3]), if you please).
28. How much is a ticket to Rouen? (Literally: How much is the ticket for Rouen? *Or:* How much costs the ticket for Rouen? *Or:* What is the price of the ticket for Rouen)?
29. How much is a second-class ticket for Asnières? (Literally: How much is (costs) a ticket *of* second class for Asnières)?

[1] This form of question with est-ce que is very frequently used, especially with the first person singular of the indicative present, but also often with other persons and tenses.

[2] Similarly we say: Est-ce ici chez monsieur Dumont? Is this Mr. Dumont's place?

[3] The French railways are different from ours. The trains carry first,

20. Le guichet est-il ouvert? (eh-tël ōō-vêr').
Est-ce que[1] le guichet est‿ouvert? (ehs-kŭ).

21. Est-ce‿ici[2] le guichet pour Asnières? (eh sē-sē').

22. Veuillez me donner un billet pour Asnières. (pōōr ă-nē‿air').

23. De quelle classe[3]?—De seconde, s'il vous plaît. (klăs').

24. Veuillez me donner un billet de seconde classe pour Versailles.

25. Aller, ou[4] aller et retour? (rŭ-tōōr').

26. Veuillez me donner un billet d'aller et retour.

27. Veuillez me donner un billet —Quelle classe?—Une première[5], s'il vous plaît. (ūn prŭ-me‿air').

28. Combien est le billet pour Rouen?
Combien coûte le billet pour Rouen?
Quel est le prix du billet pour Rouen?

29. Combien est (coûte) un billet de seconde classe pour Asnières?

---

second and third class compartments. The express trains carry first class cars only.

[4]Ou (without accent) means *or;* où (with grave accent ˋ), where.

[5]Used very frequently. Similarly we say: Une seconde, a second-class ticket.

---

30. How much is a return-ticket third class? (Literally: How much costs (is) a ticket *of* to go and return in (en) third class)?
31. Two francs, sir.—Here you are (=Ah (tenez[1]), they are here (les voici).
32. Have you any baggage?—Yes, I have a trunk (une malle).
33. I would like to have my trunk checked. Pray, where is the baggage office? (Literally: I would like *to make* check (enregistrer) my trunk (ma[2] malle). Where is the office of the baggages, I you beg (je vous prie).
34. Porter, will you please direct me to the baggage office?—There, madame, to your right. (Literally: Porter (facteur[3]), will you me indicate (indiquer) the office of the baggages (la salle des bagages). *She* (la) is there (voilà), madam, at right).
35. Would you be kind enough to tell me where the baggage-office is? I would like to check this trunk. (Literally: Would have you the kindness (l'obligeance) of me to tell where is the room of baggages? I would like *to make* check my trunk).

I should have.
thou wouldst have.
he would have.
we should have.
you would have.
they would have.

[1]Idiomatic expression, not translatable.
[2]The possessive pronouns are:

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Plural.*	
Mon,	ma,	mes,	my.
ton,	ta,	tes,	thy.
son,	sa,	ses,	his *or* her.
notre,	notre,	nos,	our.

30. Combien coûte (est) un billet d'aller et retour en troisième classe?

31. Deux francs, monsieur.—Tenez[1], les voici. (tŭ-na leh vo‿ă-sē').
32. Avez-vous des bagages?—Oui, j'ai une malle. (ūn măl).
33. Je voudrais faire‿enregistrer ma[2] malle. Où est le bureau des bagages, je vous prie? (fair ăń-r'zhēs-tra mă măl' zhŭ vōō prē).

34. Facteur[3], voulez-vous m'indiquer la salle des bagages?—La voilà, Madame, à droite. (fak-tûr' miń-dē-ka' lă vō‿ă-la').

35. Auriez-vous l'obligeance de me dire où est la salle des bagages? Je voudrais faire‿enregistrer ma malle.

J'aurais	(zhō-reh).
tu aurais	(tŭ ō-reh).
il aurait	(ēl ō-reh).
nous‿aurions	(nōō zō-rē‿oń').
vous‿auriez	(vōō zō-rē‿a').
ils‿auraient	(ēl zō-reh').

votre,	votre,	vos,	your.
leur,	leur,	leurs,	their.

The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed (*not* with the possessor, as in English).

[3]Facteur signifies either porter (in a railroad station), or postman, letter-carrier.

36. I'll call the porter, he'll check your trunk for you. (Literally: I go to call (appeler) the porter; he will check (il enregistrera) your trunk for you).

37. Porter, this gentleman would like to have his trunk checked, (Literally: Porter, this gentleman (ce monsieur) would like *to make* check his trunk (sa malle).

38. All right; where are you going, sir? (Literally: Very well, where go you, sir)?

39. I am going to Orléans. (Literally: I go to Orléans).

40. You got your ticket?—No, not yet.—Well, then you can't check your baggage. (Literally: Have you your ticket? No, not yet (pas encore). Then (alors) you not can *not make* check your baggage).

41. You got your ticket?—Certainly, here it is. (Literally: Have you your ticket?—Certainly (certainement) it is here (le voici).

42. Will you please give it to me. Pray go into the waiting-room. I'll check your baggage and bring you the check. (Literally: Will you please me it give. Go (allez) into (dans) the waiting-room. I will check your baggages (vos colis) and you will bring (porterai) the check (le bulletin).

43. Porter, here is my ticket. Have my baggage attended to and bring the check and the ticket to the bar. (Literally: Porter, there is (voilà) my ticket. *Make* (faites) check my baggages and bring me the check and the ticket to the bar (au buffet).

36. Je vais‿appeler le facteur; il enregistrera votre malle pour vous. (zĕ-pŭ-la-ël ăń-r' zhĭs-trŭ-rā').

37 Facteur, ce monsieur voudrait faire‿enregistrer sa malle.

38. Très bien; où allez-vous, monsieur?

39. Je vais‿à Orléans.

40. Avez-vous votre billet?—Non, pas‿encore.—Alors, vous ne pouvez pas faire‿enregistrer votre bagage. (pā-zăń-kor' ā-lor').

41. Avez-vous votre billet? Certainement, le voici.

42. Veuillez me le donner. Allez dans la salle d'attente. J'enregistrerai vos colis et vous porterai le bulletin. (kŏ-lē lŭ bŭl-tĭń').

43. Facteur, voilà mon billet. Faites‿enregistrer mes bagages et apportez-moi le bulletin et le billet au buffet. (ō bū-feh').

ā far; ă pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

VOCABULAIRE.	VOCABULARY.
Suite.	*Continuation.*
Qu'est-ce que cela signifie (sĕn-yē-fē')?	What does that mean?
Le sens.	The sense.
User (ū-zā'). Employer (ăń-plō‿ä-yā').	To use, to employ.
Ce mot n'est pas‿employé dans ce sens.	This word is not used in this sense.
Comment ce mot est-il employé?	How is this word used?
La phrase; les phrases.	The sentence; the sentences.

Pour Faire Des‿Achats (Des‿Emplettes).	**To make purchases; to do some shopping.**
Je voudrais faire quelques‿achats.	I would like to make some purchases.
Je voudrais faire des‿emplettes.	I should like to do some shopping.
Combien cela coûte-t-il?	How much does that cost?
Quel est le prix de ceci?	What is the price of this?
Est-ce le meilleur marché (lŭ mĕ-yûr măr-shā')?	Is that the cheapest price?
Je ne peux pas vous le donner‿à meilleur marché.	I cannot give it to you any cheaper.
La facture (făk-tūr').	The bill.
L'addition (lă-dē-sē‿oń').	The bill (at a restaurant *only*).
L'acquit (lă-kē').	The receipt.

III.

a. A Journey..... 130
b. Conversational Exercises..... 136
c. To Inquire One's Way..... 138
d. Purchases..... 142
e. Vocabulary..... 160

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

48. Oh yes! That's a tip, isn't it? (A tip, un pourboire[1]).

49. Yes sir.—Ever so much obliged to you—Americans are always liberal and generous with their tips. (Literally: Yes sir.—I to you am very (bien) obliged (obligé). The Americans (les‿Américains[2]) are always (toujours) large (larges[3]) and generous (généreux[3]) with the tips).

---

[1]Le pourboire is not only a nuisance, but the terror of all American tourists. Almost every body has to be tipped. The cabman, the railway porter, the waiter, the chambermaid, the boots, in fact any body and every body expects and gets a few "sous." A "sou" is equal to a cent and two or three sous are generally given as a tip to waiters. Americans make a great mistake in giving too much. We are so in the habit of giving a quarter to a waiter, that we feel ashamed of offering these distinguished-looking persons anything less than a franc. However, two sous will satisfy them and no more ought to be given.

[2]The article is not only used before nouns used in a *definite*, but also before nonns employed in a *general* sense, as:

Les‿enfants‿aiment le jeu,	Children like games.
La vertu est‿aimable,	Virtue is lovable.
Les petites filles‿aiment les poupées,	Little girls like dolls.
Les‿hommes sont‿égoïstes,	Men are selfish.

For further rules see Part X.

[3]The plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding a (silent) s to the singular, as:

L' homme,	les‿hommes,	The man,	the men.
L' ami,	les‿amis.	The friend,	the friends.

---

48. Oh oui! C' est‿un pourboire,[1] n' est-ce pas? (pōōr-bō‿ăr').

49. Oui monsieur.—Je vous suis bien‿obligé!—Les‿Américains[2] sont toujours larges[3] et généreux[3]‿avec les pourboires. (bē‿ĭń nō-blē-zha leh zä-mä-rē-kĭń' lár'-zh' zhä-nä-rū zä-vĕk).

Une jolie demoiselle,	A pretty young lady.
De jolies demoiselles,	Pretty young ladies.
Un‿habit noir,	A black coat.
Des‿habits noirs,	Black coats.

Words ending in **s**, **x** or **z** remain unchanged in the plural:

Le fils,	les fils,	The son.	the sons.
La voix,	les voix,	The voice,	the voices.
heureux (sing. and plural),		happy.	

Words in **au** or **eu** take a (silent) **x**:

L' anneau,	les‿anneaux,	The ring,	the rings.
Le tableau,	les tableaux,	The picture,	the pictures.
Le beau jeu,	les beaux jeux,	The nice game,	the nice games.

Nouns in **al** (and a few in **ail**) change that termination into **aux**:

Le cheval,	les chevaux,	The horse,	the horses.
L' animal,	les‿animaux,	The animal,	the animals.
Le canal,	les canaux,	The canal,	the canals.

For nouns in **ou** which take **x** in the plural, and for irregular plurals see Part X.

---

50. At what time does this train leave? (Literally: At what hour (à quelle heure) this train leaves it (part-il)?

I leave, *or*,	I am leaving.
thou leavest, *or*,	thou art leaving.
he leaves, *or*,	he is leaving.
we leave, *or*,	we are leaving.
you leave, *or*,	you are leaving.
they leave, *or*,	they are leaving.

51. This train leaves in five minutes. (Literally: This train leaves within (dans) five minutes (minutes).
52. Do you know when this train is due at Orléans?—At eight p. m. Here is a time-table. (Literally: Know you when this train arrives (arrive) at Orléans?—At (à) eight o'clock (huit heures) of the evening (du soir). Here is the time-table (l'itinéraire).
53. What is that? (Qu' est-ce que c' est que ça[1]).
54. That is the starting-bell.—All aboard for Orléans! (Literally: That is the signal (le signal) of the departure (du départ).—The travelers (les voyageurs) for Orléans in carriage (en voiture).

---

[1]A very peculiar phrase, very frequently used.

50. A quelle heure ce train part-il? (ä kël ûr' păr-tël).

Je pars	(zhŭ păr).
tu pars	(tŭ păr).
il part	(ël păr).
nous partons	(nōō păr-toń').
vous partez	(vōō păr-ta').
ils partent	(ël pärt').

51. Ce train part dans cinq minutes. (mē-nūt').

52. Savez-vous quand ce train arrive à Orléans?—A huit‿heures du soir. Voici l'itinéraire. (sō‿ăr' lē-tē-nä-rair').

53. Qu' est-ce que c' est que ça[1]? (kehs-kŭ-sehk-sä').

54. C' est le signal du départ.—Les voyageurs pour Orléans‿en voiture. (sehl sēn-yál dŭ da-păr' vŏ‿ä-yä-zhûr' äń vŏ‿ä-tûr').

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō rōōm.

CONVERSATIONAL EXERCISES.

What they are and how they should be studied.

Having thoroughly mastered the foregoing sentences, the student must now familiarize himself with the Conversational Exercises.

They consist of purely practical phrases, such as we are in the habit of using in common, everyday life. But as every person employs of necessity his own peculiar mode of diction,

Diversity of Expression

must be acquired from the very start by the student of foreign tongues.

The most commonplace thought can be expressed in numerous ways, and throughout my books, and especially in the Conversational Parts, I have therefore given a vast number of sentences which though worded differently are identical in their meanings.

The Advantages of this Plan

are self-evident. The pupil is no longer confined to a single phrase, but becomes familiar with a variety of expressions. He does not only learn *one* sentence by which he may state his wants, but controls *the whole colloquial vocabulary on any one subject,* and is thus enabled to sustain a conversation with almost any one.

At the same time

The Conversations are Graded

in such a manner that only such constructions, idioms, moods and tenses are given as have been previously mastered by the student.

Mere questions and answers *of the guide-book style* have—as far as possible—been avoided. Later on all conversations are carried on in French.

All phrases used are so to say

Sentence—Moulds.

They are intended to teach the pupil to *think* in French and with this end in view they must always be studied *aloud* and rendered so frequently in French until the pupil can utter them just as smoothly and rapidly in the foreign language as in his own.

Let it always be remembered that

"Repetitio est mater studiorum."

Nothing is so essential in the mastery of a foreign tongue as constant repetition.

"Gutta cavat lapidem, non vi, sed saepe cadendo."

CONVERSATION.

To Inquire One's Way.

1. I beg your pardon, sir; could you please direct me to Vivienne Street? (Literally: Pardon sir, Vivienne Street (la rue Vivienne[1]), if you please)?
2. Take the third street to the right and then go straight ahead. (Literally: Take (prenez) the third to the right and then (alors) follow (suivez) quite right (tout droit).
3. Excuse me, sir; could you please tell me where "la rue Royale" is? (Literally: Pardon sir, would you (voudriez-vous) me tell where is "la rue Royale")?
4. Could you kindly direct me to "la rue de Rivoli"? (Literally: Pardon, sir, would you me indicate (m'indiquer) "la rue de Rivoli")?
5. Could you kindly show me the way to the "Boulevard des Italiens"? (Literally: Would have you the goodness (la bonté) *of* me to show (montrer) the way *for* to go to the (au) "Boulevard des Italiens)?
6. Pardon me, how do I go to Opera-Square? (Literally: I you ask pardon, which (quel) is the way *for* to go to the place of the Opera (à la place de l'Opéra)?
7. Excuse me, which is the way to the Variety-Theatre? (Literally: Pardon, which is the way *for* to go to the theatre of the varieties (au théâtre des Variétés)?

[1]This abbreviated form of inquiry is very generally used.

[2]The imperative of the irregular verb prendre. See pages 75 and 95.

CONVERSATION.

kŏń-vĕr-sä-sē‿ŏń'.

Pour Demander Son Chemin.

pōōr dŭ-mäń-da' sŏń sh'miń'.

1. Pardon, monsieur. La rue Vivienne[1], s'il vous plaît? (vē-vē‿ĕn').

2. Prenez[2] la troisième[3] à droite, et alors suivez tout droit. (sŭ‿ē-vä tōō drō‿ä').

3. Pardon, monsieur, voudriez-vous me dire où est la rue Royale[4]? (rū rō‿ä-yäl).

4. Pardon, monsieur, voudriez-vous m'indiquer la rue de Rivoli? (mīń-dē-ka lä rū d'rē-vō-lē').

5. Auriez-vous la bonté de me montrer le chemin pour aller au Boulevard des Italiens? (ō bōō-l' vär' deh zē-tä-lē‿ień').

6. Je vous demande pardon, quel est le chemin pour aller à la place de l'Opéra? (ä lä plās dŭ lō-pa-rä').

7. Pardon, quel est le chemin pour aller au théâtre des Variétés? (ta-ä'-tr' deh vä-rē-a-ta').

---

[3]We could also say la troisième rue.

[4]Literally: Royal Street.

---

8. I beg your pardon; I have lost my way. Could you kindly direct me to Opera Avenue? (Literally: Pardon, sir, I have lost (perdu) my way. Would you me indicate the Avenue of the Opera (l'Avenue de l'Opéra)?
9. Would you be kind enough to tell me the way to the Northern Railway station? (Literally: Would you be (être) enough (assez) good *for* me to indicate the way *for* to go to the depot of the North)?
10. Take the second street on the left, then the third street on your right and go straight ahead. You can't miss your way. (Literally: Take the second to left, then (puis) the third to right and then (alors) follow quite right. You not can *not yourself* mistake (vous tromper) *of* way).
11. Could you tell me whether this street leads to the Renaissance Theatre? (Literally: Could you me tell if this street leads (conduit) to the theatre of the Renaissance (au théâtre de la Renaissance)?
12. Yes, go straight ahead till you reach St. Martin's Gate. (Literally: Yes, go quite right until that (jusqu'à ce que) you may arrive (vous arriviez) to the Gate St. Martin (à la Porte St. Martin).

---

[1]Past participle of perdre, to lose; perdu, lost.

[2]It is almost impossible to translate the so-called subjunctive into English. As a matter of fact we scarcely use the subjunctive mood in our language. Not so in French where this mood is very frequently employed.

Let the student remember that the subjunctive expresses uncertainty, indecision, doubt or fear existing in the mind of the speaker as to the action referred to and that therefore it can be employed in subordinate sentences only.

The subjunctive is therefore always joined to the main sentence, generally by the conjunction **que** or by conjunctions compounded with **que** as **jusqu'à ce que**, till, **afin que**, in order that, etc.

Thus we say:

I know he will come, Je sais qu'il viendra,

using the indicative mood—as in English—because no doubt or uncertainty exists in the speaker's mind.

But:

Do you think he will come? Croyez-vous qu'il **vienne**?

using the subjunctive mood, because the question itself expresses doubt and uncertainty.

---

8. Pardon, monsieur, j'ai perdu[1] mon chemin. Voudriez-vous m'indiquer l'Avenue de l'Opéra? (lä-vū-nū dū lŏ-pa-rä').

9. Voudriez-vous‿être‿assez bon pour m'indiquer le chemin pour‿aller à la gare du Nord? (ä-seh').

10. Prenez la deuxième‿à gauche, puis la troisième‿à droite, et alors suivez tout droit. Vous ne pouvez pas vous tromper de chemin. (trŏń-pa dū shū-mīń'.)

11. Pourriez-vous me dire si cette rue conduit‿au théâtre de la Renaissance? (kŏń-dū‿ē to ta-ä'-tr' dū lä rū-neh-säń'-s').

12. Oui, allez tout droit, jusqu'à ce que vous‿arriviez[2] ‿à la Porte St. Martin. (zhūs-käs' kū vōō zä-rē-vē‿a zä lä pŏrt' siń mär-tīń).

Or: I don't think he will come, Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, using again the subjunctive because the negative implies uncertainty.

This rule properly applied would illustrate the correct employment of this difficult mood. We shall be obliged however, to give special rules later on.

As regards the formation of the present subjunctive of verbs of the first conjugation, we add the following endings to the stem.

je	—— e.
tu	—— es.
il	—— e.
nous	—— ions.
vous	—— iez.
ils	—— ent.

It will therefore be seen that the subjunctive of the present differs only in the first and second person plural from the present indicative. Let the student remember this.

For further rules see Part X.

---

13. Pray, is this the way to the Hotel des Deux-Mondes? (Literally: Pardon, the Hotel of the two Worlds (l'hôtel des Deux-Mondes), if you please)?
14. Take the second street to your right and then go straight ahead to Opera Square. Once there, follow Opera Avenue which will lead you there. (Literally: Take the second to right and then follow (poursuivez) quite right to (jusqu'à) the place of the Opéra (la place de l'Opéra). Once (une fois) arrived (arrivé) there (là), follow the Avenue of the Opera (l'Avenue de l'Opéra) which (qui) you there (y) will lead (conduira).
15. Take the third street to your left and go straight ahead till you come to a square. (Literally: Take the third to left and go quite right until that you may arrive (jusqu'à ce que vous arriviez) at a square (à un square).
16. Go across this bridge, then diagonally across the square. You cannot miss your way. (Literally: (passez) this bridge (ce pont), then cross (traversez) the square. You not can *not yourself* mistake *of* way).
17. I am afraid I shall lose my way. (Literally: I have well (bien) fear (peur) of me to lose (perdre) on way (en route).

---

[1]Past prrticiple of **arriver**, to arrive; **arrivé**, arrived. The past participles of all regular verbs of the first conjugation end in **é**, which is added to the stem, as: **trouver**, to find, **trouvé**, found; **montrer**, to show; **montré**, shown; **payer**, to pay; **payé**, paid; **donner**, to give; **donné**, given.

[2]**J'ai peur** (literally: I have fear), I fear, I am afraid, is an idiomatic expression. The pupil ought to observe that verbs expressing an *unfav-*

---

13. Pardon, l'hôtel des Deux-Mondes, s'il vous plaît?

14. Prenez la deuxième‿à droite et alors poursuivez tout droit jusqu'à la place de l'Opéra. Une fois‿arrivé[1] là, suivez l'Avenue de l'Opéra, qui vous‿y conduira. (ün fö‿ä zä-rē-vā lä köń-dü‿ē-rä).

15. Prenez la troisième‿à gauche et allez tout droit, jusqu'à ce que vous‿arriviez‿à un square.

16. Passez ce pont, puis traversez le square. Vous ne pouvez pas vous tromper de chemin. (pä-sa sü poń' trä-vër-sa).

17. J'ai bien peur[2] de me perdre‿en route. (pür' për'-dr' räń rōōt').

---

erable meaning are generally followed by **de**, as:

J'ai peur **de** me perdre‿en route,	I am afraid I shall lose my way.
Je crains **de** m'enrhumer,	I am afraid of catching cold.
Il refuse **de** le faire,	He refuses to do it.

All verbs of *command* or *request* take **de**, as:

Dites-lui **de** m'apporter mon déjeûner,	Tell him to bring me my breakfast.

---

18. Shall I accompany you?—Yes, please. (Literally: Desire you that I you *may* accompany (que je vous ‿accompagne)?—Yes, if you please).
19. If you are afraid of getting lost, you might take a cab. (Literally: If you fear (vous craignez) *of* you to lose you could take a cab).
20 Is it far frome here? (Literally: Is this far (loin) from here (d'ici)? *Or:* There has it (y a-t-il) far from here? *Or:* Is this near (près) from here)?
21. No, it is not far. (Literally: No, this not is *not* far).

Purchases.—Shopping.

1. What do you want to do this afternoon (cet‿après-midi)?
2. I would like to go out to do some shopping. (Literally: I should like to go (aller) to make some purchases (quelques‿achats).
3. And where do you want to make your purchases? (Literally: And where wish you to go to make your purchases)?

---

[1]There are about fifty verbs which do not require any preposition when governing another verb. A list of these is given in Part X. The following are most frequently used:

Aimer mieux,	to prefer.	Falloir,	to be necessary.
Aller,	to go.	Oser,	to dare.
Compter,	to intend.	Pouvoir,	to be able to.
Désirer,	to wish.	Savoir,	to know.
Envoyer,	to send.	Venir,	to come (generally at least).

18. Désirez-vous que je vous‿accompagne?—Oui, s'il vous plaît. (vōō zä-koń-pan'-yŭ).

19. Si vous craignez de vous perdre, vous pourriez prendre‿un fiacre. (krän-yä').

20. Est-ce loin d'ici?
Y a-t-il loin d'ici?
Est-ce près d'ici?
21. Non, ce n'est pas loin.

Pour Faire Des‿Achats (Des‿Emplettes).

pōōr fair' deh zä-shä (deh zäń-plét').

1. Que voulez-vous faire cet‿après-midi? (zŭ tä-prä mē-dē').
2. Je voudrais‿aller[1] faire quelques‿achats. (kĕl-kŭ zä-shä).

3. Et où désirez-vous‿aller faire vos‿achats?

Espérer,	to hope.	Voir,	to see.
Faire,	to make.	Vouloir,	to be willing.

Examples:

Je compte acheter un chapeau neuf,	I intend buying a new hat.
J'ai fait raccommoder mon pantalon,	I have had my trousers mended
Il me faut lui donner cet‿argent,	I must give him this money.
Je n'ose pas dire cela,	I don't dare to say it.
Venez diner avec nous,	Come and dine with us.

4. I really don't know. But you have been several times in Paris. Can't you tell me where to get some good gloves? (Literally: I not it know really (réellement) *not*. But you have been (été) several (plusieurs) times (fois) in (à Paris). Can you me tell where I can buy good gloves (de bons gants)?
5. Is that all you need? (Literally: Is this all of which (dont) you have need)?
6. No, I have to buy some small things for my wife. (Literally: No, I have also (aussi) need *of* to buy some small things (quelques petites choses) for my wife (ma femme).
7. She needs hairpins, a toothbrush, a comb, a hairbrush and some other trifles, (Literally: She has need of pins (d'épingles) for hair (à cheveux), of a brush (une brosse) for teeth (à dents), of a comb (un peigne), of a brush for hair (à cheveux) and of other small things (of other trifles, d'autres futilités).
8. Pray, come along as I don't know where to get all these things. (Literally: Will you please come with me for (car) I not know *not* where to have (avoir) all these things (toutes ces choses).
9. You can get them quite near. Do you want to go out at once? (Literally: You can them (les) have quite near from here. Will you go out (sortir) at once)?
10. Certainly, at once. My wife wishes to go out and needs these articles. (Literally: Certainly (certainement), at once. My wife wishes to go out and has need of all these articles (tous ces articles).

[1]See page 88.

[2]For (preposition), pour; for (conjunction, equivalent to "as, because") car.

4. Je ne le sais réellement pas. Mais vous‿avez‿été plusieurs fois‿à Paris. Pouvez-vous me dire où je puis‿acheter de[1] bons gants? (rā-ĕl-lŭ-mäń' vœ̆ zā-vā-zā-tā' plū-zē‿ûr').

5. Est-ce tout dont vous‿avez besoin?

6. Non, j'ai aussi besoin d'acheter quelques petites choses pour ma femme. (p'tĕt' shōz' fäm).

7. Elle a besoin d'épingles‿à cheveux, d'une brosse à dents, d'un peigne, d'une brosse à cheveux et d'autres petites choses (d'autres futilités).

8. Veuillez venir‿avec moi, car[2] je ne sais pas‿où avoir toutes ces choses.

9. Vous pouvez les‿avoir tout près d'ici. Voulez-vous sortir de suite? (prā dē-sē').

10. Certainement, de suite. Ma femme désire sortir et a besoin de tous[3] ces‿articles. (tœ̆ seh zär-tē-' kl').

---

[1] Tout (masc. sing.), toute (fem. sing.), tous (masc. plur.), toutes (fem. plur.), every, all.

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ōō rōōm.

11. All right; directly opposite is a very good store where you can get everything you need. (Literally: Very well; there is (il y a) just (justement) opposite (en face) a very good store where you can have all this of which you have need).

12. Is that a cheap store? (Literally: Is this a store cheap)?

13. Oh yes, quite cheap. You know that toilet articles are much cheaper here than in America. (Literally: Oh yes, very cheap. You know that these articles of toilet (ces articles de toilette) are very much (bien) cheaper (meilleur marché) here than in (qu' en) America (Amérique).

14. Here is our store; pretty large, isn't it?—Yes, rather large and handsome. (Literally: Here is (voici) our store; it is very large (grand), is it not? —Yes, it is very large and very handsome (très beau).

15. What do you want to buy first?—Gloves. (Literally: What desire you to buy first (d'abord)?—Some gloves).

---

[1]Bon marché. cheap; meilleur marché, cheaper.

[2]While à is generally used with towns, en is employed before most names of countries, as:

à Berlin,	at,	in	*or*	to	Berlin.
à Paris,	"	"	"	"	Paris.
à Londres,	"	"	"	"	London.

11. Très bien; il y a justement‿en face un très bon magasin, où vous pouvez‿avoir tout ce dont vous‿avez besoin. (zhüs-t'-mäń' täń fäs mä-gä-zlń).

12. Est-ce‿un magasin bon marché?

13. Oh oui, très-bon marché. Vous savez que ces‿articles de toilette sont bien meilleur[1] marché ici qu' en[2]‿Amérique. (tö‿ä-lët' më-yûr käń nä-marëk').

14. Voici notre magasin; il est très grand, n'est-ce pas?—Oui, il est très grand et très beau.

15. Que désirez-vous‿acheter d' abord?—Des gants. (dä-bor').

---

en France,	in	*or*	to	France.
en‿Angleterre,	"	"	"	England.
en‿Amérique,	"	"	"	America.

But with a few countries, the names of which are masculine in French, au or aux is used, as:

au Mexique, in *or* to Mexico.
aux‿Etats-Unis, in *or* to the United States.

ä far; ä pale; ë eve; ê there; ö nöte; öö röömm.

16. I need two pairs of gloves, a pair of black ones and a pair of brown ones. Please show me some good kid gloves. (Literally: I have need of two pairs of gloves, a pair black (une paire noire) and a pair brown (brune). Will you please me show *of* good gloves of kid (de bons gants de chevreau *or*, de bons gants de peau) of skin).
17. Do you want a light brown (un brun clair)?
18. Not too light; give me a good medium color, if you please. (Literally: Not (pas) too light; give me a (une) good color (couleur) half (moyenne), if you please).
19. What price do you wish to pay?—Not too dear, if you please,
20. For five francs I can give you a very good glove. (Literally: For five francs I can you give *of* very good gloves).
21. How much is that in American money? (Literally: How much this (cela) makes it (fait-il) in (en) money American (monnaie américaine)?

I make	*or*	I am making.
thou makest	"	thou art making.
he makes	"	he is making.
we make	"	we are making.
you make	"	you are making.
they make	"	they are making.

*The principal colors are:

Les Couleurs.	The Colors.
Blanc, blanche,	White,
noir, noire,	black.
bleu, bleue,	blue.
brun, brune,	brown.
châtain (no feminine).	chestnut.
rouge, rouge,	red.
roux, rousse,	reddish.

16. J'ai besoin de deux paires de gants, une paire noire et une paire brune. Veuillez me montrer de bons gants de chevreau (*or*, de bons gants de peau).

17. Désirez-vous‿un brun[1] clair? (brŭń).
18. Pas[2] trop clair; donnez-moi une bonne couleur moyenne, s'il vous plaît. (kœ̆-lŭr mŏ‿ă-yĕn').

19. Quel prix voulez-vous payer?—Pas trop cher, s'il vous plaît. (pa-ya).
20. Pour cinq francs, je peux vous donner de très bons gants.

21. Combien cela fait-il en monnaie américaine? (ăń mŏ-neh ă-mē-rē-kan').

Je fais	(zhŭ feh).
tu fais	(tŭ feh).
il fait	(ēl feh).
nous faisons	(nœ̆ fŭ-zŏń').
vous faites	(vœ̆ feh-t').
ils font	(ēl foń).

cramoisi, cramoisie,	crimson.
écarlate, écarlate.	scarlet.
vert, verte,	green.
jaune, jaune,	yellow.
olive, olive,	olive.
une coleur bon teint,	a fast color.
une couleur salissante,	a color easily soiled.

[2]When no verb is used the negation is given by pas, as: pas‿aujourd'hui, not to-day; pas pour moi, not for me.

22. A franc is twenty cents.

23. Five francs are equal to a dollar (Literally: Five francs make a dollar).

24. Five francs are equal to four shillings in English money. That is cheap for these gloves, isn't it? (Literally: Five francs make four shillings in money English. That is cheap for these gloves, is it not)?

25. Yes, that's very cheap. For a dollar we cannot get gloves like these in the United States. (Literally: Yes, that is very cheap. For a dollar we not have *not of the* gloves like (comme) these here (ceux-ci) in the States United (aux Etats-Unis).

26. What number do you wear, sir?—I don't know, I never can recollect my size. (Literally: Which number wear you, sir?—I not know more (plus). I forget (j'oublie) always the number).

27. All right, just let me take your measure. (Literally: Very well. I go you take the measure (la mesure).

28. Will you try on these gloves (essayer ces gants?)

---

[1]Similarly we say:

Combien font vingt-quatre et cinquante? How much is twenty four and fifty?
Combien font dix-sept multiplié par six? How much is six times seventeen?

[2]In speaking of the parts of the body or qualities of the mind, the French use le, la, les, in place of the possessive pronoun, or the indefinite article in English:

---

22. Un franc est vingt "*cents.*"
Un franc c'est vingt "*cents,*"
23. Cinq francs font[1] ‿un "*dollar.*"

24. Cinq francs font quatre "*shillings*" en monnaie anglaise. C'est bon marché pour ces gants, n'est-ce pas?

25. Oui, c'est très bon marché. Pour ‿un "*dollar*" nous n'avons pas des gants comme ceux-ci aux ‿ Etats-Unis. (ō zä-tä-zū-nē).

26. Quel numéro portez-vous, monsieur?—Je ne sais plus. J'oublie toujours le numéro. (zhōō-blē tōō-zhōōr' lū nū-mä-rō).

27. Très bien. Je vais vous prendre la[2] mesure. (prăń'-dr' lä mū-zūr').

28. Voulez-vous ‿essayer ces gants? (zē-sä-yā).

J'ai froid ‿aux pieds,	My feet are cold.
Il s'est coupé les ‿ongles,	He has cut his nails.
J'ai mal à la tête,	I have a headache.
Elle a mal aux dents,	She has a toothache.
Lavez-vous les mains ‿et la figure,	Wash your hands and face.
Ne vous ‿essuyez pas les mains ‿á cette serviette,	Do not wipe your hands on this towel.

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō rōōm.

29. These gloves don't fit me; they are too large. I think they are rather long. (Literally: These gloves not me go *not;* they are too large (grands). I them find (je les trouve) a little long (longs).

30. Here is a pair which will fit you. (Literally: Of them here is (en voici) a pair which (qui) you will go (vous ira).

Future of Aller.

I shall go.

thou wilt go.

he will go.

we shall go.

you will go.

they will go.

31. They are too narrow. I am afraid I shall split them. (Literally: They are too narrow (étroits). I have fear (peur) of them to *make* split (craquer).

---

[1]To think is given by **croire,** when belief is implied, as:

Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve? — Do you think it is going to rain (*i. e.* do you believe it)?

To think is given by **trouver,** when an opinion is implied, as:

Trouvez-vous cela bon? — Do you think this is good?

Of course, **penser** *may* be used in both instances, but a Frenchman

29. Ces gants ne me vont pas; ils sont trop grands.—Je les trouve[1] un peu longs.

30. En voici une paire qui vous‿ira.

Future of Aller.

J'irai	(zhē-rā).
tu iras	(tū ē-rä).
il ira	(ēl ē-rä).
nous‿irons	(nōō zē-roń').
vous‿irez	(vōō zē-reh).
ils‿iront	(èl zē-rōń').

31. Ils sont trop‿étroits. J'ai peur de les faire craquer. (trō-pā-trō‿ā krä-kā).

---

would never think of doing so. With him penser expresses to think as an act of mental consideration, as:

A quoi pensez-vous? What are you thinking about?

It must however, be remembered that with que, penser is generally used, as:

Que pensez-vous de cet‿homme, What do you think of this man?

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō rōōm.

32. Just wait; let me put a little powder into them. Now, try them. (Literally: Wait (attendez). I go there (y) to put (mettre) a little of powder (un peu de poudre). Now, try them).

33. How much does that amount to? (Literally: How much that makes it in all (en tout)?

34. That amounts to fifteen francs in all. (Literally: That makes in all fifteen francs).

35. How much are these pins?—Five cents a package. (Literally: How much cost these pins (ces épingles)?—They cost five cents (sous) the package (le paquet).

36. And how much is this comb?—Forty-five cents. (Literally: And this comb (ce démêloir) how much costs it?—This there (celui-là) costs two francs twenty-five).

37. I also need a fine tooth-comb. (Literally: It me needs (il me faut) also a comb fine (un peigne fin).

38. What's the price of this one?—One franc. (Literally: How much this there (celui-là) costs it? This there is *of* one franc).

---

[1]**Y**, *at, to, to it, to them, at it, at them, in it, on it, there* is placed in the same position as **en**, *i. e.* it is placed immediately before the verb, except with the affirmative imperative when **en** and **y** come after the verb, like all other pronoun-objects.

Allez-y,	Go there.
N'y allez pas,	Don't go there.
Y pensez-vous?	Are you thinking of it?
Oui, j'y pense,	Yes, I am thinking of it.

Exceptions: In some very rare cases **en** and **y** will appear together. In such cases **y** is placed before **en**, as:

---

32. Attendez. Je vais‿y[1] mettre‿un peu de poudre. Maintenant, essayez-les. (veh zē mĕ'-trŭń pû d' pœœ'-dr').

33. Combien cela fait-il en tout?

34. Cela fait‿en tout quinze francs.

35. Combien coûtent ces‿épingles? Elles coûtent cinq sous[2] le paquet. (kœœt seh za-plń'-gl'—sœœ l' pă-keh).

36. Et ce démêloir[3] combien coûte-t-il?—Celui-là coûte deux francs vingt-cinq. (dā-meh-lŏ‿ăr kœœt tēl sŭ-lû‿ē lā).

37. Il me faut‿aussi un peigne fin. (peh'-ny' fĭn).

38. Combien celui-là coûte-t-il?—Celui-là est d'un franc.

Une seconde, Orléans, s'il vous plaît,	One second-class ticket for Orléans, if you please.
Il n'y en‿a pas; c'est‿un express. Il n'y a que des premières,	There are none for sale; this is an Express train. Only first-class tickets sold.

[1]Though a franc contains nominally 100 centimes, such a coin does not exist. The smallest coin circulating is un sou, one cent (in American money).

[3]Le démêloir, the comb, the large comb; un peigne, a fine tooth.comb.

---

39 All right. I'll take five packages of pins, the large comb and this fine tooth comb. How much does that come to? (Literally: Very well. I shall take five packages of pins, this comb and this comb fine. How much this makes it in all)?

40. The total amount is four francs and a half. (Literally: That makes in all four francs fifty).

41. Pray send all these things to my place. (Literally: Send (envoyez) all this at me's (chez moi), if you please).

42. All right. You'll get them inside of an hour. (Literally: Very well. All there (y) will be within (dans) an hour (une‿heure).

---

[1]The French have no word for our *home*. They give it by **chez**, as:

Est-il chez lui?	Is he at home (—at him)?
Est-elle chez‿elle?	Is she at home (—at her)?
Je suis chez moi,	I am at home (—at me's).
Allez-vous chez vous?	Are you going home (—to you's)?

[2]**Dans** with reference to *time* denotes *when, within what time* a certain thing will occur, as:

Je reviendrai **dans** trois jours, I shall return in (within) three days.

En with reference to *time* denotes how long a certain thing will last, as:

---

39. Très bien. Je prendrai cinq paquets d'épingles. le démêloir et ce peigne fin. Combien cela fait-il en tout?

40. Cela fait‿en tout quatre francs cinquante.

41. Envoyez tout cela chez[1] moi, s'il vous plaît.

42. Très bien. Tout‿y sera dans[2]‿une‿heure. (too tĕ s'rä dăñ zŭn nûr').

Il fera ce voyage en trois jours, — He will make (*i. e.* complete) this journey in three days.

En with reference to place is rarely followed by the article or an adjective and expresses something *indefinite*, dans, something *definite*. Dans is always followed by the article, as:

Il est‿en ville,	He is in town.
Il est dans la ville,	He is in the city.

Compare Part X.

VOCABULAIRE.	VOCABULARY.
Suite.	*Continuation.*
Veuillez‿envoyer ces‿articles‿avec la facture acquittée (ă-kē-ta').	Pray send these goods with a receipted bill.
Le bureau (bū-rō').	The office.
Le caissier (kĕs-yeh').	The cashier.
Le bureau du caissier.	The cashier's desk.
Payer (pa-ya').	To pay.
Quel est le total?	How much does that amount (come) to in all?
L'argent (lăr-zhăn').	The money.
La monnaie (mŏ-neh').	The change.
Je n'ai pas de monnaie sur moi,	I have no change with me (=upon me).
Avez-vous de la monnaie sur vous?	Have you any change with you?
Vous ne me donnez pas mon compte (koń'-t').	You did not give me the correct change (=You not me give *not* my reckoning.)
Changer (shăń-zha)	To change.
Pouvez-vous me changer‿un billet de cent francs?	Can you change a hundred franc bill for me?
Le billet de banque (băń'-k).	The bill; the paper money.
Voulez-vous de l' *or* ou des billets?	Do you want gold or paper?
Vendre (văń'-dr').	To sell.
A quel prix vendez-vous ceci? (prē).	At what price do you sell this?

IV.

a. At a Milliner's..... 162
b. Salutations..... 166
c. Phrases used during a call..... 170
d. Conversation..... 186
e. Vocabulary..... 192

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

At a Milliner's.

1. Good morning[1], Madam. What is it you like[2]? (Literally: Good day, Madam. What may I you show this morning)?
2. I should like to get a bonnet[3]. (Literally: I would like to have a hat).
3. What kind? (Literally: How Madam it would like she[4])?
4. I want a high one, trimmed with lace. (Literally: I it would like high *of* form (haut de forme) and trimmed (garni[5]) *of* laces (de dentelles).
5. Here is a very pretty one, Madam, in the very latest style. (Literally: Of it here is one very pretty (bien joli). It is all that there is (c'est tout ce qu'il y a) of most new (de plus nouveau).
6. Please try it on.
7. Is it becoming to me? (Literally: How me goes it)?
8. You couldn't select anything prettier. (Literally: It not could truly (vraiment) *not* you go better (mieux).
9. The bonnet is exceedingly becoming to you. (Literally: The hat you goes wonderfully (à merveille).
10. What's the price of it?—50 francs. (Literally: What is the price of this bonnet?—It is *of* 50 francs).

---

[1]The French do not say "Good morning," but bonjour.

[2]A French phrase much used by shopkeepers. Another phrase also very frequently used is:

Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service? — What can I do for you? (Literally: What is there at your service)?

[3]Un chapeau means not only a hat, but also a bonnet.

[4]A form of question very generally used by shopkeepers. In the same

---

Chez Une Modiste.

1. Bonjour[1], madame. Que pourrais-je vous montrer ce matin[2]?

2. Je voudrais‿avoir un chapeau[3].

3. Comment madame le voudrait-elle[4]?

4. Je le voudrais haut de forme‿et garni[5] de dentelles. (ōd' for'-m-ä găr-nē d' dăn-tĕl').

5. En voici un bien joli, madame. C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus nouveau. (seh tōō skēl ya d' plū nōō-vō').

6. Essayez-le, s'il vous plaît.
7. Comment me va-t-il?

8. Il ne pourrait vraiment pas vous‿aller mieux. (mē‿ū').

9. Le chapeau vous va à merveille. (mĕr-vē'-yū).

10. Quel est le prix de ce chapeau?—Il est de cinquante francs.

---

manner a waiter will announce: Monsieur est servi, Madame est servie.
[5]**Garnir,** to trim; **faire garnir,** to have trimmed.

Comment voulez-vous faire garnir ce chapeau?	How do you want to have this hat trimmed?
Je veux le faire garnir de rubans,	I want to have it trimmed with ribbons.

---

11. You will surely let me have it cheaper? (Literally: You me it will let well at less (à moins).
12 I should like to do so, but it is quite impossible. We sell at fixed prices. (Literally: I would like well, but that (ça) itself (se) not could be *not*. We not sell but at (nous ne vendons qu'à) price fixed (prix fixe).
13. Is that the lowest price?—Yes Madam, the very lowest. (Literally: Is this there (là) your last (dernier) price?—Yes, Madam, quite at the correct (c'est tout au juste[1]).
14. I don't want to *beat you down*, but that price is exorbitant. (Literally: I not will *not* you bargain (marchander), but that me seems (semble) outside of price (hors de prix).
15. Couldn't you give me a reduction? (Literally: Not could you *not* me rebate (rabattre) something (quelque chose) upon (sur) the price)?
16. Well, as you are a new customer, I will—for once—make you a reduction. I'll give it to you at 45 francs. (Literally: At last (enfin), as (comme) you are a new customer (une nouvelle pratique) I you shall make (je vous ferai) a reduction (une diminution) this time (cette fois-ci). I you it will let at 45 francs).

I shall make.
thou wilt make.
he will make.
we shall make.
you will make.
they will make.

[1]An idiomatic expression.

11. Vous me le laisserez bien‿à moins? (leh-srā bē‿iń' nā mō‿iń').
12. Je voudrais bien, mais ça ne se pourrait pas. Nous ne vendons qu'à prix fixe.

13. Est-ce là votre dernier prix?—Oui, madame, c'est tout‿au juste[1]. (tōō tō zhūs'-t').

14. Je ne veux pas vous marchander, mais cela me semble hors de prix. (mū sāń'-bl' or-dū prē').

15. Ne pourriez-vous pas me rabattre quelque chose sur le prix?

16. Enfin, comme vous‿êtes‿une nouvelle pratique, je vous ferai une diminution, cette fois-ci. Je vous le laisserai à quarante-cinq francs. (dē-mē-nū-se‿ōń' fō‿ā-sē).

Je ferai	(zhū f'rā).
tu feras	(tū f'rā).
il fera	(ēl f'rā).
nous ferons	(nōō f'rōn).
vous ferez	(vōō f'reh).
ils feront	(ēl f'rōń).

17. That being so, send it to me. Here is my address. (Literally: In that case (dans ce cas-là) send it to me. Here is my address).

Salutations.

1. Good morning, how are you[1]? (Literally: Good day, how yourself carry you? *Or:* How go you? *Or:* How that goes it)?

2. Thanks, I am pretty well. (Literally: I go pretty well, thanks. *Or:* I myself carry pretty well, thanks. *Or:* Thanks, that goes pretty well).
3. And how is your wife? (Literally: And how herself carries madam[2]? *Or:* And how goes your wife)?
4. She is very well, thank you. (Literally: She goes (she herself carries) very well, I you thank.)
5. And how are you yourself?—Quite well, thanks. (Literally: And how go you yourself (vous-même)? Very well, thanks).

---

[1]All the above expressions are used for our: How do you do? How are you? It must however, be observed that the two latter expressions: Comment cela va-t-il? Comment ça va-t-il?, or the frequently heard inquiry: Comment ça va?, are very familiar.

Similarly we say:

Comment va la santé?	How is your health?
Cela va assez bien merci,,	Pretty good, thank you.
Ça va mieux.	Better.
Ça va beaucoup mieux,	Much better.

It must be remembered that questions about one's health, when asked in the *past* tense, must always be rendered with the reflexive verb se porter (and *never* with aller), as:

17. Dans ce cas-là, envoyez-le moi. Voici mon‿adresse. (dăn s'kā lā ăn-vŏ‿ă-yeh lŭ mŏ‿ă).

Pour Saluer.

pōōr sā-lū-a'

1. Bonjour comment vous portez-vous[1]? (vōō pŏr-ta-vōō')
   Comment‿allez-vous?
   Comment cela va-t-il?
   Comment ça va-t-il?
2. Je vais‿assez bien, merci.
   Je me porte‿assez bien, merci.
   Merci, cela va assez bien.
   Ça va assez bien, merci.
3. Et comment se porte madame[2]?
   Et comment va votre femme?
4. Elle va (Elle se porte) très bien, je vous remercie. (rū-mĕr-sē')
5. Et comment‿allez-vous vous-même?—Très bien, merci. (vōō mêm').

Comment vous‿êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous‿ai vu?	How have you been since I saw you?

[2]When speaking about other people's relatives, (unless a certain degree of familiarity exists) *Madame, monsieur* and *mademoiselle* are used, as:

Comment va monsieur?	How is your husband?
Comment se porte madame?	How is your wife?
Comment se porte monsieur votre fils?	How is your son?

But *never* use them in speaking of your *own* relatives (i. e., *never* say: Monsieur mon père, madame ma mère). It would sound exceedingly ridiculous.

---

6. And how is your brother? I hope he has quite recovered. (Literally; And how himself carries (goes) your brother? I hope (j'espère) that he goes entirely (tout‿à fait) well).
7. I am very well, thanks, but my poor brother, I am sorry to say, can not yet go out. He is still very weak. (Literally: I go very well, thanks; but my poor (pauvre) brother, I am sorry (fâché) to say it (de[3] le dire), not can *not* yet go out (sortir). He is still very feeble (faible).
8. I am very sorry for that. Have you a good physician? (Literally: I of it (en) am very sorry. Have you a good physician (médecin)?
9. Yes, our physician is very good, but my brother—as I told you—was very ill and is very weak as yet. (Literally: Yes, our physician is very good, but as (comme) I you it have told (dit), my brother has been (été) very ill (malade) and is still very feeble).
10. But he will surely soon get well. He is quite young, his constitution is good and at his age people recover rapidly. (Literally: But surely (sûrement) he will be soon (bientôt) recovered (rétabli). He is very young, his constitution (sa constitution[4]) is good, and at his age (à son‿âge) one recovers one's self (se remet) very quickly).

---

[1]Verbs of the first conjugation having an é preceding the infinitive termination, as espérer, régler, considérer, etc., change it into è before an *e mute*. Thus: **Espérer, To Hope.**

Pres: J'espère, tu espères, il espère, nous‿espérons, vous‿espérez, ils‿espèrent.
Imp: J'espérais, tu espérais, il espérait, etc.
Fut: J'espèrerai, tu espèreras, il espèrera, etc.

It may be observed that many grammarians retain the é in the Future and Conditional. See Part X.

[2]Adjectives of feeling generally require the preposition **de** after them.

Je suis content de vous voir, I am glad to see you.
Je suis fâché de partir, I am sorry to leave.

[3]The indefinite article is declined:

Nom.	un,	une,	**a.**
Gen.	d'un,	d'une,	**of a.**
Dat.	à un,	à une,	**to a.**
Acc.	un,	une,	**a.**

[4]Nouns ending in **ion** are generally spelled in the same manner in French and English, and are (generally) feminine, as: **opinion,** opinion **nation,** nation; **constitution,** constitution.

A large number of words in the English language were derived from the French. In the course of time these words have undergone slight

6. Et comment se porte (va) votre frère? J'espère[1] qu' il va tout‿à fait bien. (tōō-tă-fai).

7. Je vais très bien, merci, mais mon pauvre frère, je suis fâché de[2] le dire, ne peut pas‿encore sortir. Il est‿encore très faible. (pōv'-r' nū-pû-pā-zăń-kor').

8. J'en suis bien fâché. Avez-vous‿un[3] bon médecin? (mād'-sĭń').

9. Oui, notre médecin est très bon, mais, comme je vous l'ai dit, mon frère a été très malade et est‿encore très faible. (mād'-sĭn').

10. Mais sûrement, il sera bientôt rétabli. Il est très jeune, sa constitution[4] est bonne, et à son‿âge l'on se remet très vite. (sū-rū-măn' bē-ĭn-tō' ra-tă-blē' zhûn' kōń-stē-tū-sē‿ōń' rū-meh vēt').

---

changes in each language. Thus, many English words become French by changing their terminations, as:

ary becomes	**aire:**	honorary, **honoraire;**	ordinary, **ordinaire.**
ory "	**oire:**	victory, **victoire;**	glory, **gloire.**
cy "	**ce:**	constancy, **constance;**	urgency, **urgence.**

Several nouns ending in **ce** have the same spelling and usually the same meaning, as: Silence, **silence;** prudence, **prudence;** science, **science;** conscience, **conscience,** etc.

ty, changed into	**té:**	Trinity, **Trinité;**	charity, **charité.**
ory, " "	**eux:**	virtuous, **vertueux;**	generous, **généreux.**
or, " "	**eur:**	doctor, **docteur;**	honor, **honneur.**
y, " "	**ie:**	folly; **folie;**	modesty, **modestie.**

Several verbs ending in **ate** correspond to the French verbs in **er,** as: To animate, **animer;** to illustrate, **illustrer.**

fy corresponds to	**fier:**	to modify, **modifier;** to simplify, **simplifier.**
ish "	**ir:**	to finish, **finir;** to polish, **polir;** to tarnish, **ternir.**
de, dis "	**dé, dés:**	defeat, **défaite;** despair, **désespoir;** disguise, **déguisement;** to disown, **désavouer.**
mis "	**mal:**	to misjudge, **juger mal;** misfortune, **malheur;** misinterpret, **interpreter mal,** etc.

11. Let us hope so (espérons[1]-le).
12. To-morrow I will call on you. I must see how your brother is getting along. Meanwhile give him my regards. Good bye. (Literally: To-morrow I shall go you to see (voir). I want to know (savoir) how goes your brother. In the meanwhile (en‿attendant) give him (lui) my regards (mes‿amitiés). Goodbye (au revoir).

Phrases Used During a Call.

1. Is Mr. Carnot at home?—No sir. (Literally: Mr. Carnot is he *at him?* No sir. he not there (y) is *not*).
2. What a pity! (That's too bad, quel dommage)!
3. But Mr. Carnot will return very soon. Pray walk in and take a seat. (Literally: But master not will delay *not* to return (ne tardera pas‿à rentrer). Give yourself the trouble (la peine) *of* to enter (d'entrer) and *of* to seat yourself (de vous‿asseoir).

[1]Imperative of espérer, to hope.

[2]**Tarder à** means to delay, as:

Ne tardez pas‿à lui envoyer cette lettre,	Do not delay sending him this letter *i. e.* Hasten to send him this letter.
Le train ne tardera pas‿à venir,	The train will soon be here.

Tarder de used impersonally signifies to long, as:

11. Espérons[1]-le.
12 Demain j'irai vous voir. Je veux savoir comment va votre frère. En‿attendant donnez-lui mes‿amitiés. Au revoir. (ăń nă-tăń-dăń' meh ză-mē-tā‿eh).

Des Phrases‿Employées Pour Faire‿Une Visite.

deh frăs' zăń-plō‿ă-yā' pōōr fair' rūn vē-zēt'.

1. Monsieur Carnot est-il chez lui?—Non, monsieur, il n'y est pas. (nē eh pă).

2. Quel dommage! (dō-măzh').
3. Mais monsieur ne tardera pas‿à[2] rentrer. Donnez-vous la peine[3] d'entrer et de vous‿asseoir. (vōō zā-sō‿ăr').

Qu'il me tarde de vous revoir, How I long to see you again.

[2]This form: donnez-vous la peine de (literally:give yourself the trouble of) is considered very polite and is very frequently used. Of course we can also say:

Asseyez-vous, s'il vous plaît, } Pray, be seated.
Veuillez vous‿asseoir, }

See the conjugation of the irregular verb s'asseoir, to sit down. Part X.

ă far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

4. No thanks, I can't wait. Please give him my card and tell him I was sorry to miss him. (Literally: No thanks, I not can *not* wait (attendre). Will you please him (lui) hand (remettre) my card (ma carte), and tell him (dites-lui) that I am very sorry (contrarié) *of* to be deprived (d'être privé) of the pleasure *of* him to see).

5. Did any one call? (Literally: Is[1] it come (venu) someone (quelqu'un) in order to (pour) me see)?

6. No, madame. (Literally: No, Madam, no one (personne[2]) *not* is come).

7. The bell is ringing; go and attend to the door. (Literally: One has rung (a sonné); go then (donc) to open (ouvrir) the door (la porte).

8. Mr. Dubois would like to see you. (Literally: That is (c'est[3]) Mr. Dubois who (qui[4]) would like you to see).

---

[1]The following verbs of motion must be conjugated with être, to be, while we in English use *to have:*

Aller,	to go.	Partir pour,	to leave, to start for.
Venir,	to come.	Entrer,	to enter.
Parvenir,	to reach, to attain.	Sortir,	to go out.
Revenir, Retourner,	to come back, to return.	Naître,	to be born.
Arriver,	to arrive.	Mourir, Décéder.	to die.

As: Je suis allé, I have gone; il est parti, he has left; il est arrivé, he has arrived; je suis venu, I have come. etc.

[2]The negation ne must be used with personne whether it appears as subject or object of a verb, as:

Personne n'est venu,	Nobody came.
Je n'ai vu personne,	I didn't see anyone.

For full rules see Part X.

---

4. Non merci, je ne peux pas‿attendre. Veuillez lui remettre ma carte, et dites-lui que je suis bien contrarié d'être privé du plaisir de le voir. (kŏn-trä-rē‿ä' prē-vā' plai-zēr').

5. Est-il venu[1] quelqu'un pour me voir? (vū-nū kĕl-kŭn').

6. Non madame, personne[2] n'est venu. (pĕr-sŏn').

7. On‿a sonné; allez donc ouvrir la porte. (ōō-vrĕr').

8. C'est[3] monsieur Dubois qui[4] voudrait vous voir. (dū-bō‿ä').

---

[3]If special emphasis is placed on a noun c'est qui must be used with the *subject* of a sentence, as:

C'est votre soeur qui me l'a dit,	*Your sister* told me so.
C'est votre patron qui l'a envoyé,	*Your employer* sent it.

Before all other members of a sentence c'est que must be employed, as

C'est‿à votre mère que j'ai donné ce billet.	I gave this ticket *to your mother.*

[4]Who, which, that is rendered by qui, when the relative pronoun stands in the nominative case and refers to persons or things in the singular as well as in the plural.

L'employé qui a écrit cette lettre, n'est pas‿ici,	The clerk who wrote this letter is not here.
Passez-moi le plat qui est sur la table,	Hand me the dish which is on the table.

---

9. Show him into the parlor and tell him I shall be there in an instant. (Literally: Make him enter to the parlor (au salon) and tell him that I there shall be within some instants (dans quelques instants).
10. Is Madam Arnaud at home? (Literally: Madam Arnaud is she visible (visible)?
11. Yes, Madam; pray walk into the parlor. (Literally: Yes Madam, give yourself the trouble *of* to enter to the parlor).
12. Ah, good morning, my dear. I am *so* pleased to see you. (Literally: Ah, good day, my dear (ma chère[2]). That is a real pleasure (un vrai plaisir) *of* you to see).
13. I hope I am not disturbing you? (Literally: I you disturb (dérange) perhaps (peut-être)? *Or:* Is it that I you disturb? *Or:* I not you disturb *not*)?
14. Oh not at all; on the contrary, I am delighted to see you. Pray sit down. (Literally: No, not at all (pas du tout); on the contrary (au contraire), I am delighted (enchantée) *of* you to see. Give yourself the trouble of you to seat).
15. Wouldn't you rather sit on the sofa? (Literally: Not like you not better (mieux[3]) you to place (mettre) on the sofa (sur le sofa)?
16. Thanks, this will do nicely. (Literally: Thanks, I am[3] very well here.)

---

[1]A phrase frequently used.

[2]Though most of the sentences in this chapter are disconnected phrases —as the title shows—this is a conversation between two ladies. I have preferred to give disconnected sentences. Nothing can be more absurd

9. Faites-le entrer au salon, et dites-lui que j'y serai dans quelques‿instants. (feht-lü äń-tra kël-kü zlń-stäń').

10. Madame Arnaud est-elle visible[1]? (vē-zē'-bl').

11. Oui, madame; donnez-vous la peine d'entrer au salon.

12. Ah! bonjour, ma chère[2]. C'est‿un vrai plaisir de vous voir.

13. Je vous dérange peut-être? (dä-räńzh' pû-tē'-tr'). Est-ce que je vous dérange? Je ne vous dérange pas?

14. Non, pas du tout; au contraire, je suis‿enchantée[2] de vous voir. Donnez-vous la peine de vous‿asseoir. (Asseyez-vous, s'il vous plaît.—Veuillez vous‿asseoir). (zäń-shäń-ta ä-sa-yeh vōō).

15. N'aimez-vous pas mieux[3] vous mettre sur le sofa?

16. Merci, je suis[2] très-bien ici.

---

than the general style of so-called "Conversations during a visit," given in so many grammars and guide-books.

[2]See notes on page 176.

---

21. And how are you and your family? (Literally: May I (puis je[1]) inform myself (m'informer) of your health and that (celle) of all your family (toute votre famille)?

22. Thank you, we all enjoy good health. (Literally: Thanks, we are all (tous[2]) well (bien portants).

23. I am very glad to hear it. (Literally: I am very glad *of* you to hear (entendre[3]) say that).

24. And how are you?—Everybody is well, thank you. (Literally: And at your house (chez vous)?—Everyone (tout le monde) is (se porte) well).

25. I am so glad to see you again! (Literally: How (que[4]) I am glad (contente) *of* you to see again (revoir).

26. When did you hear from your brother? (Literally: When have you received (reçu) some news (des nouvelles) from Mr. your brother)?

27. Have you heard from him? (Literally: Have you had (eu) *of*[5] his news (de ses nouvelles)?

28. We have not had any news for a long time. (Literally: It has long time that we *not* have had *of* his news).

---

[1]Can I? or: May I? are rendered by puis-je?

[2]When males and females are referred to the masculine form of adjectives and pronouns must be used.

[3]To hear *i. e.* to hear someone speaking, to hear sounds, to hear music, etc., is given by *entendre.*

To hear *i. e.* to hear anything told, is rendered *entendre dire.*

To hear *i. e.* to hear something talked about, is given by *entendre parler de.*

---

17 Merci, j'ai peu de temps, je ne m'assiérai pas.

18. Il y a un siècle qu'on ne[4] vous‿a vue[5]. (sē‿a'. kl' kŏń n'vœ̆ zä vū).
Il y a un siècle que je ne[4] vous‿ai vue[5].
Il y a tout‿un temps (Il y a fort longtemps) qu'on ne[4] vous‿a vue[5].

19. Vous vous faites rare. (rär').
On vous voit rarement.

20. J'ai été à la campagne. (kăń-pän'-yū).

If however, the action *did* take place during the time mentioned, **ne** is *not* used, as:

Y a-t-il longtemps que vous avez ces livres?	Is it long since you had these books?

This in other words would signify: Have you had these books for a long time, consequently **ne** can not be used.

Notice also, that in the latter case the present (or imperfect) is used, while in the first sentence the past perfect has to be employed in French.

[5]When a verb is conjugated with the auxiliary verb **être** the participle must agree with the subject in gender and number, as:

Mon frère est venu (masc. sing.),	My brother came.
Mes frères sont venus (masc. plur.),	My brothers came.
Ma sœur est venue (fem. sing.),	My sister came.
Mes sœurs sont venues (fem. plur.)	My sisters came.

But when the verb is conjugated with the auxiliary verb **avoir**, the participle remains unchanged:

Ma mère a acheté cette maison,	My mother bought this house.

When, however, the object precedes the verb which can be the case *only* when the object is *a pronoun* (personal, relative or other), the participle must agree with its object, as:

Je les‿ai oubliés,	I have forgotten them.
Je l'ai vue,	I saw her.

---

21. And how are you and your family? (Literally: May I (puis je[1]) inform myself (m'informer) of your health and that (celle) of all your family (toute votre famille)?

22. Thank you, we all enjoy good health. (Literally: Thanks, we are all (tous[2]) well (bien portants).

23. I am very glad to hear it. (Literally: I am very glad *of* you to hear (entendre[3]) say that).

24. And how are you?—Everybody is well, thank you. (Literally: And at your house (chez vous)?—Everyone (tout le monde) is (se porte) well).

25. I am so glad to see you again! (Literally: How (que[4]) I am glad (contente) *of* you to see again (revoir).

26. When did you hear from your brother? (Literally: When have you received (reçu) some news (des nouvelles) from Mr. your brother)?

27. Have you heard from him? (Literally: Have you had (eu) *of*[5] his news (de ses nouvelles)?

28. We have not had any news for a long time. (Literally: It has long time that we *not* have had *of* his news).

---

[1]Can I? or: May I? are rendered by puis-je?

[2]When males and females are referred to the masculine form of adjectives and pronouns must be used.

[3]To hear *i. e.* to hear someone speaking, to hear sounds, to hear music, etc., is given by *entendre.*

To hear *i. e.* to hear anything told, is rendered *entendre dire.*

To hear *i. e.* to hear something talked about, is given by *entendre parler de.*

---

21. Puis-je[1] m'informer de votre santé et de celle de toute votre famille? (mĭń-fŏr-mā' fă-mē'-yū).

22. Merci, nous sommes tous[2] bien portants. (tōōs bē ‿ĭń' pŏr-tăń').

23. Je suis bien‿aise de vous‿entendre[3] dire cela. (bē‿ĭń nĕz dū vōō zăń-tań'-dr' dĕr sū-lă').

24. Et chez vous?—Tout le monde se porte bien, merci.

25. Que[4] je suis contente de vous revoir!

26. Quand‿avez-vous reçu des nouvelles de monsieur votre frère? (kăń-tă-vā-vōō r'sū deh nōō-vĕl').

27. Avez-vous‿eu de[5] ses nouvelles? (a-vā-vōō-zū).

28. Il y a longtemps que nous n'avons‿eu de ses nouvelles.

Avez-vous‿entendu dire que monsieur Carrière est malade?	Have you heard of Mr. Carrière's illness?
J'en‿ai entendu parler,	I heard about it.

[4]Idiomatic construction.

[5]These phrases with **nouvelles** cannot be translated literally; the use of **de** is idiomatic. Similarly we say:

J'attendrai de vos nouvelles pour écrire,	I shall wait till I hear
Je n'écrirai pas‿avant d'avoir de vos nouvelles,	from you before writing

29. We are in daily expectation *of* news from him. (Literally: We expect (nous‿attendons[1]) *of* his news from day to day (de jour‿en jour).
30. But what are you doing? Are you going to leave already? (Literally: But what make you? You go already (déjà) me to leave (quitter)?
31. Why are you in such haste? (Literally: Are you then so hurried (si pressée)?
32. I must go; my husband is expecting me. (Literally: It is necessary (il faut) that I may go (que je m'en‿aille[2]); my husband me expects (m'attend).

---

[1]The infinitive of this verb is **attendre**, to wait, to expect.

Verbs of the third conjugation end in **re**, as vendre, to sell; entendre, to hear; rendre, to render.

By striking off this ending we get the stem of the verb, as: vendre—vend; entendre—entend; rendre—rend; attendre—attend.

To the stem of the verb the following endings are added in the

Present:

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
je —— s.	je —— e.
tu —— s.	tu —— es.
il —— —.	il —— e.
nous —— ons.	nous —— ions.
vous —— ez.	vous —— iez.
ils —— ent.	ils —— ent.

Vendre, To Sell.

Present:

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
je vend*s*.	que je vend*e*.
tu vend*s*.	que tu vend*es*.
il vend.	qu'il vend*e*.
nous vend*ons*.	que nous vend*ions*.
vous vend*ez*.	que vous vend*iez*.
ils vend*ent*.	qu'ils vend*ent*.

Remember that the ending *ent* is never pronounced in conjugations.

---

29. Nous‿attendons[1] de ses nouvelles de jour‿en jour.

30. Mais que faites-vous? Vous‿allez déjà me quitter? (kĭ-tā).

31. Etes-vous donc si pressée?

32. Il faut que je m'en‿aille;[2] monsieur m'attend.

---

[1]For full conjugation see Part X.

[2]After **il faut** we employ the subjunctive (although we may also use the infinitive with or without a pronoun). Compare Part X for full rules.

Il faut que je sonne la domestique,	I must ring for the servant-girl.
Que faut-il que je fasse?	What have I to do? What must I do?
Il faut que vous‿y alliez de suite,	You must go there at once.

The French have no verb which corresponds to our "must" Let it be remembered that with *a noun* as subject **il faut** is always followed by the subjunctive with que, as:

Il faut que mon frère parte ce soir,	My brother must leave to-night.
Il faut que le cordonnier fasse mes bottes tout de suite, comme je vais partir,	The shoemaker must make my boots at once, as I am going to leave.

For the conjugation of s'en‿aller see Part X. We conjugate

Aller, To Go.

Present:

Indicative	*Subjunctive.*
je vais.	que j'aille.
tu vas.	que tu ailles.
il va.	qu'il aille.
nous‿allons.	que nous‿allions.
vous‿allez.	que vous‿alliez.
ils vont.	qu'ils‿aillent.

33. I am sorry to leave, but I must go. (Literally: I you leave (quitte) with regret (à regret), but it is necessary (il le faut).
34. I am obliged to go home. (Literally: It is necessary (il faut) that I *may* be (que je sois) *of* return at the house (à la maison).
35. Pray, call soon again. (Literally: Do me the honor (l'honneur) *of* to renew (renouveler) soon your visit).
36. Well, and when shall we have the pleasure of seeing you again? (Literally: Well (eh bien), when us will make you the honor *of* to renew your visit)?
37. I shall soon call again; I promise you. (Literally: I shall return (je reviendrai) *under* short (sous peu *or* bientôt), I you it promise (je vous le promets).
38. Be sure to do so. (Literally: Not to it fail *not* (n'y manquez pas).
39. Pray, don't disturb yourself.—I shall see you to the door. (Literally: Not yourself disturb *not*, I you beg. I you shall accompany as far as the door (jusqu' à[4] la porte).

---

[1]The subjunctive present of **être** is conjugated:

que je sois,	that I may be.
que tu sois,	that thou mayst be.
qu'il soit,	that he may be.
que nous soyons,	that we may be.
que vous soyez,	that you may be.
qu'ils soient,	that they may be.

[2]The future of **venir**, to come, and of verbs derived from it, is conjugated:

je viendrai,	I shall come.
tu viendras,	thou wilt come.
il viendra,	he will come.
nous viendrons,	we shall come.
vous viendrez,	you will come.
ils viendront,	they will come.

33. Je vous quitte à regret, mais‿il le faut. (rŭ-greh').

34. Il faut que je sois[1] de retour‿à la maison.

35. Faites-moi l'honneur de renouveler bientôt votre visite (lŏ-nûr' dŭ rŭ-nœŏ-v'la').

36. Eh bien, quand nous ferez-vous l'honneur de renouveler votre visite?

37. Je reviendrai[2] sous peu (bientôt), je vous le promets[3]. (sœŏ pû prŏ-meh').

38. N'y manquez pas. (nē mäñ-kä' pā).

39. Ne vous dérangez pas, je vous prie.—Je vous‿accompagnerai jusqu' à[4] la porte.

---

[1]Mettre, to put, to place, and verbs derived from it are irregular. The present is conjugated:

je mets,	I put.
tu mets,	thou putst.
il met,	he puts.
nous mettons,	we put.
vous mettez,	you put.
ils mettent,	they put.

[4]The French have three ways of saying *till, until:*

a. Jusque, which is used before an adverb, as: Jusque là, till there, to there.

b. Jusqu'à, as far as; Jusqu'à Paris, as far as Paris.

c. Jusqu'à ce que before a verb (in the subjunctive): Jusqu'à ce que le vapeur arrive, till the steamer arrives.

---

40. Give my regards to your husband. (Literally: Make my compliments (mes compliments) to *monsieur*).

41. Thank you, I shall surely do so. My kindest regards to your sister. (Literally: I not to it shall fail *not*. Many regards (bien des amitiés) to your sister).

42. Whom have I the honor to address?—My name is Barbou. (Literally: To whom have I the honor *of* to speak?—Mr. Barbou).
May I ask your name?—Mr. Barbou. (Literally: May I know (savoir) to whom I have the honor *of* to speak?—Mr. Barbou).

43. Is this Mr. Goblet? (Literally: Is that to Mr. Goblet that I have the honor *of* to speak? *Or:* That is to Mr. Goblet that I have the honor *of* to speak)?

44. That's my name sir. (Literally: Myself, sir. *Or:* That is myself).

45. Good morning[2].—Good evening[2]. (Literally: I you salute (salue). *Or:* I have the honor *of* you to salute (saluer). *Or:* I have the honor).

46. I trust you will soon call again. (Literally: Do me the honor *of* to renew (renouveler) soon your visit).

---

[1]After **bien**, used in the sense of *many*, *a great deal*, **du**, **de la** and **des** must be used, (i. e., the definite article follows bien).

[2]Idiomatic expression. The phrase *must* be answered in this manner.

---

40. Faites mes compliments‿à monsieur.

41. Je n'y manquerai pas. Bien[1] des‿amitiés‿à votre soeur.

42. A qui ai-je l'honneur de parler?—Monsieur Barbou[1].
Puis-je savoir à qui j'ai l'honneur de parler?—Monsieur Barbou.

43. Est-ce‿à monsieur Goblet que j'ai l'honneur de parler?
C'est‿à monsieur Goblet que j'ai l'honneur de parler?

44. Moi-même, monsieur[2].
C'est moi-même.

45. { Je vous salue, monsieur[2]. (sä-lü').
J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer[2]. (sä-lü-a').
J'ai l'honneur[2]. }

46. Faites-moi l'honneur de renouveler bientôt votre visite.

---

[2]These are phrases used in taking leave. Of course, no English speaking person would ever think of employing them, but the French people use them.

---

47. You are very kind[1]. (Literally: The honor is for me[1]).
48. I feel greatly flattered[1]. (Literally: I myself find greatly honored (bien honoré). *Or:* I am greatly flattered (bien flatté).
49. Well, good-bye[2]. (Literally: Well, till by-and-by).
50. Good-bye.—Good-bye. (Literally: To our meeting again (au revoir). *Or:* To the pleasure[2]).

CONVERSATION.

1. Do you understand French? (Literally: Understand you the French)?
2. I can understand French slightly, but not very well. (Literally: I it understand a little, but not (pas) very well).
3. Do you understand me when I speak rapidly? (Literally: Me understand you when I speak fast(vite)?
4. I understand you when you talk slowly and distinctly, but when you speak rapidly, or I ought to say, when you talk naturally, I can scarcely understand a word. (Literally: I you understand when you speak slowly and distinctly, but when you speak fast, or rather (plutôt) when you speak naturally (naturellement, that is (c'est) scarcely (à peine) if I understand a word (un mot).
5. That's very annoying (fâcheux)!
6. Your ear lacks training. (Literally: You lack (vous manquez) of practice (pratique).

---

[1]Idiomatic phrases which must be given so.

[2]An abbreviation for: Jusqu'à tantôt. An abbreviated phrase for: Jusqu' au plaisir de vous revoir, until the pleasure *of* to see you again. All these overpolite phrases must be taken as French idioms. They can

47 L'honneur est pour moi[1].

48. { Je me trouve bien‿honoré[1]. (bē‿ĭń nō-nō-rā').
{ Je suis bien flatté[1].

49. Eh bien, à tantôt[2]. (ā tăń-tō')
50. Au revoir.—Au plaisir[2].

CONVERSATION.

köń-vĕr-sā-sē‿ōń'

1. Comprenez-vous le[3] francais?

2. Je le comprends‿un peu, mais pas[4] très bien.

3. Me comprenez-vous quand je parle vite? (vēt').

4. Je vous comprends quand vous parlez lentement et distinctement, mais quand vous parlez vite, ou plutôt, quand vous parlez naturellement, c'est‿à peine si je comprends‿un mot. (seh-tā-pehn').

5. C'est très fâcheux. (fā-shû).
6. Vous manquez de pratique. (măń-ka d'prā-tēk').

---

not be translated. To us they sound ridiculous, but are quite natural to French people.

[2]See note 2 page 64.

[4]See note 2 page 151.

---

7 You ought to listen attentively to French people when they converse with each other. (Literally: You ought (vous devez) to try (essayer) *of* to listen (écouter) with attention, when French people (des Français) speak among themselves (entre eux).

8. It seems to me that French people talk a great deal faster than we do. (Literally: It me seems (semble) that the French speak much more rapidly than we).

9. That only seems so to you. In time and by practice you will get accustomed to it and you will find it quite easy to understand almost any conversation. (Literally: That you seems thus (ainsi). With the time (le temps) and with the practice (la pratique) you ear (oreille) itself to it will accustom (s'y habituera) and then (alors) you will see (vous verrez) that you will finish (vous finirez) by (par) to find very easy to (de) understand no matter (n'importe) what conversation (quelle conversation).

---

[1]The comparative of superiority is formed by placing **plus**, more, before the adjective, while **le plus, la plus** (fem.) is put before the superlative.

Positive.	*Comparative.*
beau, belle (fem), } beautiful.	plus beau, plus belle, } more beautiful.

Superlative.

le plus beau, la plus belle, } the most beautiful.

The comparative is generally followed by **que**, than, as:

La paresse est *plus* dangereuse *que* la vanité. — Idleness is more dangerous than vanity.

The comparative of inferiority is formed with **moins**, less, **le moins**, the least, as: beau, fine; moins beau, less fine, le moins beau, the least fine.

Il est *moins* pauvre *que* moi, — He is not so poor (=less poor) as I am.

For full rules see Part X.

---

7. Vous devez‿essayer d'écouter avec attention, quand des Français parlent‿entre‿eux. (dŭ-vā-zē-sā-yā dā-kōō-tā ă-vĕk ă-tăń-sē‿ōń'—pärl'-tăń'-tr' rû).

8. Il me semble que les Français parlent beaucoup plus vite[1] que nous. (săń'-bl'—bō-kōō).

9. Cela vous semble ainsi. Avec le temps et avec la pratique votre‿oreille s'y habituera, et alors vous verrez que vous finirez[2] par trouver très facile de comprendre n'importe[3] quelle conversation. (ĭń-sē' vo'-tr' rō-rē'-yŭ sē ă-bē-tū-ŭ-rā—fē-nē-rā—nĭń-port' kĕl kōń-vĕr-sā-sē‿ōń').

---

[2]Future of the regular verb **finir**, to finish.

Verbs of the second conjugation end in **ir**; the stem of finir is therefore **fin**.

All regular verbs ending in **ir** insert **iss** between the stem and termination in the present *plural only* and imperfect indicative, also in the present subjunctive.

We add the following endings in the

Present:

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
—— is.	—— isse.
—— is.	—— isses.
——it.	—— isse.
—— issons.	—— issions.
—— issez.	—— issiez.
—— issent.	——issent.

☞See also foot-notes continued on next page.

10. I hope so. But pardon me, you employed an expression which is quite new to me. What is the literal meaning of: "*Alors vous verrez?*" (Literally: I it hope. But excuse me, you have[1] employed (employé) an expression (une expression) which is quite new (toute nouvelle[2]) for me. What is the meaning literal (la signification littérale) of "*Alors vous verrez*")?

We therefore conjugate **finir**, to finish,

Present:

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Je fini*s*.	Que je fini*sse*.
tu fini*s*.	que tu fini*sses*.
il fini*t*.	qu' il fini*sse*.
nous fini*ssons*.	que nous fini*ssions*.
vous fini*ssez*.	que vous fini*ssiez*.
ils fini*ssent*.	qu'ils fini*ssent*.

Imperfect: Je fini*ssais*, tu fini*ssais*, il fini*ssait*, nous fini*ssions*, vous fini*ssiez*, ils fini*ssaient*.

Future: Je fini*rai*, tu fini*ras*, il fini*ra*, nous fini*rons*, vous fini*rez*, ils fini*ront*.

Conditional: Je fini*rais*, tu fini*rais*, il fini*rait*, nous fini*rions*, vous fini*riez*, ils fini*raient*.

See Part X.

[2]N'importe! Never mind! No matter!

[1]It has already been explained that the French have no progressive conjugation, i. e., they can not say: *I am writing*, but only: *I write; I was writing; I wrote* etc.

Neither do they use the auxiliary verb *to do* in questions or negations. They can only say: Je ne vais pas, I do not go, I am not going. Allez-vous? Do you go? Are you going? N'allez-vous pas? Don't you go? Are you not going? etc.

They consequently say:

---

10. Je l'espère. Mais‿excusez-moi: vous‿avez[1]‿employé une‿expression qui est toute nouvelle[2] pour moi. Quelle est la signification littérale de "alors vous verrez? (vōō-zä-vä-zäń-plō‿ä-yä ün nëx-prë-së‿öń' nōō-vël' sën-yë-fë-kä-së‿öń' lë-ta-räl').

Avez-vous‿écrit?	*Did* you write?	Have you written?
Je n'ai pas‿écrit,	I did not write,	I have not written.

On the other hand, it must be understood that the French very rarely use our Imperfect tense, which we so generally employ in English when talking about past events.

We say:	I saw him.	The French:	I him have seen,	Je l'ai vu.
"	I received it.	"	I it have received,	Je l'ai reçu.
"	I did it,	"	I it have done,	Je l'ai fait.
"	Did you write him?	"	To him have you written?	Lui avez-vous‿écrit?

The pupil ought to thoroughly familiarize himself with this French peculiarity, as the proper use of the past perfect tense is exceedingly perplexing, especially with pronoun objects. These will be considered in a later lesson.

[2]Adjectives in eau and ou form the feminine form:

Beau,	beautiful;	belle.
nouveau,	new;	nouvelle.
mou,	soft;	molle.
fou,	foolish;	folle.

They owe this to their old masculine forms: *bel, nouvel, mol, fol,* which are still used before *masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or silent h,* as:

Un nouvel‿opéra,	A new opera.
un bel‿homme,	A fine man.

ä far; ä pale; ë eve; ë there; ö note; öö room.

VOCABULAIRE. *Suite.*	VOCABULARY. *Continuation.*
Combien prenez-vous pour cela?	How much do you ask for it?
Combien demandez-vous pour cela?	
Combien vendez-vous cela?	How much do you charge for it?
Combien cet‿objet? (ŏb-zhă).	
C'est trop cher; je n'en veux pas‿à ce prix.	That is too dear; I don't want to take it at this price.
La qualité (kă-lē-ta').	The quality.
Je n'aime pas cette qualité.	I don't like this quality.
Comment trouvez-vous celle-ci?	How do you like this one (=how do you find this one)?
Je la préfère (pra-far').	I like it better (I prefer it).
Le drap (drä).	The cloth.
La soie (sŏ‿ä').	The silk.
La laine (leh'-n').	The wool.
Le coton (kŏ-tŏń').	The cotton.
La robe (rŏb').	The dress.
Une robe de soie.	A silk dress (=a dress of silk).
Une robe de laine.	A woolen dress (=a dress of wool).
Une robe de coton.	A cotton dress (=a dress of cotton).
Porter.	To wear.
Durer (dū-rä').	To wear, i. e., to last.
Ces‿articles sont d'un bon‿usage (ū-zăzh').	These goods wear very well.

V.

a. Conversation..... 194
b. Faire and its idiomatic use..... 200
c. The seasons..... 202
d. Faire and avoir..... 214
e. Vocabulary..... 224

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

Conversation.

(*Continued*).

11. "Alors vous verrez" means literally: "Already (then) you will see."

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
I see.	I shall see.
thou seest.	thou wilt see.
he sees.	he will see.
we see.	we shall see.
you see.	you will see.
they see.	they will see.

12. Ah, now I understand you. I wish you would always give me literal translations. (Literally: Ah, I you understand now (maintenant). I wish that you me may give always *of the* translations literal (des traductions littérales).
13. Literal translations, my dear sir, are in the majority of cases an impossibility. (Literally: The translations literal, my dear sir, are in the most (dans la plupart) of the cases (des cas) an impossibility (une impossibilité).
14. And why?

[1]The subjunctive is used after verbs denoting a wish or desire.
[2]Adjectives are generally placed after the noun.

Conversation.

(*Suite*).

11. "Alors vous verrez" signifie littéralement: "Already (then) you will see."

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
je vois (vŏ‿ă′).	je verrai (vĕ-ra′).
tu vois.	tu verras (vĕ-ră′).
il voit.	il verra (vĕ-ră′).
nous voyons (vŏ‿ă-yŏń′).	nous verrons (vĕ-rŏń′).
vous voyez (vŏ‿ă-ya′).	vous verrez (vĕ-ra′).
ils voient (vŏ‿ă′).	ils verront (vĕ-rŏń′).

12. Ah, je vous comprends maintenant. Je désire que vous me donniez[1] toujours des traductions littérales[2]. (trä-dūk-sē‿ŏń′).

13. Les traductions littérales, mon cher monsieur, sont dans la plupart des cas, une‿impossibilité. (plū-pär′ kä lń-pŏ-sē-bē-lē-ta′).

14. Pourquoi donc[3]?

[3]Donc is used frequently to show a certain interest. In most cases it can not be translated.

15. Because every language possesses its own peculiarities, its own idioms and modes of peculiar expressions which can never be translated literally. (Literally: Because (parce que) every (chaque) language has its own peculiarities (ses propres particularités), its own idioms (idiotismes) and *of the* forms (des formes) of expression particular which not can never (jamais) be translated (traduites) literally (littéralement).

16. Are there many idiomatic expressions in French? (Literally: Are there (y a-t-il) much *of* expressions idiomatic (idiomatiques) French)?

17. The French language, my dear sir, is one of the richest tongues in the world. Among modern tongues German and French rank highest as regards expressions and idioms. (Literally: The language French, my dear sir, is one of the most rich of the world (du monde). Among (parmi) the languages modern (modernes) the German (l'allemand) and the French are in the first rank (au premier rang) for the number (le nombre) of the expressions and of the forms idiomatic (formes ‿idiomatiques).

---

[1]**Ne** must be used in connection with **jamais, personne, rien,** etc.

N'ont-ils jamais‿écrit?	Did they never write?
Personne n'est venu,	No one came.
Je n'ai rien fait,	I didn't do anything.
Je n'ai vu personne,	I have not seen any one.

[2]Most adverbs are formed by adding the syllable **ment** (corresponding to our *ly*) to the adjective, as:

Sage,	wise;	sagement,	wisely.
ferme,	firm;	fermement,	firmly.
agréable,	agreeable;	agréablement,	agreeably.

Ment is added to the masculine adjective if the adjective ends vowel; if not, to the feminine, as:

Utile,		utilement,	useful,	usefully.
doux,	douce,	doucement,	sweet,	sweetly.
certain,	certaine,	certainement,	certain,	certainly.

For list of exceptions see Part X.

Observe that the adjectives **beau, nouveau, fou** and **mou,** whose

---

15. Parce que chaque langue a ses propres particularités, ses propres‿idiotismes‿et des formes d'expressions particulières qui ne peuvent jamais[1] ‿être traduites littéralement[2]. (shăk păr-tē-kū-lă-rē-tă' prŏ'-pr' zē-dē‿ŏ-tēs'-m' dĕx-prĕ-sē‿ŏń' păr-tē-kū-lē‿ăr' trā-dū‿ēt').

16. Y a-t-il beaucoup d'expressions‿idiomatiques françaises? (zē-dē‿ŏ-mă-tēk').

17. La langue française, mon cher monsieur, est‿une des plus riches du monde. Parmi les langues modernes, l'allemand et le français sont‿au premier rang pour le nombre des‿expressions‿et des formes‿idiomatiques. (lăń'-g' rēsh păr-mē' lăl'-măń' to prū-mē‿ă răń nŏń'-br').

---

feminine is **belle, nouvelle, folle** and **molle,** form their adverbs by adding **ment** to the feminine, as:

Bellement,	beautifully.	follement,	foolishly.
Nouvellement,	newly.	mollement,	softly.

The usual place of adverbs is immediately after the verb, if the verb stands in a simple tense, as:

Vous prononcez bien, you pronounce well.

If the verb stands in a compound tense, the adverb is placed between the auxiliary and past participle, as:

Vous‿avez bien prononcé, you have pronounced well.

Hier, aujourd'hui, demain, ici, là and adverbial expressions (see Part X.) are placed after both parts of the verb, as:

Il est venu hier, he came yesterday.

Note that *hier, aujourd'hui* and *demain* are sometimes placed at the beginning of sentences, for the sake of emphasis.

For further rules see Part X.

---

18. Would you have the kindness to mention some of the most widely used idioms? I mean expressions which come up in every-day conversation. (Literally: Will have you the kindness *of* me to cite (citer) some ones (quelques‿uns) of the idioms the most employed; I want to say those (ceux) used (usités) in a conversation ordinary (ordinaire).
19. With pleasure. You remember the verb *avoir* which we studied in our first book? (Literally: With pleasure. Yourself remember you (vous rappelez-vous) the verb *avoir* which we have studied in the first book (livre)?
20. Yes, I remember it perfectly, but we only studied the indicative present. (Literally: Yes, I myself it remember very well (fort bien); but we not have studied but (que) the present (le présent) of the indicative (l'indicatif).
21. Well, you ought to study the whole verb, as the use of it is very common and presents many difficulties to English speaking persons. (Literally: Very well, but you ought (vous devez) to study the verb entire (entier), for (car) it is of a use very frequent (d'un‿usage très fréquent) and presents (présente) much of difficulties for the English (les‿Anglais) and the Americans).

PRESENT TENSE.

I ought to.
thou oughtst to.
he ought to.
we ought to.
you ought to.
they ought to.

18. Voulez-vous‿avoir la bonté de me citer quelques‿uns des‿idiotismes les plus‿employés; je veux dire ceux‿usités dans‿une conversation‿ordinaire. (sē-ta' kēl-kŭ-zŭń plū-zăń-plŏ‿ă-yā sū-zū-zē-ta kŏń-vĕr-sā-sē‿ŏń nŏr-dē-nair'.)

19. Avec plaisir. Vous rappelez-vous le verbe *avoir* que nous‿avons‿étudié dans le premier livre? (vōō rā-p'la—vĕrb' ā-vŏ‿ăr' kŭ nōō zā-vŏń-za-tū-dē‿a'—lē'-vr').

20. Oui, je me le rappelle fort bien; mais nous n'avons‿étudié que le présent de l'indicatif. (pra-zăń du lŭń-dē-kā-tēf').

21. Très bien; mais vous devez‿étudier le verbe entier, car il est d'un‿usage très fréquent et présente beaucoup de difficultés pour les‿Anglais et les‿Américains. (vōō dŭ-va-za-tū-dē‿a'—ăń-tē‿a' dŭń-nū-zăzh' treh fra-kăń'—pra-zăńt'—dē-fē-kŭl-ta'—leh zăń-gleh'—leh zā-ma-rē-kĭń').

PRESENT.

Je dois	(dŏ‿ă').
tu dois.	
il doit.	
nous devons	(dŭ-vŏń').
vous devez	(dŭ-va').
ils doivent	(dŏ‿ăv').

22. Well, study it. You find it in the tenth book which contains the grammar of the French language. (Literally: Well, study it. You it will find in the tenth book which contains (contient) the grammar (la grammaire) of the language French).
23. Study it well and in our next lesson I will teach you the idioms of *avoir*. Good bye! (Literally: Study it well and in the next lesson (la prochaine leçon) I you will teach (je vous enseignerai) the idioms of the verb *avoir*. Good bye!
24. Good bye, sir!

To Make; To Do.

1. Ah! good morning, my dear sir! I am delighted to see you. How are you? (Literally: Ah, good day, dear sir. I am delighted (enchanté) *of* you to see. How go you)?

2. Thanks, I am quite well. And how do you feel to-day? (Literally: Very well, thanks. And you, how yourself carry you to-day)?

3. I am very well, thank you. This beautiful spring-weather just suits me. (Literally: Very well, I you thank. This time of spring (ce temps de printemps) me pleases much).

22. Bien, étudiez-le. Vous le trouverez dans le dixième livre qui contient la grammaire de la langue française. (köń-tē‿lń' lä grä-mair').

23. Etudiez-le bien et dans la prochaine leçon je vous‿enseignerai les‿idiotismes du verbe *avoir*. Au revoir! (zhü vöö zäń-sēn-yü-rä)

24. Au revoir, monsieur.

Faire.

1. Ah, bonjour, cher monsieur! Je suis‿enchanté de vous voir. Comment‿allez-vous?

2. Très bien, merci. Et vous, comment vous portez-vous‿aujourd'hui?

3. Fort bien, je vous remercie. Ce temps de printemps me plaît beaucoup. (sü täń dü prīń-täń').

---

4. Spring-weather? Pardon me for repeating these words after you, but the expression is quite new to me and I don't quite know what it means. (Literally: Weather of spring? Excuse me if I repeat these words (ces mots) after (après) you, but the expression is entirely (tout‿à fait) new for me and I not know *not* at all (pas du tout) what *she* signifies).
5. You know of course, that we have four seasons viz.: Spring, Summer, Autumn and Winter, but I suppose our French names are new to you. (Literally. You know without doubt that we have four seasons (saisons), which are: The Spring, the Summer (l'été), the Autumn (l'automne) and the Winter (l'hiver), but I think these words French are new for you).
6. Quite so; pray let me repeat them after you: Spring, summer, autumn, winter. (Literally: They it are in fact (en‿effet). Let me (laissez-moi) them repeat after you: the spring, the summer, the autumn and the winter).
7. That was very good! Your pronunciation is excellent! (Literally: There is (voilà) which is very well! Your pronunciation is excellent (excellente).
8. You flatter me, professor. You Frenchmen are always so complimentary. (Literally: You me flatter, sir. You other (autres) French, you like (vous‿aimez) to make of the compliments)

---

[1]Idiomatic usage.

[2]**Aimer**, to like, to love, refers to settled tastes or affections.

But when *to like* expresses merely an opinion or an impression, the French prefer -- as far as practicable — to use some indirect form of speech, as: That does not please me, That does not suit me, cela ne me plaît pas, cela ne me convient pas.

[3]Before nouns beginning with a vowel or an unaspirated (*i. e.* mute) **h**, **le** and **la** are changed into **l'**, thus forming but one word with the noun, as: L'oncle, the uncle. L'amie, the (lady) friend.

---

4. "Temps de printemps"? Excusez-moi, si je répète ces mots‿après vous, mais l'expression[2] est tout‿à fait nouvelle pour moi et je ne sais pas du tout ce qu'elle signifie. (ra-pat' seh mo-zä-pra voo. — too-tä-fai).

5. Vous savez sans doute, que nous‿avons quatre saisons, qui sont: Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver, mais je pense ces mots français sont nouveaux pour vous. (seh-zŏń—la-ta' lo-tŏn lē-var'—noo-vo').

6. Ils le[1] sont‿en‿effet. Laissez-moi les répéter après vous: Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver.

7. Voilà qui est très bien[1]! Votre prononciation est‿excellente. (prŏ-nŏń-sē‿ä-sē‿ŏń a-tĕk-sē-läń'-t').

8. Vous me flattez, monsieur. Vous‿autres[1] Français vous‿aimez[2] faire des compliments. (kŏń-plē-mäń').

---

l'ami, the friend. l'assiette, the plate,
l'homme, the man. l'habitude, the habit.

The declension of these nouns presents no difficulties.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	l'ami,	the friend.	les‿amis,	the friends.
Gen.	de l'ami,	of the friend.	des‿amis,	of the friends.
Dat.	à l'ami,	to the friend.	aux‿amis,	to the friends.
Acc.	l'ami,	the friend.	les‿amis,	the friends

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; oo room.

9. Not complimentary, but polite. French people are polite by nature. French politeness is inborn and universal and is found among the poorest as well as the richest. (Literally: No, we are polite (polis). The French are polite by nature (par nature). The politeness (la politesse) French is inborn (innée), general (générale) and is encountered (se rencontre) as well (aussi bien) in the class poor as in the class rich (riche).

10. I wish I could say the same thing about my countrymen. I am afraid our manners must appear rather rude to you. (Literally: I should wish (je souhaiterais) of to be able (pouvoir) of it to say as much (autant) of my countrymen (mes compatriotes). I fear (je crains) that our manners (nos manières) *not* you may seem (paraissent) rather rude (plutôt rudes).

---

[1]**Aussi....que** — **as....as**, is used in comparisons of equality, as:

Il est aussi heureux que son frère, He is just as happy as his brother.

In negative comparisons *aussi....que....*, or *si....que....* may be used:

Il n'est pas si riche (aussi riche) que vous, He is not so rich as you.

[2]The verbs **craindre, avoir peur,** to fear, **trembler,** to tremble, **appréhender,** to apprehend, **empêcher,** to hinder, require the particle **ne** before the verb in the subjunctive mood, when these verbs themselves are affirmative or negative-interrogative, as:

Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne,	I am afraid he will come.
Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il **ne** vienne?	Aren't you afraid he will come?

---

9. **Non, nous sommes polis. Les Français sont polis par nature. La politesse française est‿innée, générale et se rencontre‿aussi bien[1] dans la classe pauvre que dans la classe riche. (pŏlē'-nă-tūr'—pō-lē-tēs'—ē-nā' zha-nā-răl'—răń-koń'-tr'—pō'-vr').**

10. **Je souhaiterais de pouvoir‿en dire‿autant de mes compatriotes. Je crains[2] que nos manières ne vous paraissent plutôt rudes. (sōō-eh-t'ra dŭ pōō-vō‿ăr' răń-dēr-rō-tań' —koń-pă-trē-ōt' — ma-nē‿ăr' — pă-sehs'-rūd').**

But if the sentence be simply negative or simply interrogative, **ne** is *not* used, as:

Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	I don't fear his coming
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?	Are you afraid he is coming?

Still after *craindre, avoir peur* and trembler we use **pas** after **ne** when we wish for the accomplishment of the action expressed by the second verb, which must stand in the subjunctive:

J'ai peur qu'elle ne vienne pas,	I wish her to come.
J'ai peur qu'elle ne vienne,	I do not wish her to come.
Je crains qu'il n'écrive pas,	I wish him to write.
Je crains qu'il n'écrive,	I don't wish him to write.

The subjunctive mood will be treated fully in a later lesson.

Compare also Part X.

---

11. Well, frankly speaking, I think that Englishmen in that respect could learn a great deal from us, while we on the other hand might learn many things from you which are much more important than politeness. But let us return to our subject. (Literally: To (à) speak frankly (franchement) I believe that under this regard (sous ce rapport)[1] the English have still much to (à) learn (apprendre) from (de) us; of another side (d'un‿autre côté), there are many of things (beaucoup de choses) more important (importantes) than the politeness which we ought to (nous devrions) learn from them (d'eux). But let us return (revenons) to our conversation).

CONDITIONAL.

I ought to.

thou oughtst to.

he ought to.

we ought to.

you ought to.

they ought to.

---

[1]In every respect, à tous‿égards. — In this respect, à cet‿égard. — In no respect, sous‿aucun rapport. — To pay on's respects, présenter ses‿hommages. —

Pourrais-je présenter mes‿hommages‿à madame?	May I pay my respects to your wife?

[2]We have already learned that *who*, *which* and *that* are rendered by qui, when they are in the nominative case, whether they refer to persons or things, both for the singular and plural, as:

---

11. A parler franchement, je crois que sous ce rapport,[1] les‿Anglais‿ont‿encore beaucoup‿à apprendre de nous; d'un‿autre côté, il y a beaucoup de choses plus‿importantes que la politesse que[2] nous devrions‿apprendre d'eux. Mais revenons‿à notre conversation (krŏ‿ă'soo sŭ ră-pōr'—plü-zin-pŏr-tan'-t' pŏ-lē-tĕs'—dû—kŏn-vér-să-sē‿ŏn').

CONDITIONNEL.

Je devrais	**(dŭ-vreh')**
tu devrais	
il devrait	
nous devrions	**(dŭ-vrē‿ŏń')**
vous devriez	**(dŭ-vrē-a')**
ils devraient	**(dŭ-vreh')**

Les dames qui l'ont dit, sont parties hier soir,	**The ladies who said so, left last night.**

The same relative pronouns, when standing in the accusative i. e. *whom*, *which* and *that* are rendered by que, as:

Est-ce là le chapeau que vous avez acheté?	**Is this the hat you bought?**
La leçon que vous m'avez donnée, est très difficile,	**The lesson (task) you gave me is very difficult.**

Note: Observe that in French the relative pronoun must always be expressed, though we frequently omit it in English.

---

12. Now I have quite forgotten what we were talking about. (Literally: I have entirely (totalement) forgotten (oublié) of what we were speaking (nous parlions).

IMPERFECT.

I was speaking	*or*	I used to speak.				
thou wast	"	"	thou usedst to speak.			
he was	"	"	he used	"	"	
we were	"	"	we	"	"	"
you were	"	"	you	"	"	"
they were	"	"	they	"	"	"

13. We were talking about the seasons and I had just mentioned their names to you. Do you still remember them? (Literally: We were speaking of the seasons and I came (je venais) from you to tell their names (leurs noms). You them remember you yet (encore)?

---

[1]As a general thing the Past Perfect Tense is used in French in speaking of past actions or events, while we in English use—generally at least—the Imperfect, as:

Je l'ai vu hier,	I saw him yesterday.

The Imperfect in French is used;

a. when referring to habitual or repeated actions, as:

L'hiver passé je faisais une promenade tous les matins,	Last winter I took a walk every morning.
Je lisais beaucoup,	I used to read a good deal.

b. when denoting a continued action, as:

---

12. J'ai totalement‿oublié de quoi nous parlions

IMPARFAIT.

Je parlais	(păr-leh')
tu parlais	(")
il parlait	(")
nous parlions	(păr-lē‿ōñ')
vous parliez	(păr-leh')
ils parlaient	(păr-leh')

13. Nous parlions des saisons et je venais[2] de vous dire leurs noms. Vous les rappelez-vous‿encore? (vū-neh — lûr nōñ').

Tandis que j'écrivais, il parlait, While I was writing, he was talking.
c. when referring to an action which was going on while another one took place, as:
Quand je suis‿entré, il lisait, When I entered he was reading.
[2]The English *just*, *just now* is given in French by **venir de**, as:
Je viens de recevoir‿une lettre, I have just received a letter. (Lit.: I come from receiving a letter).
Le facteur vient d'apporter‿une lettre pour vous, The postman just brought a letter for you.
Je suis‿allé chez‿elle, mais je ne l'ai pas trouvée, I went to her house, but did not find her.
Elle venait de sortir, She had just gone out.

---

14. Oh perfectly: Spring, summer, autumn and winter.

15. Very good! Now: How is the weather to-day? (Literally: That is very well. What weather makes it to-day)?

16. Pardon me for interrupting you; but why do you say "makes it"? (Literally: Pardon me *of* you to interrupt (interrompre); but why say you (dites-vous) "makes it")?

I say,	*or*	I am saying.
thou sayest,	"	thou art "
he says,	"	he is "
we say,	"	we are "
you say,	"	you are "
they say,	"	they are "

17. Because *faire* is used with reference to the weather. (Literally: Because (parce que) *faire* itself employs (s'emploie) in speaking (en parlant) of the weather).

18. How very peculiar! And yet it ought not to appear so strange to me as the Spaniards use the same construction. (Literally: That is very queer (bizzarre)! And that not ought to (ne devrait pas) me seem (paraître) so queer, for the Spaniards (les Espagnols) use (se servent) of the same verb (du même verbe).

---

[1]Verbs ending in **yer** like **employer**, to employ, **essayer**, to dry, change the **y** into **i** before *e* mute, i. e. wherever *y* comes before *e*, *es*, *ent* and the *erai* and *erais* of the future and conditional as:

Pres: J'emploie, tu emploies, il emploie, nous employons, vous employez, ils emploient.
Impf: J'employais, tu employais, il employait, etc.
Fut: J'emploierai, tu emploieras, il emploiera, etc.
Cond: J'emploierais, tu emploierais, il emploierait, etc.

Verbs ending in **ayer** or **eyer** like **payer**, to pay, **grasseyer**, to lisp may retain the **y** or change it into **i**, as:

Pres: Je paye, tu payes, il paye, etc.
Or: Je paie, tu paies, il paie, etc

14. Parfaitement: Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver.
15. C'est trés bien! — Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui?

16. Pardonnez-moi de vous‿interrompre; mais pourquoi dites-vous "fait-il"? (vōō zĭń-t'r-roń'-pr').

Je dis	(dē)
tu dis	(")
il dit	(")
nous disons	(dē-zoń')
vous dites	(dēt')
ils disent	(dēz')

17. Parce que *faire* s'emploie[1] en parlant du temps. (săń-plŏ‿ä' ăń păr-lăń')

18. C'est très bizzarre! Et cela ne devrait pas me paraître si bizarre, car les‿Espagnols se servent[2] du même verbe. (bē-zär' — pä-reh'-tr' — leh zĕs-pän-yol' sū sĕrv').

The Academy recommends that the y should be retained, but both forms of orthography are used.

[2]Servir, to serve, to help to, se servir, to make use of, and desservir, to clear the table are conjugates in the

Present.

Je sers,	I serve.
tu sers,	thou servest.
il sert,	he serves
nous servons,	we serve.
vous servez,	you serve.
ils servent,	they serve.

19. Precisely so. Now in order that you may become familiar with this idiom we will form a certain number of sentences with this verb. (Literally: That is true (vrai). Now in order that (afin de) yourself to familiarize (familiariser) with this idiom we will make (nous ferons) a certain number (un certain nombre) of phrases with this verb).

20. May I ask you a question, professor[1]? (Literally: May I (puis-je) you address (adresser) a question, sir)?

21. As many as you like. (Literally: As many as it you will please (autant qu'il vous plaira).

22. From which language is *faire* derived? Does it come from the Latin? (Literally: From which language is derived (dérivé) the verb *faire*. Comes it (vient-il) from the Latin (du latin)?

I come,	*or*	I am coming.
thou comest,	"	thou art "
he comes,	"	he is "
we come,	"	we are "
you come,	"	you are "
they come,	"	they are "

23. Certainly, it comes from the Latin word "*facere*".

24. Ah, now I see its Latin origin. But now I shall not interrupt you any more. I am anxious to form some phrases about the weather so that I may learn to apply this idiom correctly (Literally: Ah, I see now its origin Latin (son origine latine). In future (à l'avenir) I not you shall interrupt (interromprai) more (plus). I desire to make some phrases about (sur) the weather in order to learn (afin d'apprendre) to (à) of it make correctly the usage (l'usage.)

[1]The French people would never think of addressing their teachers as "professeur"; they simply say "monsieur."

19. C'est vrai. Maintenant afin de vous familiariser avec cet‿idiotisme, nous ferons‿un certain nombre de phrases‿avec ce verbe. (fä-mē-lē‿ä-rē-zä' — fü-roń' — sër-tĭń nŏn'-br').

20. Puis-je vous‿adresser une question, monsieur[1]? (ün kē-stē‿ōń').

21. Autant qu'il vous plaira. (ō-täń')

22. De quelle langue est dérivé le verbe *faire*? Vient-il du latin[2]? (dä-rē-vä'— lä-tĭń').

Je viens (vē‿ĭń').
tu viens (")
il vient (")
nous venons (vü-nŏń').
vous venez (vü-nä').
ils viennent (vē‿ën').

23. Certainement! Il vient du mot latin "*facere*".

24. Ah, je vois maintenant son‿origine latine. A l'avenir je ne vous‿interromprai plus. Je désire faire quelques phrases sur le temps, afin d'apprendre‿à en faire correctement l'usage. (soń-nō-rē-zhēn-lä-tēn' — zĭń-t'r-rōń-pra plü—lü-zäzh').

[1]Adjective denoting nationality are written with small letters, as allemand, German, français, French, italien, Italian, etc.

To Do and To Have

Continuation.

1. Ah, good morning, my dear sir. Delighted to see you! How have you been since I had the pleasure of seeing you? The last time you were here, you were suffering with a head-ache. I trust you feel better to day. (Literally: Good day, my friend. I am delighted (ravi) *of* you to see. How have you been (comment vous‿êtes-vous porté) since that (depuis que) I not have had (eu) the pleasure *of* you to see? The last time (la dernière fois) that you were (vous‿étiez) here, you had pain in the head (mal à la tête). I hope that you go better (mieux) to-day).

2. Thanks, I am a great deal better, in fact, I am quite well and ready to go on with our lesson. (Literally: Thanks, I am much better (beaucoup mieux), in fact (en‿effet) I myself feel (je me sens) very well and quite disposed (tout disposé) to continue (à continuer) our lesson).

3. I am very glad of it, but pray, lay aside your overcoat and sit down. (Literally: I of it am enchanted (enchanté); but will you please take off (retirer) your overcoat (pardessus) and yourself seat).

4. Where shall I sit, Professor?

Faire et Avoir.

Suite.

1. Bonjour, mon‿ami. Je suis ravi de vous voir! Comment vous‿êtes-vous porté depuis que je n'ai eu le plaisir de vous voir?—La dernière fois que vous‿étiez‿ici, vous‿aviez mal à la tête. J'espère que vous‿allez mieux‿aujourd'hui (*or* que vous‿êtes mieux‿aujourd'hui). (rä-vē'—mäl-ä-lä-têt').

2. Merci, je me porte beaucoup mieux, en‿effet, je me sens très bien et tout disposé à continuer notre leçon. (säń coń-tē-nū-a' lū-soń').

3. J'en suis‿enchanté, mais veuillez retirer votre pardessus et vous‿asseoir. (zhäń-sü‿ē-zäń-shäń-ta).

4. Où m'assiérai-je, monsieur? (mä-sē‿a-razh').

ä far; ä pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

PRESENT.

I sit down.
thou sitst down.
he sits down.
we sit down.
you sit down.
they sit down.

FUTURE.

I shall sit down.
thou wilt sit down.
he will sit down.
we shall sit down.
you will sit down.
they will sit down.

5. Right here on this chair, please. And now let us commence. Of what were we talking the last time (la dernière[3] fois)?
6. You explained the use of *faire* in reference to the weather.

---

[1]We also use the forms:

Present.	*Future.*
Je m'assois.	Je m'assoirai.
tu t'assois.	tu t'assoiras.
il s'assoit.	il s'assoira.
nous nous assoyons.	nous nous assoirons.
vous vous assoyez.	vous vous assoirez.
ils s'assoient.	ils s'assoiront.

[2]Verbs ending in cer as commencer, to begin, placer, to put, place a cedilla under the c when this letter is followed by a or u.

Pres: Je commence, tu commences, il commence, nous commençons, etc.

Imp: Je commençais, tu commençais, il commençait, nous commencions, etc.

PRESENT[1].

je m'assieds	(mă-sē‿a').
tu t'assieds	(tă-sē‿a').
il s'assied	(să-sē‿a').
nous nous‿asseyons	(ză-seh-yoń').
vous vous‿asseyez	(ză-seh-yā').
ils s'asseient	(să-seh'-y').

FUTURE[1].

je m'assiérai	(mă-sē‿a-rā').
tu t'assiéras.	
il s'assiéra.	
nous nous‿assiérons.	
vous vous‿assiérez.	
ils s'assiéront.	

5. Là sur cette chaise. Maintenant commençons! De quoi parlions-nous la dernière[2] fois? (kŏ-măn-sōń').
6. Vous‿avez‿expliqué l'emploi de *faire* en parlant du temps.

---

[2]Some adjectives have a different meaning when placed *before* or *after* a noun, as:

L'année dernière,	Last year (the year just expired).
La dernière‿année,	The last year (of a series).
Un grand‿homme,	A great man.
Un‿homme grand,	A tall man.
Mon cher père,	My dear father.
Un tableau cher,	A dear (expensive) picture.
Un brave‿homme,	An honest (good sort of a man).
Un‿homme brave,	A brave (courageous) man.

For full list see Part X.

7. Ah yes, I remember. And have you learned the conjugation of *faire* by heart? (Literally: Ah yes, I myself it recall. Have you learned (appris[1]) by heart (par cœur) the conjugation (la conjugaison) of the verb faire)?

8. Yes sir. *Faire* is very irregular, but I think I know the whole conjugation. (Literally: Yes sir. *Faire* is very irregular (irrégulier), but I believe that I of it know all the conjugation (toute la conjugaison).

9. Well, let us see (voyons)! Conjugate the indicative present.

I do, *or*,	I am doing.
thou doest, *or*,	thou art "
he does, *or*,	he is "
we do, *or*,	we are "
you do, *or*,	you are "
they do, *or*,	they are "

10. Very well! And now the subjunctive of the present (le présent du subjonctif).

I	may make.
thou mayst	"
he may	"
we may	"
you may	"
they may	"

[1]Appris, learned, is the irregular past participle of apprendre, to learn. In the same way prendre, to take forms pris, taken; comprendre, to understand; compris, understood.

7. Ah oui, je me le rappelle. Avez-vous‿appris[1] par cœur la conjugaison du verbe *faire?*

8. Oui monsieur. *Faire* est très-irrégulier, mais je crois que j'en sais toute la conjugaison.

9. Très bien, voyons! Conjuguez le présent de l'indicatif. (vŏ‿ä-yoń' koń-zhū-gä lŭ prä-zäń d'lŭń-dē-ka-tēf').

Je fais	(feh).
tu fais.	
il fait.	
nous faisons	(fŭ-zoń').
vous faites	(feh-t').
ils font	(foń').

10. Très bien! Maintenant le présent du subjonctif. (sūb-zhoń-tēf).

Que je fasse	(fäs').
que tu fasses.	
qu' il fasse.	
que nous fassions	(fä-sē‿ōń').
que vous fassiez.	
qu' ils fassent	(fäs').

11. Excellent! And now the imperfect (l'imparfait).

I was making *or* doing.
thou wast " " "
he was " " "
we were " " "
you were " " "
they were " " "

12. Very well! Now the historical tense (le prétérit).

I did, *or*,	I made.
thou didst, *or*,	thou madest.
he did, "	he made.
we " "	we "
you " "	you "
they " "	they "

13. Very well! And the future (le futur)!

I shall do *or* make.
thou wilt " " "
he will " " "
we shall " " "
you will " " "
they will " " "

14. That's very good! And now the conditional (le conditionnel)!

I should do *or* make.
thou wouldst " " "
he would " " "
we should " " "
you would " " "
they would " " "

[1]The prétérit, which I call the historical tense, is scarcely ever used in conversation, but is always employed in narration, as: Le président le vit et dit. The president saw him and said. It is therefore of

11. Parfait! L'imparfait! (lĭń-păr-fai).
Je faisais (fŭ-zeh).
tu faisais.
il faisait.
nous faisions.
vous faisiez (fŭ-zē‿a').
ils faisaient (fŭ-zeh).

12. Très bien! Maintenant le prétérit[1]! (pra-ta-rē').
Je fis (fē).
tu fis.
il fit.
nous fîmes (fēm).
vous fîtes.
ils firent (fēr').

13 Très bien! Le futur! (fŭ-tūr').
Je ferai (f'ra).
tu feras (f'ra).
il fera.
nous ferons (f'roń').
vous ferez (f'ra').
ils feront (f'roń').

14. C'est très bon! Le conditionnel! (koń-dē-tē‿ō-nēl').
Je ferais (f'reh).
tu ferais.
il ferait
nous ferions (fŭ-rē‿ōń').
vous feriez (fŭ-rē‿a').
ils feraient (f'reh).

---

great importance when it comes to reading of French literature. Compare Part X.

ă far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

15 You are indeed a diligent student! Conjugate now the subjunctive mood of the imperfect tense. (Literally: In truth (en vérité), you are an excellent pupil (un‿excellent‿élève).

I might make.

thou mightst make.

he might make.

we might make.

you might make.

they might make.

16. Bravo! I have no doubt that you will soon master all the intricacies of the French language. (Literally: Bravo! I not doubt *not* (je ne doute pas) that soon you will have conquered (vaincu) all the difficulties of the language French).

17. You can't imagine how anxious I am to master it. No other tongue is so important for business-men as the beautiful language of Corneille. (Literally: You not know *not* how much I have at (à) heart (cœur) *of* it to learn. No language (aucune langue) *not* is so (aussi) important for a man of business (un‿homme d'affaires) as this beautiful tongue of Corneille).

---

[1]Aucun (masc.), aucune (fem.), none, not one, is always used with ne (like personne, rien, jamais), as:

15. En vérité vous‿êtes‿un‿excellent‿élève! Conjuguez maintenant l'imparfait du subjonctif.

Que je fisse	(fĭs').
que tu fisses.	
qu' il fît	(fē).
que nous fissions	(fĭ-sē‿oń').
que vous fissiez	(fĭ-sē‿a').
qu'ils fissent	(fĭs').

16. Bravo! Je ne doute pas que bientôt vous‿aurez vaincu toutes les difficultés de la langue française. (vĭń-kū).

17. Vous ne savez pas combien j'ai à cœur de l'apprendre. Aucune[1] langue n'est‿aussi importante pour un‿homme d'affaires que cette belle langue de Corneille. (ō-kŭn ĭń-pŏr-tăń'-t' ŭń nŏm' dă-fehr').

Avez-vous toutes les boîtes?	Have you all the boxes?
Je n'en‿ai aucune.	I haven't any.

Compare Part X for further rules.

VOCABULAIRE.	VOCABULARY.
Suite.	*Continuation.*
Le magasin.	The store. The shop.
Le magasin de nouveautés (nœ̆-vō-ta').	The dry goods store
Le chapeau; les chapeaux (shă-pō').	The hat; the hats; the bonnet; the bonnets.
Le chapelier (shă-p'lē‿a).	The hatter.
La modiste.	The milliner.
Le magasin de la modiste.	The millinery store.
La librairie (lē-brā-rē').	The bookstore
Le papier (pă-pē‿a').	The paper.
La papeterie (pă-p'tŭ-rē').	The stationery store
Le cordonnier (kŏr-dŏ-nē‿a').	The shoemaker.
Des souliers (sœ̆-lē‿a').	Shoes.
Des bottines (fem.). (bŏ-tēn').	High shoes; ladies' boots
La montre (mŏñ'-tr').	The watch.
La pendule (păñ-dūl').	The clock.
L'horloge (lŏr-lozh').	The (large) clock.
L'horloger (lŏr-lō-zha').	The watchmaker.
Le marchand (măr-shăñ').	The merchant.
Le pain (pĭñ).	The bread.
Le petit pain.	The roll.
Le gâteau (gā-tō').	The cake.
Le boulanger (bœ̆-lăñ-zha')	The baker.
La boulangerie (bœ̆-lăñ-zh'rē).	The bakery.
Le boucher (bœ̆-sha').	The butcher.
La boucherie (bœ̆-sh'rē').	The butcher-shop.

VI.

a. Faire and its idioms..... 226
b. The weather..... 228
c. Avoir and its idiomatic use..... 238
d. Use of the Past Tense illustrated..... 246
e. Vocabulary..... 252

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

Faire[1].

(*Continuation*).

18. You are quite right. French is not only the language of diplomacy, but of the cultivated classes of society in all Europe and Asia. A man who knows French can travel anywhere. The Turks, the Egyptians, the Spaniards, the Italians, the Brazilians, yes, even the Germans speak our beautiful language in preference to any other, because in no other tongue can ideas be so clearly expressed as in French. (Literally: You have right (raison). The French not is *not* only (seulement) the language of the diplomacy (la diplomatie), she is also that one (celle) of the classes educated (des classes ‿instruites) of the society (la société) in all the Europe and the Asia (dans toute l'Europe et l'Asie). A man who knows the language French can travel everywhere (partout). The Turks (les Turcs), the Egyptians (les‿Egyptiens), the Spaniards, the Italians (les‿Italiens), the Brazilians (les Brésiliens), the Germans even (mêmes), speak our beautiful language from preference (de préférence) to every other (toute‿autre), because in no language, except (excepté) in French, the ideas (les‿idées) *not* can be as clearly (clairement) expressed).

---

[1]Besides the idioms taught in this lesson, the student ought to study the following phrases in which **faire** is used idiomatically:

Vous‿avez fait‿attendre mon employé,	You kept my clerk waiting.
Il a fait des‿embarras,	He made a great fuss.
Il fait semblant d'être malade,	He pretends to be ill.
Je vais faire ma malle à présent,	I am now going to pack my trunk.

Faire[1].

(*Suite*).

18. Vous‿avez raison. Le français n'est pas seulement la langue de la diplomatie, elle est‿aussi celle des classes‿instruites de la société dans toute l'Europe et l'Asie. Un‿homme qui sait la langue française peut voyager partout. Les Turcs, les‿Egyptiens, les‿Espagnols, les‿Italiens, les Brésiliens, les‿Allemands mêmes parlent notre belle langue de préférence à toute‿autre, parce que dans‿aucune langue, excepté en français, les‿idées ne peuvent‿être‿aussi clairement‿exprimées.

Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas fait ma chambre?	Why didn't you put my room in order?
Il fait des contes,	He tells stories.
Il fait le grand seigneur à Paris	He plays the lord in Paris.
Il fait le bon‿apôtre,	He acts the part of a saint.
Il s'est fait des‿affaires,	He got himself into a scrape.

19. There is no doubt about it! But now let us form some idiomatic phrases with *faire*. How would you say: "The weather was very bad yesterday?" (Literally: There is not of doubt (de doute). For the moment (le moment) let us form (formons) some phrases idiomatic with *faire*. How would say you (diriez-vous): The weather was very bad yesterday)?

20. Oh, that's very easy! Yesterday the weather was very bad. (Literally: Oh, that is very easy! Yesterday it made very bad (mauvais) weather).

21. Very well! And now tell me something about to-day's weather. (Literally: Perfect! Tell me something concerning (concernant) the weather of to-day).

22. Yesterday the weather was very bad, but to-day we have a most beautiful day. It is pleasant and warm and yet not too warm. (Literally: Yesterday it made very bad weather, but to-day it makes very beautiful. The weather is agreeable and warm (chaud), but not too much (trop).

---

[1]The following expressions in regard to the weather are formed with faire:

Il fait beau (temps),	The weather is fine.
" mauvais (temps),	" " " bad.
" magnifique, / " un temps magnifique,	" " " splendid.
" " " abominable,	" " " horrid.
" " " noir,	" " " gloomy.
Il fait chaud,	It is warm.
" froid,	" cold.
" humide,	" damp.
" sec,	" dry.

19. Il n'y a pas de doute! Pour le moment, formons quelques phrases‿idiomatiques‿avec *faire.*[1] Comment diriez-vous: "*The weather was very bad yesterday?*" (mŏ-măń').

20. Oh, c'est très facile! Hier il faisait très mauvais temps. (mŏ-veh).

21. Parfait! Dites-moi quelque chose concernant le temps d'aujourd'hui. (koń-sĕr-năń').

22. Hier il faisait très mauvais temps, mais‿aujourd'hui il fait très beau. Le temps est‿agréable et chaud, mais pas trop. (shō).

Il fait lourd,	It is sultry.
" jour,	" daylight.
" nuit,	" dark.
" du vent,	" windy.
" du brouillard,	" foggy.
" de la poussière,	" dusty.
" de l'orage,	" stormy.
" du soleil,	the sun is shining.
" clair de lune,	the moon is shining.
" de la boue,	it is muddy.
" une chaleur étouffante,	it is sultry.

---

23. Is it windy? (Literally: Makes it of the wind (du vent)?
24. It was quite windy last night, but to-day there is scarcely any. (Literally: It made much of wind last night (la nuit dernière), but to-day it of it makes scarcely (à peine).
25. Have you read the papers? Do you know what the weather probabilities for to morrow are? (Literally: Have you read (lu) the papers (les journaux)? Know you which (quelles)are the probabilities of weather (les probabilités du temps) for to-morrow)?
26. I have the paper here. Let me see; here it is! The probabilities for to-morrow are that there will be strong westerly winds with showers. (Literally: Here is the paper. Let me see; that is there. The probabilities for to-morrow are that we shall have strong winds (de forts vents) of west (d'ouest) with showers (averses).
27. You translate very well indeed. I will now give you some phrases in regard to the weather with *faire*. (Literally: You translate (vous traduisez[1]) very well. Now (dorénavant[2]) I you shall give some phrases concerning (concernant) the weather with the verb *faire*).

---

[1]**Traduire**, to translate, **conduire**, to conduct, to lead, to take, **construire**, to construct, **instruire**, to instruct, **cuire**, to cook and all verbs ending in **duire**, are slightly irregular and are conjugated:

Pres: Je traduis, tu traduis, il traduit, nous traduisons, vous traduisez, ils traduisent.

Imp: Je traduisais, tu traduisais, etc.

---

23. Fait-il du vent? (dū văń).

24. Il faisait beaucoup de vent la nuit dernière, mais aujourd'hui il en fait à peine. (tă pehn).

25. Avez-vous lu les journaux? Savez-vous quelles sont les probabilités du temps pour demain? (lū leh zhŏŏr-nō' prō-bă-bē-lē-ta').

26. Voici le journal. Laissez-moi voir; c'est là. Les probabilités pour demain sont, que nous aurons de forts vents d'ouest avec averses. (ă-ver'-s').

27. Vous traduisez[1] très bien. Dorénavant[2] je vous donnerai quelques phrases concernant le temps avec le verbe *faire*. (trä-dū ē-za' dō-rā-nä-văń').

Fut: Je traduirai, tu traduiras, il traduira, etc.
Cond: Je traduirais, tu traduirais, il traduirait, etc.
Pres. Subj.: Que je traduise, que tu traduises, etc.
Part. Passé.: Traduit.
[2]**Dorénavant,** henceforth, in future.

28. What kind of weather is it to-day? Splendid; the weather is delightful. (Literally: What weather makes it to-day?—Splendid (splendide); the weather is delightful (délicieux).
29. Open the window and look how the weather is. (Literally: Open (ouvrez) the window (la fenêtre) and see how is the weather).
30. The sun is shining beautifully, but it is cold. (Literally: It makes a sun (un soleil) magnificent (magnifique), but it makes cold).
31. It seems to me we are going to have bad weather; the barometer points to rain. (Literally: It me seems (semble) that we go to have bad weather; the barometer (le baromètre) indicates of the rain (de la pluie). (*Or:* The barometer is to (à) the rain).
32. You are quite right; the barometer has fallen; I am afraid it is going to rain. (Literally: You have right (raison); the barometer *is* descended (descendu); I fear that it not may rain (qu'il ne pleuve).
33. Excellent! I see you understand these idioms perfectly. (Literally: That is perfect! I see that you understand very well these idioms).
34. Are these all the idiomatic expressions in which *faire* is employed? (Literally: Are this there (ce là) all the expressions idiomatic in which (dans lesquelles[2]) *faire* is employed)?

---

[1]Similarly we say:

Le baromètre est monté,	The barometer has risen.
Le baromètre est au beau,	The barometer points to fair.
" " " à la pluie,	" " " " rain.
" " " au variable,	" " " " change.

[2]Lequel (masc.), laquelle (fem.), lesquels (m. plur.), lesquelles (f.

28. Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui?—Splendide; le temps est délicieux. (dä-lē-sē‿ü').

29. Ouvrez la fenêtre et voyez comment‿est le temps (ōō'-vrā f'nä'-tr').

30. Il fait‿un soleil magnifique, mais‿il fait froid (sō-lē-y' mān-yē-fēk').

31. Il me semble que nous‿allons‿avoir mauvais temps; le baromètre indique de la pluie (le baromètre est‿à la pluie). (ĭń-dēk' plü‿ē').

32. Vous‿avez raison; le baromètre est descendu[1]; je crains qu'il ne pleuve. (plüv').

33. C'est parfait! Je vois que vous comprenez très bien ces‿idiotismes.

34. Sont-ce là toutes les‿expressions‿idiomatiques dans lesquelles[2] *faire* est‿employé?

---

plur.), must be used after prepositions when reference is made to things:

Voilà le banc sur lequel je me suis‿assis,	There stands the bench on which I sat.
C'est‿une condition sans laquelle il ne veut rien faire.	That is a condition without which he will do nothing.

Compare Part X for full rules.

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ē there; ō note; ōō room.

35. Oh no, we use *faire* in connection with other verbs, as for instance with écrire, to write, faire‿écrire, to have written. (Literally: Oh no, we employ *faire* jointly (conjointement) with other (avec d'autres) verbs, as for instance (par‿exemple) with the verb écrire, to write, faire‿écrire, to have written).
36. Ah, I remember; you explained these idioms already. (Literally: Ah, I *myself* remember; you me have already (déjà) explained these idioms).
37. Quite so, but show me now if you can employ them. Form a phrase. (Literally: That is true; but at present show me if you can them employ conveniently (convenablement). Form a phrase).
38. Upon what subject, sir?—Oh, on any you like. (Literally: Upon what subject (sujet), sir?—Oh, upon what it you will please (il vous plaira[1]).
39. Very well; I shall try to do my best.—Where are you going?—I am on my way to the tailor. (Literally: Very well; I go try *of* to make *of* my best (de mon mieux.)—Where go you?—I go to (chez[2]) my tailor (mon tailleur).
40. What are you going to do there?—I am going to have a new suit made. (Literally: What go you there (y) do?—I go me *make* make a suit new (un vêtement neuf).
41. Excellent! Now how would you say: "My sister is having a dress made at Madame Elise?"

---

[1]**Plaire,** to please, is slightly irregular.

Pres: Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent.
Imp: Je plaisais, tu plaisais, il plaisait, etc.
Fut: Je plairai, tu plairas, il plaira, etc.
Cond: Je plairais, tu plairais, il plairait, etc.

---

35. Oh non, nous‿employons *faire* conjointement‿ avec d'autres verbes; comme par‿exemple avec le verbe écrire, to write, faire‿écrire, to have written.

36. Ah, je me rappelle; vous m'avez déjà expliqué ces ‿idiotismes

37. C'est vrai, mais‿à présent montrez-moi si vous pouvez les‿employer convenablement. Formez‿ (faites) une phrase. (koń-vŭ-nă-blŭ-măń').

38. Sur quel sujet, monsieur?—Oh, sur ce qu'il vous plaira[1]. (sŭ-zheh').

39. Fort bien. Je vais‿essayer de faire de mon mieux[2]. —Où allez-vous?—Je vais chez[3] mon tailleur. (tă-yûr').

40. Qu'allez-vous‿y faire?—Je vais me faire faire‿ un vêtement neuf. (vêt'-măń' nŭf).

41. Parfait! A présent, comment diriez-vous: "*My sister is having a dress made at Madame Elise?*"

Pres. Subj.: Que je plaise, que tu plaises, qu'il plaise, que nous plai- [sions, que vous plaisiez, qu'ils plaisent.

Part. Passé: Plu.

[1]Idiomatic expression.

[3]Chez must always be used with persons.

---

42. My sister is having a dress made at Mme. Elise. (Literally: My sister herself *makes* make a dress (une robe) at Madame Elise).
43. Very well! Now translate for me: "How do you wish to have your bonnet trimmed?"
44. How do you wish to have your bonnet trimmed? (Literally: How will you that your bonnet may be (soit) trimmed (garni)? *Or:* How will you *make* trim (garnir) your bonnet)?
45. Pray trim it with lace and a bow of blue velvet. Take a pretty navy blue. That will be becoming to me and will match my suit. (Literally: Will you please it trim of laces (de dentelles) and of a bow (d'un noeud) of velvet blue (velours bleu). Take a pretty blue navy (bleu marin); that me will go and will be assorted (sera assorti) with my toilet (ma toilette).

---

[1] *At home*, is given either by **à la maison**, or by **chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez‿elle, chez nous, chez vous, chez‿eux, chez‿elles.**

As pupils seem to experience difficulties in the proper use of these expressions, I give a number of examples:

Je vais chez moi, Je vais‿à la maison,	I am going home.
Est-il chez lui?	Is he at home?
Est-elle chez‿elle?	Is she at home?
Allez-vous chez vous?	Are you going home?
Ils restent chez‿eux‿aujourd'hui,	They remain at home to-day.
Venez chez moi,	Come to my house.
Elles ne sont pas chez‿elles,	They are not at home.
Allons chez‿eux,	Let us go to their house.
Ne sont-ils pas chez vous?	Are they not at your house?

42. Ma soeur se fait faire‿une robe chez[1] Madame Elise.

43. Très bien! Maintenant traduisez-moi:
"*How do you wish to have your bonnet trimmed?*"

44. Comment voulez-vous que votre chapeau soit garni?
Comment voulez-vous faire garnir votre chapeau?

45. Veuillez le garnir de dentelles et d'un noeud de velours bleu. Prenez‿un joli bleu marin; cela m'ira et sera assorti avec ma toilette. (nû v'lôor' blû mă-rĭń' a-sŏr-tē').

Chez qui demeurez-vous?	At whose house do you live?
Je demeure chez madame Renard,	I live at Mrs. Renard's.
Quand viendrez-vous chez moi?	When will you come to my house?
Aussitôt que je le pourrai,	As soon as I can.
Les messieurs Marcel sont-ils chez‿eux?	Are the Messrs Marcel at home?
Ils ne sont pas chez‿eux; ils sont‿allés chez monsieur Le Gros.	They are not at home; they have gone to Mr. Le Gros's.
Madame Didier est-elle chez‿elle?	Is Mrs. Didier in?
Non, mais mademoiselle Didier y est,	No, but Miss Didier is.
Mes‿enfants sont‿à la maison, (not, chez‿eux).	My children are at home.

ă far; ē pale; ĕ eve; ê there; ŏ note; ôo room.

To Have and its Idiomatic Use.

1. We now come to the verb *avoir*. I suppose you have learned the conjugation by heart? (Literally: Let us see (voyons[1]) now the verb *avoir*. I suppose that you have learned (appris) by heart (par cœur) the conjugation of this verb)?

2. I have studied it and think I know all its tenses and moods. (Literally: I it have studied (étudié) and I believe (je crois) that I of it know all the moods (tous les modes) and all the tenses (tous les temps).

[1]For conversational purposes only five forms of the verb need to be mastered, viz., the Indicative of the Present, Imperfect, Future and Conditional and the Subjunctive mood of the Present.

The compound tenses are conjugated with avoir or être, as the case may be; these can be formed by the pupil himself as soon as he knows the conjugation of these two auxiliary verbs.

When it comes to reading, the prétérit—which I call the historical tense—must be thoroughly mastered, as it is constantly employed when past actions or events are referred to.

At present, however, I give the necessary forms for conversation only in the conjugation of the irregular verbs of which complete tables are given in Part X.

Voir, to see; **voyant**, seeing; **vu**, seen.
Pres: Je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient.
Imp: Je voyais, tu voyais, il voyait, etc.
Fut: Je verrai, tu verras, il verra, nous verrons, vous verrez, ils verront.
Cond: Je verrais, tu verrais, il verrait, etc.

Avoir et de son usage idiomatique.

1 Voyons[1] maintenant le verbe avoir. Je suppose que vous avez appris par cœur la conjugaison de ce verbe? (vŏ ä-yŏń' sü-pŏz' vŏŏ-zä-vä-zä-prē pär kûr kŏń-zhü-gai-zŏń').

2. Je l'ai étudié et je crois[2] que j'en sais[3] tous les modes et tous les temps. (a-tü-dē a' krŏ ä' zhäń sai).

Pres. Subj.: Que je voie, que tu voies, qu'il voie, que nous voyions, que [vous voyiez, qu'ils voient.

[2]**Croire,** to believe; **croyant,** believing; **cru,** believed.

Pres: Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient.

Imp: Je croyais, tu croyais, il croyait, etc.

Fut: Je croirai, tu croiras, il croira, etc.

Cond: Je croirais, tu croirais, il croirait, etc.

Pres. Subj.: Que je croie, que tu croies, qu'il croie, que nous croyions, [que vous croyiez, qu'ils croient.

[3]**Savoir,** to know; **sachant,** knowing; **su,** known.

Pres: Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.

Imp: Je savais, tu savais, il savait, nous savions, vous saviez, ils savaient.

Fut: Je saurai, tu sauras, il saura, nous saurons, vous saurez, ils sauront.

Cond: Je saurais, tu saurais, il saurait, nous saurions, vous sauriez, ils [sauraient.

Pres. Subj. Que je sache, que tu saches, qu'il sache, que nous sachions, [que vous sachiez, qu'ils sachent.

---

3. Well, let us see! Give me the Indicative of the Present. (Literally: Very well! Let us see! Tell me the present of the indicative).

I have.
thou hast.
he has.
we have.
you have.
they have.

4. Very well! Now the Subjunctive of the Present.

That I may have.
that thou mayst have.
that he may have.
that we may have.
that you may have.
that they may have.

5. Excellent! Now the Imperfect, if you please.

I had, *or*, I used to have.
thou hadst, *or*, thou usedst to have.
he had, *or*, he used to have.
we had, *or*, we used to have.
you had, *or*, you used to have.
they had, *or*, they used to have.

6. Excellent! Now the historical tense (le prétérit).

I had.
thou hadst.
he had.
we had.
you had.
they had.

3. Très bien! Voyons! Dites-moi le présent de l'indicatif.

J'ai.
tu as.
il a
nous‿avons.
vous‿avez.
ils‿ont.

4. Très bien! Maintenant le présent du subjonctif.

Que j'aie	(kŭ zheh).
que tu aies	(kŭ tŭ eh).
qu'il ait	(kël eh).
que nous‿ayons	(kŭ nŏŏ zeh-yoń').
que vous‿ayez	(kŭ vŏŏ zeh-ya').
qu'ils‿aient	(kël zeh).

5. Parfait! L'imparfait, s'il vous plaît.

J'avais	(zhă-veh').
tu avais	(tŭ ă-veh').
il avait	(ël ă-veh').
nous‿avions	(nŏŏ-ză-vē‿ŏń').
vous‿aviez	(vŏŏ ză-vē‿a').
ils‿avaient	(ël ză-veh').

6. Excellent!. Le prétérit. (pra-ta-rē').

J'eus.	(zhū).
tu eus.	(tŭ ū).
il eut.	(ël ū).
nous‿eûmes.	(nŏŏ zūm'),
vous‿eûtes.	(vŏŏ zūt').
ils‿eurent.	(ël zūr').

ă far; ā pale; ē ēve; ê there; ō note; ŏŏ rŏŏm.

7. Very good! Now conjugate the Subjunctive mood of the Imperfect tense.

That I might have.
that thou mightst have.
that he might have.
that we " "
that you " "
that they " "

8. You are really a most excellent student. Now conjugate the Future tense (le futur).

I shall have.
thou wilt "
he will "
we shall "
you will "
they will "

9. Very good! And the Conditional if you please.

I should have.
thou wouldst "
he would "
we should "
you would "
they would "

---

[1]The pupil ought to familiarize himself with the conjugation of the verb être, to be.

Pres: Je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont.
Imp: J'étais, tu étais, il était, nous étions, vous étiez, ils étaient.
Fut: Je serai, tu seras, il sera, nous serons, vous serez, ils seront.

---

7. C'est‿ très bon! Conjuguez maintenant l'imparfait du subjonctif.

Que j'eusse.	(kŭ zhūs')
que tu eusses	(kŭ tū ūs')
qu'il eût.	(kēl ū).
que nous‿eussions	(kŭ nōō zū-sē‿ōń').
que vous‿eussiez.	(kŭ vōō zū-sē‿a')
qu'ils‿eussent.	(kēl zūs').

8. En vérité, vous‿êtes‿un‿excellent‿élève. Conjuguez maintenant le futur (fū-tūr').

J'aurai	(zhŏ-rā').
tu auras	(tū ŏ-rā').
il aura	(ēl ŏ-rā').
nous‿aurons	(nōō zŏ-rŏń').
vous‿aurez	(vōō zŏ-ra').
ils‿auront	(ēl zŏ-rŏń').

9. Excellent! Et le conditionnel, s'il vous plaît. (kŏn-dē-sē‿ŏ-nël').

J'aurais	(zŏ-reh').
tu aurais	(tū ŏ-reh').
il aurait	(ēl ŏ-reh).
nous‿aurions	(nōō zŏ-rē‿ŏń').
vous‿auriez	(vōō zŏ-rē‿a').
ils‿auraient.	(ēl zŏ-reh').

Cond: Je serais, tu serais, il serait, nous serions, vous seriez, ils seraient.
Pres. Subj: Que je sois, que tu sois, qu'il soit, que nous soyons, que vous soyez, qu'ils soient.
Compare Part X for full conjugation and rules.

---

10. Very well! Now can you tell me how we use *avoir* in connection with other verbs? (Literally: Very well. Now, can you me tell how one employs *avoir* when (quand) it is joined (joint) with *of* other verbs)?
11. We use it as an auxiliary, similarly to the English, for the formation of compound tenses, as for instance: I have written; I would have done it. What would you have done if you had been in my place? (Literally: We it employ as verb auxiliary (auxiliaire), exactly (exactement) as in (en) English, in the formation (la formation) of the tenses compound (des temps composés), for instance (par ‿exemple) I have written (écrit); I it would have made. What would have you made if you had been (été) in (à) my place (ma place)?
12. Very good! But now let me call your attention to a point of difference between the two languages. (Literally: Very well! But I ought to call (appeler) your attention (attention) upon (sur) a point important (point‿important) where the two languages differ (diffèrent) entirely (entièrement).

---

[1]**Pouvoir,** To be able; **pouvant; pu.**—

Pres: Je peux (je puis), tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils [peuvent.

Imp: Je pouvais, tu pouvais, il pouvait, etc.

Fut: Je pourrai, tu pourras, il pourra, nous pourrons, vous pourrez, ils [pourront.

Cond: Je pourrais, tu pourrais, il pourrait, nous pourrions, vous pourriez, [ils pourraient.

Pres. Subj: Que je puisse, que tu puisses, qu'il puisse, que nous puis- [sions, que vous puissiez, qu'ils puissent.

---

10. Très bien! Maintenant, pouvez-vous[1] me dire[2] comment‿on emploie *avoir* quand il est joint‿avec d'autres verbes? (zhŏ‿ĭń').

11. Nous l'employons comme verbe auxiliaire, exactement comme‿en‿anglais, dans la formation des temps composés, par‿exemple: J'ai écrit; je l'aurais fait. Qu'auriez-vous fait si vous‿aviez‿été à ma place? (ŏ-xē-lē‿air'-ĕx-ăk-t'măń' fŏr-mă-sē‿oń' kŏń-pŏ-zā' păr rĕx-ań'-pl' kŏ-rē‿a'-vōō fai')

12. Très bien! Mais je dois‿appeler votre‿attention sur un point‿important où les deux langues diffèrent‿entièrement. (ă-tăń-sē‿ŏń' po‿ĭń-tĭń-pŏr-tăń' dē-fär'-tăń-tē‿a-r'măń').

---

[2]**Dire,** to say; **disant,** saying; **dit,** said.

Pres: Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent.
Imp: Je disais, tu disais, il disait, nous disions, vous disiez, ils disaient.
Fut: Je dirai, tu diras, il dira, nous dirons, vous direz, ils diront.
Cond: Je dirais, tu dirais, il dirait, nous dirions, vous diriez, ils diraient.
Pres. Subj: Que je dise, que tu dises, qu'il dise, que nous disions, que vous disiez, qu'ils disent.

---

13. In English, we generally use the imperfect tense when talking about past actions or events. We say for instance: "*I saw him yesterday morning*". In French, we rarely use the Imperfect, but employ generally the past perfect tense and therefore render this phrase: "*I have seen him yesterday morning*". (Literally: In English, the imperfect is generally (généralement) employed when one speaks of events (faits) or of actions (actions) past passés[1]). For instance (par‿exemple): "*I saw him yesterday morning.*" In French one employs rarely (rarement) the imperfect but rather (plûtot) the past indefinite (passé indéfini), thus (ainsi) one (l'on) says: "*I him have seen yesterday morning*").

14. And is this always the case? (Literally: Is this always thus (ainsi)?

15. Generally speaking, yes, (Literally: Generally, yes).

16. Of course, there are rules for the use of the Imperfect and the Historical Tense, which is used in narratives only; but these rules we shall take later. (Literally; Without doubt, there are *of the* rules (des règles) for the use (l'emploi) of the imperfect and of the preterite (du prétérit). This last (ce dernier) is employed only in the narratives (dans les récits), but these rules we them shall see later (plus tard).

---

[1]When two or more nouns of different genders are qualified by the *same* adjective, the adjective takes the masculine termination.

---

13. En anglais, l'imparfait est généralement employé quand on parle de faits ou d'actions passés[1]. Par exemple: "*I saw him yesterday morning.*" En français, on emploie rarement l'imparfait, mais plutôt le passé indéfini, ainsi l'on dit[2]: "Je l'ai vu hier matin." (fai ȣ dăk'-sē ȣń pă-sa rā-r' măń' lıń-păr-fai ıń-da-fē-nē ıń-sē').

14. Est-ce toujours ainsi? (ıń-sē').

15. Généralement, oui. (zhā-nā-rā-l'măń').

16. Sans doute, il y a des règles pour l'emploi de l'imparfait et du prétérit. Ce dernier est employé seulement dans les récits, mais ces règles nous les verrons plus tard. (prā-tā-rē'—dēr-nē a').

[1]See note 2, page 121.—Compare also Part X.

17. Just now I only want you to remember that we generally use the past perfect tense in French when reference is made to past actions. This is a very important rule and you ought always to remember it, especially when you translate questions. (Literally: For the moment (le moment) I hold (je tiens[1]) to (à) yourself remember that generally we employ the past indefinite in French when one wants to speak of actions past. This is a rule very important and you ought yourself *her* (la) remember, especially (surtout) when you will translate (vous traduirez[2]) *of the* questions).

18. And why questions, pray?

19. Because the French have no auxiliary verb which corresponds to our English "*did*". (Literally: Because in French there is not *of* verb auxiliary corresponding (correspondant) to our verb English "*did.*")

---

[1]**Tenir**, to hold; **tenant**, holding; **tenu**, **held.**

Pres: Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, **ils tiennent.**

Imp: Je tenais, tu tenais, il tenait, nous tenions, vous teniez, **ils** [tenaient.

Fut: Je tiendrai, tu tiendras, il tiendra, nous tiendrons, vous tiendrez, [ils tiendront.

Cond: Je tiendrais, tu tiendrais, il tiendrait, nous tiendrions, vous tien- [driez, ils tiendraient.

Pres. Subj: Que je tienne, que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne, que nous te- [nions, que vous **teniez**, qu'ils tiennent.

[2]**Vouloir**, To be willing; **voulant**; **voulu.**

Pres: Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, **ils veulent.**

Imp: Je voulais, tu voulais, il voulait, etc.

---

17. Pour le moment je tiens[1] à vous rappeler que généralement nous employons le passé indéfini en français quand on veut[2] parler de faits passés. C'est une règle très importante et vous devez vous la rappeler, surtout quand vous traduirez[3] des questions. (zhü tē ĭń′—sūr-tōō′—kē-stē ōń′).

18. Pourquoi des questions?

19. Parce qu'en français il n'y a pas de verbe auxiliaire correspondant à notre verbe anglais "*did.*"

Fut: Je voudrai, tu voudras, il voudra, etc.
Cond: Je voudrais, tu voudrais, il voudrait, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous [*voulions*, que vous *vouliez*, qu'ils veuillent.

[3]The French employ the future after **quand, lorsque,** when; *aussitôt que*, as soon as, when we wish to express a future action or state; though we in English frequently use the present tense, as:

Quand vous aurez fini, venez,	Come, when you are done.
Aussitôt qu'il saura lire, il aura ces livres,	As soon as he knows how to read, he shall have these books.
Quand vous viendrez, elle sera ici,	When you come she will be here.
Lorsqu'il sera ici, je lui donnerai cet argent,	When he is here I'll give him this money.

20. For instance, when we say in English: "*Did you do this?—Did he tell you so?—Why didn't you pay him the money which I handed you this morning?—Did you send him a dispatch or did you write to him?*"—The French must render these questions: Have you done this?—Has he told you so?—Why haven't you paid him the money which I have handed you this morning?—Have you sent him a dispatch or have you written to him?—(Litterally: In French we say: Have you made this (ceci)?—You it has he told?—Why not to him have you *not* handed (remis) the money which I you have given this morning?—To him have you sent a dispatch (une dépêche) or to him have you written)?

21. I understand this perfectly and shall try to always remember this rule, (Literally: I understand this (cela) perfectly and myself will force (m'efforcerai) *of* always myself to remember this rule).

22. Very well, but you must practice and apply it. Rules are good in theory, but practice is the main thing in mastering a foreign tongue. (Literally: That is very well, but you ought *her* to practice and of it make the application (l'application). The rules are good in theory (en théorie), but the practice is the principal thing (la principale chose) for well to possess (posséder) a language foreign (étrangère).

---

[1]Compare Part X on the position of pronoun-objects and study the tables given there carefully. Exercises on the use of the pronoun-objects are given in a later lesson.

20. Par‿exemple, quand nous disons‿en‿anglais: "*Did you do this?—Did he tell you so?—Why didn't you pay him the money which I handed you this morning?—Did you send him a dispatch or did you write to him?*" — En français nous disons: "Avez-vous fait ceci? — Vous l'[1] a-t-il dit? — Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas remis l'argent que je vous‿ai donné ce matin? — Lui avez-vous‿envoyé une dépêche ou lui avez-vous‿écrit? (rŭ-mē —ūn dā-pash').

21. Je comprends cela parfaitement et m'efforcerai de toujours me rappeler cette règle.

22. C'est très bien, mais vous devez la pratiquer et en faire l'application. Les règles sont bonnes‿en théorie, mais la pratique est la principale chose pour bien posséder‿une langue étrangère. (lă-plē-kă-sē‿ōf'—tă-ō-rē'—pr'ŭ-sē-păl'—pŏ-sa-da'—a-trăń-zhar').

ă far; ā pale· ē eve, ĕ there; ŏ note; ŏŏ room.

VOCABULAIRE.	VOCABULARY.
Suite.	*Continuation.*
La viande (vē‿ăń'-d').	The meat.
Le mêtre (mē'-tr').	The metre; (a few inches more than a yard).
Le kilo (kē-lo).	The kilo; (a little more than two English pounds).
Une livre (lē'-vr').	A pound; (a little more than an English pound).
Manger et Boire.	**Eating and Drinking.**
Manger (măń-zha).	To eat.
Boire (bŏ‿ă'-r').	To drink.
Déjeuner (da-zhû-na').	To breakfast.
Dîner (dē-na').	To dine.
Souper (sōō-pa').	To take supper.
L'appétit (lă-pa-tē').	The appetite.
Je n'ai pas d'appétit.	I have no appetite.
Avoir faim (fīń).	To be hungry (=to have hunger).
Avez-vous faim?	Are you hungry?
Oui, j'ai faim.	Yes, I am hungry,
Avoir soif (sŏ‿ăf').	To be thirsty (=to have thirst).
Avez-vous soif?	Are you thirsty?
Non, je n'ai pas soif	No, I am not thirsty.
Le Déjeuner.	**The Breakfast.**
Le déjeuner (da-zhû-na')	The (first) breakfast (consisting of coffee and rolls).

Le goûter (gōō-ta'). Le déjeuner à la fourchette.	The (second) breakfast; the luncheon.
Le café (kă-fā').	The coffee.
Une tasse de café (tăs').	A cup of coffee.
Le thé (ta).	The tea.
Une tasse de thé.	A cup of tea.
Le chocolat (shō-kō-lă').	The chocolate.
Que voulez-vous pour votre déjeuner? Du café, du thé ou du chocolat?	What do you wish for breakfast? Coffee, tea or chocolate?
Je bois du café, mais ma femme prend du thé.	I drink coffee, but my wife takes tea.
N'aimez-vous pas le thé?	Don't you like tea?
Je préfère le café.	I prefer coffee.
Commander (kō-măñ-da').	To order.
Avez-vous commandé?	Did you order?
Que voulez-vous commander?	What do you want to order?
Le biftek (bēf-tak').	The beefsteak.
Bien cuit (kū‿ē').	Well done.
Garçon, apportez-moi un biftek et une tasse de café.	Waiter, bring me a steak and a cup of coffee.
Le voulez-vous bien cuit?	Do you want it well done?
Non, saignant (peu cuit), s'il vous plaît (sān-yăñ').	No, rare please (*i. e.*, saignant=bleeding *or* peu cuit=little cooked).
La côtelette (cōt-lēt')	The cutlet.
La côtelette de mouton (mōō-tōñ').	The mutton-chop.
La côtelette de veau (vō).	The veal-cutlet.
La côtelette de porc.	The pork-chop.

Des pommes de terre (pŏm' dŭ tair').	Potatoes.
Des pommes de terre frites (frēt').	Fried potatoes.
Apportez-moi une côtelette de mouton et des pommes de terre frites.	Bring me a mutton-chop and fried potatoes.
Un‿oeuf (ŭn‿ûf).	An egg.
Des‿oeufs (deh zû).	Eggs.
Des‿oeufs‿à la coque (ză lă kŏ'-k').	Soft boiled eggs (=eggs in the shell).
Des‿oeufs durs.	Hard boiled eggs (=eggs hard).
Des‿oeufs brouillés (brōō-yā').	Scrambled eggs.
Des‿oeufs sur le plat (plă).	Fried eggs (eggs on the dish).
Des‿oeufs pochés (pō-shā').	Poached eggs.
Des‿oeufs frais (frā).	Fresh eggs.
Une‿omelette.	An omelette.
Comment désirez-vous les‿oeufs, à la coque ou durs?	How do you want the eggs, soft boiled or hard?
Faites-les bouillir trois minutes (bōō-yēr mē-nût').	Let them boil three minutes.
Le sel.	The salt.
Le poivre (pŏ‿ă'-vr').	The pepper.
Le sucre (sū'-kr').	The sugar.
Le lait (lā).	The milk.
La crême (krê'm').	The cream.
Le vinaigre (vē-nā'-gr').	The vinegar.
L'huile (lū‿ē'-l').	The oil.

La moutarde (mōō-tär'-d').	The mustard.
La salière (sä-lē‿ar').	The salt-cellar.
Le sucrier (sū-krē‿a').	The sugar-dish.
La cafetière (kä-fū-tē‿ar').	The coffee-urn.
La théière (ta-ē‿ar').	The tea-urn.
Le coquetier (kō-kū-tē‿a').	The egg-cup.
Verser (vĕr-sa').	To pour out.
Versez-moi une tasse de thé, s'il vous plaît.	Pray pour me out a cup of tea.
De l'eau fraîche (dū lō fra'-sh').	Fresh water.
Un verre d'eau (vair').	A glass of water.
Versez-moi un verre d'eau, s'il vous plaît.	Please pour me out a glass of water.
De l'eau froide (frō‿ä'-d').	Cold water.
De l'eau chaude (sho'-d').	Warm water.
De l'eau bouillante (bōō-yäñ'-t').	Boiling water.
De l'eau tiède (tē‿a'-d').	Lukewarm water.
De l'eau minérale (mē-na-räl').	Mineral water.
De l'eau glacée (glä-sa').	Ice-water.
Une carafe (kä-rä'-f').	A decanter.

Les Plats. Les Vaisselles[1].	**The Dishes.**
Mettre la table.	To lay the table.
Mettez la table.	Lay the table.
Une‿assiette (ä-sē‿ĕt').	A plate.
Propre (prō'-pr').	Clean.

[1] La Vaisselle (veh-sĕl') means dishes in general; table service.

Veuillez donner des‿assiettes propres.	Pray serve clean plates.
L'assiette‿à soupe (sœ̆p').	The soup-plate.
Le plat (plä).	The dish.
La cuiller (kü‿ĕ-yär').	The spoon.
La grande cuiller (La cuiller à soupe).	The large spoon.
La cuiller‿à thé (à café).	The teaspoon.
Une cuillerée (kü‿ĕ-yä-ra').	A spoonful.
La fourchette (fœ̆r-shĕt').	The fork.
Le couteau (kœ̆-tō').	The knife.
Les couteaux (kœ̆-tō').	The knives.
Donnez-moi un couteau propre.	Give me a clean knife.
La nappe (nä'-p').	The table-cloth.
La serviette (sĕr-vē‿ĕt').	The napkin.
Vous ne m'avez pas‿apporté une serviette.	You did not bring me a napkin.
Le couvert (kœ̆-vär').	The cover.
Le verre.	The glass.
Un verre d'eau.	A glass of water.
Un verre de vin (vĭñ).	A glass of wine.
Un verre à vin.	A wine glass.
Un bock.	A glass of beer.
Boire dans‿un verre[1].	To drink out of a glass.
La tasse.	The cup.
La soucoupe (sœ̆-kœ̆p').	The saucer.
Le tirebouchon (tĕr-bœ̆-shoñ').	The corkscrew.
Servez le café.	Serve the coffee.
Desservez la table.	Clear the table.

[1] Idiomatic use of *dans*. Similarly we say fumer dans‿une pipe (pēp'), to smoke (out of) a pipe.

VII.

a. The three regular Conjugations..... 258
b. Neuter, passive and reflexive verbs..... 263
c. Idioms with avoir..... 269
d. Vocabulary..... 284

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

To Have.

(*Continued*).

23. Write a number of sentences in the various persons and tenses at home and bring them to me for correction. (Literally: Write (écrivez) at you a certain number of phrases with different persons and in (à) different tenses, bring them me and I you them will correct (corrigerai).

24. I'll do so. But what about the formation of the past participle which is joined to *avoir* in the compound tenses? (Literally: I it will do. But speak me of the participle past (du participe passé) which is accompanied of the auxiliary *avoir* in the tenses compound (composés)?

25. Ah, I am glad you asked me this question. We have three regular conjugations in French; some grammarians say we have four. However, I teach but three. (Literally: Ah, I am glad (content) that you me may address (m'adressiez[2]) this question. We have in French three conjugations for the verbs regular. Some grammars (grammaires) of them give four. However that may be (quoiqu'il en soit[3]), I of them teach (enseigne) three).

26. I think I know that. The verbs of the first conjugation end in *er*, do they not? (Literally: I know that. Is it that the verbs of the first conjugation not end *not* in *er*)?

---

[1]**Ecrire**, to write; **écrivant**, writing; **écrit**, written.

Pres: J'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, **ils écrivent.**

Imp: J'écrivais, tu écrivais, il écrivait, nous écrivions, etc.

Fut: J'écrirai, tu écriras, il écrira, nous écrirons, vous écrirez, **ils écri-** [ront.

Cond: J'écrirais, tu écrirais, il écrirait, nous écririons, etc.

Pres. Subj.: Que j'écrive, que tu écrives, qu'il écrive, que nous écri- [vions, que vous écriviez, qu'ils écrivent.

Avoir.

(*Suite*).

23. Ecrivez[1] chez vous‿un certain nombre de phrases ‿avec différentes personnes et à différents temps, apportez-les-moi et je vous les corrigerai. (a-krē-vā'—sĕr-tĭń' nŏń'-br' d'phrăs'—dē-fa-răń'-t' pĕr-sŏn' —kŏ-rēzh'-rā').

24. Je le ferai. Mais parlez-moi du participe passé qui est‿accompagné de l'auxiliaire *avoir* dans les temps composés. (păr-tē-sēp' pă-sā' kē ā tā-kŏń-păn-yā—lŏ-xē-lē‿air'—kŏń-pō-zā').

25. Ah, je suis content que vous m'adressiez[2] cette question. Nous‿avons‿en français trois conjugaisons pour les verbes réguliers. Quelques grammaires‿en donnent quatre Quoiqu'il en soit,[3] j'en‿enseigne trois. (kŏń-tăń'—kŏń-zhū-gai-zŏń'—rā-gū-lē‿a'—dŏn').

26 Je sais cela. Est-ce que les verbes de la première conjugaison ne finissent pas‿en *er?* (fē-nĭs').

---

[1]The Subjunctive Mood must be used after verbs (or sentences) expressing pleasure, wonder, surprise, wish, desire, will, command, doubt, fear or sorrow, as:

Je suis content que vous l'ayez vu,	I am glad you saw him.
Je suis fâché que vous soyez malade,	I am sorry you are ill.

Compare Part X.

[3]The Subjunctive Mood is used after quoique, although, and numerous conjunctive phrases, a full table of which is given in Part X.

27. Yes, the regular verbs of the first conjugation end in *er;* those of the second in *ir* and those of the third in *re.* (Literally; Yes, the verbs regular of the first conjugation themselves terminate (se terminent) in *er;* those (ceux) of the second in *ir* and of the third in *re.*

28. By dropping these endings we get the stem of the verb which in the regular conjugations remains unchanged. To these stems we add the endings of the respective conjugations. A full table of them is given in Part X of my books and you will do well to study them (Literally: In (en) suppressing (supprimant) these endings we have the root (le radical) of the verb which in the verbs regular remains (demeure) always the same (le même). You will find in the book ten a table complete (un tableau complet) of these endings which you will do well of to study).

29. I will do so. But I would like to know how the past participle of the three regular conjugations is formed. (Literally: I it will do. But I would like to know how is formed the participle past of these three conjugations regular).

30. In a very simple way. The past participle of the first conjugation ends in é, as: aimer, aimé; payer, payé; donner, donné; parler, parlé, etc. (Literally: Of a manner very simple (d'une manière très simple.) The participle past of the first conjugation itself terminates in é, as in aimer, &c).

31. And what is the ending of the past participle of verbs of the second conjugation?

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ŏŏ room.

27 Oui; les verbes réguliers de la première conjugaison se terminent‿en *er;* ceux de la seconde‿en *ir* et ceux de la troisième‿en *re.* (tĕr-mĕn').

28. En supprimant ces terminaisons, nous‿avons le radical du verbe qui dans les verbes réguliers demeure toujours le même. A ces radicaux nous‿ajoutons les terminaisons des diverses conjugaisons. Vous trouverez dans le livre X un tableau complet de ces terminaisons que vous ferez bien d'étudier. (ăń sū-prē-măń' — rä-dē-käl' — dŭ-mûr — rä-dē-kō' — nœ̆-zä-zhœ̆-tŏń' — dē-vĕr's' — tä-blō' kŏń-pleh — da-tū-dē‿a')

29. Je le ferai. Mais je voudrais savoir comment‿est formé le participe passé de ces trois conjugaisons régulières.

30. D'une manière très simple. Le participe passé de la première conjugaison se termine en é, comme: aimer, aimé; payer, payé: donner, donné; parler, parlé, etc. (mä-nē‿ar' siń'-pl').

31 Quelle est la terminaison du participe passé des verbes de la deuxième conjugaison?

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ê there; ō nōte; œ̆ room.

To go.	To enter.
to stay.	to go out.
to come.	to arrive.
to come back.	to get in.
to return.	to get out.
to leave.	to fall.

39 We also conjugate "devenir," to become, "parvenir," to come to etc., which are derived from "venir", to come, with "être." Also "naître," to be born, and "mourir," to die. We therefore say: "Where were you born?—I was born in Paris.—He has died.—She died."—(Literally: We conjugate also with "être," the verbs "devenir," "parvenir," etc., which are derived (dérivés) from the verb "venir." As also (ainsi que) "naître" and "mourir." We say: "Where *are* you born (né)?—I *am* born in Paris.—He is died (mort).—She is died (morte).

40. I think I understand this rule; we have had quite a number of examples in our previous lessons. But please explain to me which verbs are conjugated with "être." (Literally: I believe that I understand this rule; we have had in our preceding lessons (nos précédentes leçons) a certain number of examples (exemples). But tell me which are the verbs conjugated with "être")?

---

[1]**Naître**, to be born; **naissant**; **né**, born.

Pres: Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.

Imp: Je naissais, tu naissais, il naissait, etc.

Fut: Je naîtrai, tu naîtras, il naîtra, etc.

Cond: Je naîtrais, tu naîtrais, il naîtrait, etc.

Pres. Subj. Que je naisse, que tu naisses, qu'il naisse, que nous naissions, [que vous naissiez, qu'ils naissent.

[2]**Mourir**, to die; **mourant**, dying; **mort**, dead.

Aller.	Entrer.
rester.	sortir.
venir.	arriver.
revenir.	monter.
retourner.	descendre.
partir.	tomber.

39. Nous conjuguons aussi avec être les verbes devenir, parvenir etc., qui sont dérivés du verbe venir. Ainsi que naître[1] et mourir[2]. Nous disons: "Où êtes-vous né?—Je suis né à Paris. Il est mort. Elle est morte."

40. Je crois que je comprends cette règle; nous avons eu dans nos précédentes leçons un certain nombre d'exemples. Mais dites-moi, quels sont les verbes conjugués avec être? (nōō-zā-vŏń-zū—pra-sa-dăń'-t' lŭ-sŏń' zŭń sĕr-tĭń nŏń'-br' dĕ-xăń'-pl').

Pres: Je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt, nous *mourons*, vous *mourez*, ils [meurent.

Imp: Je mourais, tu mourais, il mourait, etc.

Fut: Je mourrai, tu mourras, il mourra, nous mourrons, vous mourrez, mourront.

Cond: Je mourrais, tu mourrais, il mourrait, etc.

Pres. Subj.: Que je meure, que tu meures, qu'il meure, que nous [*mourions*, que vous *mouriez*, qu'ils meurent.

---

41. The auxiliary "être" is used with all passive verbs and with all reflexive verbs. (Literally: The verb auxiliary "être" is employed with all the verbs passive (passifs) and also with all the verbs reflexive (réfléchis).

42. Study the regular verbs thoroughly and practice them so fully that you can give any tense or mood at any time. (Literally: Study the verbs regular with attention; practice them as much (tant) as (que) you will be able (vous pourrez), in order that of them to recite (afin d'en réciter) no matter what tense or no matter what mood).

43. Do not learn the table by heart, but practice a number of regular verbs until you can say them like this: "He is speaking. He would have spoken. What would you have paid? We must sell this house, etc. (Literally: Not learn *not* the table by heart, but practice a certain number of verbs regular until that (jusqu'à ce que) you may be able (vous puissiez) them to say thus: etc.)

---

[1]Passive verbs are formed in French—as in English—by joining the past participle of an active verb to the auxiliary verb *to be*, être, as: donner, to give; être donné, to be given; finir, to finish; être fini, to be finished.

The past participle in French must agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun it relates to and which stands as the subject of the sentence.

[2]All reflexive verbs are conjugated with être.

[3]**Apprendre**, to learn; **comprendre**, to understand, etc., are conjugated like the irregular verb:

---

41. Le verbe auxiliaire être est employé avec tous les verbes passifs[1] et aussi avec tous les verbes réfléchis[2]. (rā-fla-shē').

42. Etudiez les verbes réguliers avec attention; pratiquez-les tant que vous pourrez, afin d'en réciter n'importe quel temps ou n'importe quel mode. (nĭñ-pŏrt').

43. N'apprenez[3] pas la table par coeur, mais pratiquez un certain nombre de verbes réguliers, jusqu' à ce que vous puissiez les dire ainsi: "Il parle. Il aurait parlé. Qu'auriez-vous payé? Il faut que nous vendions[4] cette maison, etc.

Prendre, to take; **prenant**, taking; **pris**, taken.

Pres: Je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous *prenons*, vous *prenez*, ils [*prennent*.

Imp: Je prenais, tu prenais, il prenait, nous prenions, etc.

Fut: Je prendrai, tu prendras, il prendra, nous prendrons, etc.

Cond: Je prendrais, tu prendrais, il prendrait, nous prendrions, etc.

Pres. Subj.: Que je prenne, que tu prennes, qu'il prenne, que nous [prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent.

[4]As explained before, the subjunctive must be used after *il faut*.

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

44 But I must go, sir. I see our lesson is over; it has just struck eleven. (Literally: But it is necessary that I may leave (que je parte), sir. I see that the lesson is finished; eleven hours come from striking (sonner).

45. Yes, it is five minutes past eleven. Well, write some exercises for our next lesson, short, practical phrases about the rules I have given you and study the regular verbs.

46. I shall do my best, sir. I am anxious to master your beautiful language. (Literally: I shall do my possible, sir. I desire so much (tant) to possess your beautiful language).

47. Good bye, sir.

48. Good bye.

Avoir.

(*Continuation.*)

1. Will you please give me a rule about the use of *avoir* in place of the English verb '*to be*'. (Literally: Will you please me give a rule of the use (l'emploi) of the verb *avoir* in place (au lieu) of the verb '*to be*' in English).

2. With pleasure. *Avoir* is used in the sense of '*to be*' in English, when it expresses desire or sensation. (Literally: With pleasure. *Avoir* is employed (employé) in the sense (dans le sens) of '*to be*' in English when it expresses (il exprime) a desire (un désir) or a sentiment (un sentiment).

[1]**Partir**, to leave, to start; **partant**, leaving; **parti**, left.
Pres: Je pars, tu pars, il part, nous partons, vous partez, ils partent.
Imp: Je partais, tu partais, il partait, etc.
Fut: Je partirai, tu partiras, il partira, etc.
Cond: Je partirais, tu partirais, il partirait, etc.

44. Mais‿il faut que je parte[1], monsieur. Je vois que la leçon est finie; onze‿heures viennent de sonner[2].

45. Oui, il est‿onze heures cinq.—Eh bien, pour la prochaine leçon, écrivez quelques‿exercises, des phrases courtes, mais‿usuelles, en‿observant les règles que je vous‿ai données; étudiez‿aussi les verbes réguliers. (zū-zū-ël').

46. Je ferai mon possible, monsieur. Je désire tant posséder votre belle langue! (pŏ-sē'bl'—tăń').

47. Au revoir, monsieur.

48. Au revoir.

Avoir.

(*Suite.*)

1. Veuillez me donner‿une règle de l'emploi du verbe *avoir* au lieu du verbe '*to be*' en‿anglais. (lăń-plŏ‿ä'—ŏ lē‿ū').

2. Avec plaisir. *Avoir* est‿employé dans le sens de '*to be*' en‿anglais, quand‿il exprime un désir ou un sentiment. (lū säńs'—ĕx-prĕm'—dä-zēr'—säń-tē-măń').

---

[1] Pres. Subj.: Que je parte, que tu partes, qu'il parte, que nous partions, [que vous partiez, qu'ils partent.

[2] The time of the day and how to say it in French will be taught in a later lesson.

---

3. I regret to tell you that I can't quite understand what you mean by this. Kindly give me some illustrations. (Literally: I am sorry *of* you to tell that I not understand *not* very well what you will say. Will you please me cite (citer) some examples).
4. You are quite right. We learn by practice and through examples, (Literally: You have right (raison). We learn by the practice and the examples).
5. That is my opinion exactly. Grammarians generally make the mistake of being too abstract in their rules. (Literally: That is my opinion (mon ‿avis). The wrong (le tort) of almost (presque) all the authors (les‿auteurs) is (c'est) *of* to be more theoretical (théoriques) than practical (pratiques).
6. In plain words, then, "*avoir*" is used in place of our English verb "to be" in connection with the following words: hunger, thirst, cold, warmth, sleep, shame, wright, wrong, inclination and fear. (Literally: In (*en*) two words: the verb "*avoir*" is employed in (à) the place (la place) of our verb English '*to be*' when it is joined (joint) with the words following (suivants): hunger, thirst (soif), cold (froid), warm (chaud), sleep (sommeil), shame (honte), right (raison), wrong (tort), inclination (envie) and fear (peur).

---

[1]There are a number of idiomatic expressions in connection with *avoir* with which the student ought to familiarize himself:

J'ai froid,	I am cold. (=I have cold).
J'ai froid‿aux mains,	My hands are cold. (=I have cold *to* the hands).
J'ai chaud,	I am warm. (=I have warmth).

3. Je suis fâché de vous dire que je ne comprends pas très bien ce que vous voulez dire. Veuillez donc me citer des‿exemples. (sē-tà' deh zē-xăń'pl').

4. Vous‿avez raison. Nous apprenons par la pratique et les‿exemples. (rai-zōń'—prä-tēk')

5. C'est mon‿avis. Le tort de presque tous les‿auteurs c'est d'être plus théoriques que pratiques. (mōń nä-vē'—tōr— leh zō-tûr').

6. En deux mots: le verbe *avoir* est‿employé à la place de notre verbe anglais "*to be*", quand‿il est joint‿avec les mots suivants: faim[1], soif, froid, chaud, sommeil, honte, raison, tort, envie et peur. (zhō‿ĭń' — sū‿ē-văń' fĭń, sō‿ăf', shō, sō-mē'-yū, ōń'-t', rai-zōń', tōr, ăń'-vē, pûr).

Avez-vous faim?	Are you hungry? (=Have you hunger)?
J'ai bien soif,	I am very thirsty. (=I have well thirst).
A-t-il sommeil?	Is he sleepy? (=Has he sleep)?
Avez-vous peur?	Are you afraid? (=Have you fear)?
N'avez-vous pas honte?	Are n't you ashamed? (=Have you not shame)?

☞ Foot notes continued on next page.

7. Ah, this I understand, though I am afraid it will be quite difficult for me to remember such a number of isolated words. (Literally: Ah, I understand very well, although (quoique) I *may* fear (je craigne) that it *not may be* difficult *of* me to remember a so great number of words isolated (mots‿isolés).
8. Isolated words, my dear sir, are always hard to remember. Disconnected words—as I say in my preface—are not language. A person might learn the whole dictionary by heart and yet would not be able to carry on a conversation. Nature teaches by sentences, and sentences you will have to learn. (Literally: The words isolated, my friend, are always very difficult to (à) retain (retenir). The words which are *not* joined (joints) to others (à d'autres), as I it say in my preface (dans ma préface), not make *not* a language. A person may (peut) learn by heart (par cœur) all the dictionary (le dictionnaire) and be perfectly incapable (incapable) of to sustain (tenir) a conversation. The nature (la nature) us teaches (enseigne) by phrases (des phrases) and *this* are (ce sont) the phrases which we ought to learn),

J'avais raison,	I was right. (=I had right).
J'avais tort,	I was wrong. (=I had wrong).
Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you? (=What age have you)?
J'ai vingt‿ans,	I am 20 years old. (=I have 20 years).
J'ai besoin de,	I need. (=I have need of).
J'ai envie de,	I desire to, I feel inclined to. (=I have inclination of).
Qu'avez vous?	What is the matter with you? (=What have you)?
Qu'a-t-elle?	What is the matter with her? (=What has she)?
Elle n'a rien,	Nothing is the matter with her. (=She has nothing).
Vous n'avez pas bonne mine.	You do not look well. (=You have not good appearance).

7. Ah, je comprends fort bien, quoique je craigne[s] qu'il ne me[s] soit difficile de me rappeler‿un si grand nombre de mots‿isolés. (krăn'-yŭ—mō-zē-zō-lā').

8. Les mots‿isolés, mon‿ami, sont toujours très difficiles‿à retenir. Les mots qui ne sont pas joints ‿à d'autres, comme je le dis dans ma préface, ne font pas‿une langue. Une personne peut‿apprendre par cœur tout le dictionnaire et être parfaitement‿incapable de tenir‿une conversation. La nature nous‿enseigne par des phrases et ce sont les phrases que nous devons‿apprendre. (rŭ-tŭ-nēr'—prā-fās'—kûr—dĕk-sē‿ō-nair'—tĭń-kā-pā'-bl'—kōń-vĕr-sā-sē‿ōń'—nōō zāń-sān'-yŭ).

Il a mauvaise mine. He looks badly. (=He had bad looks).

Observe also the following expressions:

J'ai mal à la tête,	I have the headache	(=pain in the head).
J'ai mal aux dents,	I have the toothache	(= " " " teeth).
J'ai mal à la gorge,	My throat pains me	(= " " " throat).
J'ai mal au ventre,	I have the stomach-ache	(= " " " abdomen).
J'ai mal aux‿yeux,	My eyes pain me	(= " " " eyes).
J'ai mal aux‿oreilles,	My ears pain me	(= " " " ears).
J'ai mal au cœur,	I feel sick	(= " " " heart).

This latter expression is used of nausea only.

[s]The subjunctive follows quoique, although, though.

[s]The subjunctive with *ne* follows after *craindre*, to fear. See Part X.

---

9. I am convinced of that and should feel obliged to you if you would form some sentences with these words for me. (Literally: I of it am convinced (persuadé), also you would be I very obliged if you could me make some phrases with these words).

10 With pleasure, but in order to derive the full benefit of the examples which I am going to give you, you ought to form a number of similar phrases at home and bring them to me for correction. (Literally: With pleasure, but in the aim (le but) *of* to obtain (obtenir) the greatest profit (profit) of these examples which I go you give, you will have (vous devrez) to try *of* to make *at you* a certain number of phrases similar (semblables) and me them bring so that (pour que) I them *may* correct (je les corrige).

11. I'll do so. I shall put the verbs of your sentences into different tenses and persons. (Literally: I it shall do. I shall put (je mettrai) the verbs of your phrases to different tenses and different persons (différentes personnes).

---

[1]A pronoun used as subject of a sentence generally precedes the verb, except in questions, as: Va-t-il? Does he go? — Donnons-nous? Do we give?

But in affirmative or negative sentences beginning with au moins, du moins *at least*; à peine, *scarcely;* encore, *still, yet;* en vain, *in vain;* aussi, *also;* combien, *how much;* que de fois, *how many times* etc, the inverted form is frequently used, as:

A peine étais-je parti qu'elle vint,	I had scarcely left when she came.
Au moins, me l'a-t-il dit,	At least, he told me so.
Peut-être quitterons-nous Paris,	Perhaps we shall leave Paris.
A plus forte raison, n'irai-je pas,	For a still greater reason, I shall not go.

This rule however, is not imperative. We could and do say:

Peut être quitterons-nous Paris, Peut-être que nous quitterons Paris, Nous quitterons Paris peut-être,	Perhaps we shall leave Paris.

9. J'en suis persuadé, aussi vous serais-je[1] très‿obligé si vous pouviez me faire quelques phrases‿avec ces mots. (pĕr-sü‿ä-da').

10. Avec plaisir, mais dans le but d'obtenir le plus grand profit de ces‿exemples, que je vais vous donner, vous devrez‿essayer de faire chez vous‿un certain nombre de phrases semblables et me les‿apporter pour que[2] je les corrige. (bü-prŏ-fē'—dü-vrä-zē-sä-yä—kŏ-rēzh').

11. Je le ferai. Je mettrai[3] les verbes de vos phrases‿à différents temps‿et différentes personnes. (dē-fa-räń').

---

[1]The subjunctive must be employed after pour que, in order that.

[2]**Mettre**, to put, to place; **mettant**, putting; **mis**, put.

Pres: Je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent.
Imp: Je mettais, tu mettais, il mettait, etc.
Fut: Je mettrai, tu mettras, il mettra, etc.
Cond: Je mettrais, tu mettrais, il mettrait, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que je mette, que tu mettes, qu'il mette, que nous mettions, que vous mettiez, qu'ils mettent.

In the same way we conjugate: *admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit, to allow; *promettre*, to promise; *compromettre*, to compromise, to expose; *remettre*, to replace, to hand; *soumettre*, to submit, etc.

Se mettre à means to begin, as:
Il se mit‿à rire, He commenced to laugh.

---

12. Very well! Now let us begin. What is the matter with you? You do not look well. (Literally: Very well. Now let us commence. What you have then? You not seem *not* (vous ne paraissez pas[1]) very well)

13. Now form a similar sentence, but put it into the past tense. (Literally: Form now a phrase similar (pareille) but in *her* putting to the past (au passé).

14. I met your cousin and he seemed to look very ill. What is the matter with him? (Literally: I have met (rencontré) your cousin and he seemed (il paraissait) very suffering (souffrant). What is this that he has (qu'est-ce qu'il a)?

15. Very well! Now please form a phrase with 'hunger' and 'thirst,' but don't make it too short. (Literally: That is very well. Make a phrase with 'hunger' and 'thirst,' but not *her* make *not* too short (courte).

---

[1]**Paraître.** to appear; **paraissant,** appearing; **paru,** appeared.

Pres: Je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissons, vous paraissez, ils [paraissent.

Imp: Je paraissais, tu paraissait, il paraissait, etc.

Fut: Je paraîtrai, tu paraîtras, il paraîtra, etc.

Cond: Je paraîtrais, tu paraîtrais, il paraîtrait, etc.

Pres. Subj: Que je paraisse, que tu paraisses, qu'il paraisse, que nous [paraissions, que vous paraissiez, qu'ils paraissent.

[2]Instead of the simple form que, what? the form qu'est-ce que? or

---

12 Très bien. Maintenant commençons. Qu'avez-vous donc? Vous ne paraissez[1] pas très bien. (kă-vā vōō — pă-rā-sā').

13. Formez maintenant‿une phrase pareille, mais‿en la mettant‿au passé. (pă-rĕ'-yū).

14. J'ai rencontré votre cousin et il paraissait très souffrant. Qu'est-ce[2] qu'il a? (răń-kŏń-trā-kōō-zĭń' — sōō-frăń').

15. C'est très bien! Faites‿une phrase avec "faim" et "soif," mais ne la faites pas trop courte.

---

[1] Qu'est-ce que c'est que? is frequently used (but only for the accusative, the objective case).

Qu'est-ce que vous voulez? — What do you want?
Qu'est-ce que vous faites là? — What you are doing there?

What—when nominative (subjective case)—may be given by qu'est-ce qui? (It must be always the *subject* of the sentence, and the student must be careful not to confound it with qui est-ce qui? who?).

Qu'est-ce qui vous‿afflige? — What afflicts you?
Qu'est-ce qui vous manque? — What are you missing?

16. Since last Monday when I took a violent cold, I have lost all appetite. This morning I only took a cup of coffee. I could not eat any thing at breakfast. (Literally: Since Monday (lundi) last I have taken a big (gros) cold (rhume), I not have more of appetite (plus d'appétit). This morning I not have taken but a cup of coffee. I not have nothing been able (pu) to take at breakfast (au déjeuner).

17. Well, don't you feel hungry now? Wouldn't you like to eat a light lunch with me? (Literally: Well, not have you *not* hunger at present (à présent)? Not would eat you *not* a light lunch (un léger goûter) with me)?

18. No, thank you very much; I am not at all hungry and couldn't eat a mouthful But may I trouble you for a glass of water? I feel very thirsty. (Literally: I you thank much, I not have *not* hunger at all; it me would be impossible *of* to eat a mouthful (une bouchée). But make me the pleasure *of* me to give a glass of water (un verre d'eau). I have *very* thirst).

The days of the week are:

Lundi,	**Monday.**
mardi,	**Tuesday.**
mercredi,	**Wednesday.**
jeudi,	**Thursday.**
vendredi,	**Friday.**
samedi,	**Saturday.**
dimanche,	**Sunday.**

Lundi prochain, next Monday.—Mardi dernier, **last Tuesday.—Lundi,** on Monday.—Le lundi, les lundis, every Monday.

Quel quantième avons-nous?	What date is to-day?
Quel quantième sommes-nous?	
Quel jour du mois avons-nous?	
C'est aujourd'hui le sept,	To-day is the seventh.
Quel jour de la semaine avons-nous?	What day of the week is it?
C'est aujourd'hui mardi,	To-day is Tuesday.
C'était hier lundi,	Yesterday was Monday.

16. Depuis lundi[1] dernier j'ai pris‿un gros rhume, je n'ai plus d'appétit. Ce matin je n'ai pris qu'une tasse de café. Je n'ai rien pu prendre[2]‿au déjeuner. (lŭń'-dē—zhŭń grō rūm').

17. Eh bien, n'avez-vous pas faim à présent? Ne mangeriez-vous pas‿un léger goûter avec moi? (ă prazăń'—măń-zhŭ-rē‿a-vōō).

18. Je vous remercie beaucoup; je n'ai pas faim du tout; il me serait‿impossible de manger‿une bouchée. Mais faites-moi le plaisir de me donner‿un verre d'eau. J'ai très soif (bien soif) (tĭń-pŏ-sē'-bl'—măń-zha rūn bōō-sha')

Ce sera demain mercredi,	To-morrow will be Wednesday.
C'était hier le six,	Yesterday was the sixth.
Ce cera demain le huit,	To-morrow will be the eighth.

[2]**Prendre,** to take, is used to form many idiomatic expressions. I mention but a few of them:

Ne le prenez pas‿en mauvaise part,	Do not take it amiss. (Don't be offended at it).
Il prend tout cela *au pied de la lettre*,	He takes all this for gospel truth (literally).
Elle est‿assez simple pour prendre tous ses compliments‿*au pied de la lettre*,	She is foolish enough to take all his compliments literally.
Comment vous‿y prenez-vous?	How do you manage?
Comment vous‿y prenez-vous pour préparer vos leçons sans dictionnaire?	How do you manage to prepare your lessons without a dictionary?
Comment vous‿y êtes-vous pris?	How did you manage it?

19. Now pray form some sentences with *inclination*, *shame* and *fear*. I am curious to see how you will work in these words. (Literally: Make some phrases with inclination (envie), shame (honte) and fear (peur). I am curious (curieux) *of* to see how you yourself there will take[1]).

20. I have a good mind to take a journey through Calabra in Italy, but to tell you the truth, I am afraid of those brigands. (Literally: I have inclination *of* to make a journey to Italy (en‿Italie) in the Calabra (dans la Calabre), but to you speak frankly (franchement), I have fear of the robbers (des brigands).

21. What! You are afraid of these half-starved Italians? You who fought in the United States' army under General Grant? You ought to be ashamed of yourself! (Literally: What! you have fear of these Italians who are half (à moitié) dead *of* hunger? You who have fought (combattu) in the ranks (les rangs) of the army (l'ärmée) of the United States (des‿Etats-Unis), under the orders (les‿ordres) of the general Grant? Fie (fi)! You should ought to have shame *of* yourself (vous-même)! *Or:* You should ought to blush (rougir) *of* shame).

---

[1]See note 2, page 279.

[2]**Combattre** is irregular and is conjugated like

Battre, to beat: **battant**, beating; **battu**, beaten.

Pres: Je bats, tu bats, il bat, nous battons, vous battez, ils **battent**.

Imp: Je battais, tu battais, il battait, etc.

---

16. Depuis lundi[1] dernier j'ai pris‿un gros rhume, je n'ai plus d'appétit. Ce matin je n'ai pris qu'une tasse de café. Je n'ai rien pu prendre[2]‿au déjeuner. (lŭń'-dē—zhŭń grō rūm').

17. Eh bien, n'avez-vous pas faim à présent? Ne mangeriez-vous pas‿un léger goûter avec moi? (ă prazăń'—măń-zhŭ-rē‿a-vōō).

18. Je vous remercie beaucoup; je n'ai pas faim du tout; il me serait‿impossible de manger‿une bouchée. Mais faites-moi le plaisir de me donner‿un verre d'eau. J'ai très soif (bien soif) (tlń-pŏ-sē'-bl'—măń-zha rūn bōō-sha')

Ce sera demain mercredi,	To-morrow will be Wednesday.
C'était hier le six,	Yesterday was the sixth.
Ce cera demain le huit,	To-morrow will be the eighth.

[2]**Prendre,** to take, is used to form many idiomatic expressions. I mention but a few of them:

Ne le prenez pas‿en mauvaise part,	Do not take it amiss. (Don't be offended at it).
Il prend tout cela *au pied de la lettre,*	He takes all this for gospel truth (literally).
Elle est‿assez simple pour prendre tous ses compliments‿*au pied de la lettre,*	She is foolish enough to take all his compliments literally.
Comment vous‿y prenez-vous?	How do you manage?
Comment vous‿y prenez-vous pour préparer vos leçons sans dictionnaire?	How do you manage to prepare your lessons without a dictionary?
Comment vous‿y êtes-vous pris?	How did you manage it?

22 Indeed, you are quite wrong to sneer at these bold bandits, whom you call "half-starved." I am not at all ashamed of myself, nor do I consider myself a coward. I would rather meet three Mexican desperadoes than one of these Calabrians of whom every one stands in fear. (Literally: In truth (en vérité), you have wrong *of* to despise (mépriser) these bold (effrontés) brigands, these 'dead of hunger' (ces meurts-de-faim), as you them call. I not have *not* shame of myself (moi-même) and I not myself (me) consider *not* as a poltroon (un poltron). I would prefer to meet three brigands Mexican (mexicains) rather than a single (un seul) of these Calabrians (ces Calabrais) of whom (dont) all the world is afraid (est‿effrayé).

23. Now, here you have some examples of the idiomatic use of *avoir*. I trust they are quite clear to you. (Literally: At present, you have *of the* examples of the use idiomatic of the verb *avoir*. I hope that you them understand very well).

24. Oh perfectly so. But tell me, are there any other expressions in which *avoir* is used? (Literally: Oh perfectly, But tell me if there are (s'il y a) *of* other expressions in which one employs *avoir*)?

---

[1]Dont, whose, of which, is used for persons and things of both genders and numbers:

Voici la dame dont je vous‿ai parlé,	Here is the lady of whom I spoke to you.
C'est le monsieur dont‿il a acheté les‿actions,	This is the gentleman whose shares he bought.

22. En vérité, vous‿avez tort de mépriser ces‿effrontés brigands, ces meurts-de-faim comme vous les‿appelez. Je n'ai pas honte de moi-même et je ne me considère pas comme un poltron. Je préférerais rencontrer trois brigands mexicains plutôt, qu'un seul de ces Calabrais dont[1] tout le monde est‿effrayé. (ăń vă-rē-tă'—mă-prē-zā seh zē-frŏń-tă—mûr-dŭ-fĭń— kŏń-sē-dăr' — pŏl-trŏń' — răń-kŏń-trā — mē-xē-kĭń' — kă-lă-brai — ē-fra-yā').

23. A présent, vous‿avez des‿exemples de l'emploi idiomatique du verbe *avoir*. J'espère que vous les comprenez très bien.

24. Oh parfaitement. Mais dites-moi s'il y a d'autres ‿expressions dans lesquelles‿on‿emploie *avoir?*

C'est‿une maladie dont‿on ne connaît point la cause,	That is an illness the cause of which is unknown.
Est-ce là le jardin dont vous m'avez parlé?	Is that the garden of which you spoke to me?

VOCABULAIRE.

(*Suite*)

Le Voyage.

(lŭ vŏ‿ă-yăzh')

Faire‿un voyage.	To make (to take) a journey.
Allez-vous faire‿un voyage?	Are you going to take a journey?
Je suis sur le point de partir pour l'Europe (pŏ‿ĭń'—lû-rŏp').	I am on the point of leaving for Europe.
Faire‿un voyage; aller à; partir pour.	To take a journey; to go to; to leave for.
Où partez-vous?	Where are you going?
Je pars pour la France (frăń'-s').	I am leaving for France.
Aller hors de la ville (or dŭ lă vēl').	To go out of town.
Je vais hors de la ville demain.	I am going out of town tomorrow.
Votre mari est-il hors de la ville? (mă-rē').	Is your husband out of town?
Le voyage.	The journey.
Avez-vous‿eu un bon voyage?	Did you have a good journey?
Au revoir, j'espère que vous‿aurez‿un bon voyage.	Good bye, I hope you will have a pleasant journey.

VOCABULARY.

(*Continuation.*)

The Journey; The Voyage.

Le Chemin de fer. (lŭ sh'mĭń d' fĕr).	**The Railroad.**
L'embarcadère (läń-băr-kä-dair').	The terminus.
La gare (gär').	The depot; the station.
La station (stä-sē‿ōń').	The (way) station.
Par quelle gare partez-vous?	From which station are you going?
Je pars par la gare du Nord.	I leave from the Northern depot.

Le Billet. (lŭ bē-ya').	**The Ticket.**
Le bureau des billets.	The ticket-office.
Pouvez-vous me dire où est le bureau des billets?	Can you tell me where the booking-office is?
Où puis-je avoir mes billets, s'il vous plaît? / Où prend-on les billets?	Where do I get my tickets, please?
La seconde porte à droite (à gauche).	Second door to the right (to the left).
De ce côté.	On this side.
De l'autre côté.	On the other side.
En face (fäs'). / Devant vous (dŭ-väń').	Right opposite; straight before you.
Veuillez me donner‿un billet pour Londres (lōń'-dr').	Please give me a ticket to London.
Un billet de première classe.	A first-class ticket.
Un billet de seconde classe.	A second-class ticket.
Un billet de troisième classe.	A third-class ticket.

Voulez-vous‿un billet de première ou de seconde classe?	Do you want a first or second class ticket?
Le billet de retour (rŭ-tōōr').	The return-ticket.
Le billet d'aller et retour.	The round-trip ticket.
Pendant combien de temps les billets de retour sont-ils valables? (păń-dań' vă-lă'-bl').	How long are return-tickets good?
Les billets d'aller et retour sont valables pendant ‿un mois (mŏ‿ă').	Return-tickets are good for a month.
Pouvez-vous me donner‿un billet direct pour Paris?	Can you give me a through-ticket to Paris?
Combien coûte‿un billet d'ici à Berlin? (bĕr-lıń').	How much is a ticket from here to Berlin?
Le facteur.	The porter.
Facteur, veuillez‿enregistrer mes bagages.	Porter, please check my baggage; luggage.
Combien de colis‿avez-vous? (kŏ-lē').	How many pieces have you?
La malle; les malles.	The trunk; the trunks.
Le sac de voyage.	The valise.
La boîte‿à chapeau (bŏ‿ăt-tă-shă-pō').	The hat-box.
Ayez soin de ma boîte à chapeau (a-ya sŏ‿ıń').	Be careful with my hat-box.
Le bulletin de bagages.	The check.
Veuillez me donner votre billet; je vous‿apporterai le bulletin tout de suite	Please give me your ticket; I'll bring you your check at once.

Le bagage gratis. Les bagages‿en franchise (frăń-shēs').	The *free* luggage.
A combien de kilos‿a-t-on droit?	How much baggage is allowed free? (=To how many kilos has one right)?
Les chemins de fer français ‿accordent seulement cent cinquante livres (ă-kŏr'-d').	French railroads grant only one hundred and fifty pounds of baggage free.
Le poids (pō‿ă').	The weight.
L'excédant (lĕk-sa-dăń').	The overweight.
Est-ce que j'ai de l'excédant?	Have I any overweight?
Vous‿avez vingt francs d'excédant.	You have 20 francs overweight.
On ne peut pas voyager‿en France avec beaucoup de bagages; c'est trop coûteux (kōō-tû')	People ought not to travel with much baggage in France; it is too expensive.

La Salle D'Attente. — The Waiting-Room.

Pardon, où est la salle d'attente?	Pray, where is the waiting-room?
Les portes‿ouvrent dix minutes‿avant le départ du train.	The doors open ten minutes before the train leaves.
Le buffet (bū-fa').	The buffet.

29. This house is about sixty feet high, isn't it?—At least eighty. (Literally: This house not has *she not* sixty feet of height (hauteur)?—*She* has at least (au moins) 80 feet).
30. Do I find all these idioms in the grammar?—Certainly, and you ought to study them carefully and practice them so fully, until they become quite familiar to you. (Literally: Shall find I all these idioms in the grammar (dans la grammaire)?—Certainly, study them then (donc) with care (avec soin) and practice them with attention until (jusqu'à ce que) they you *may* be quite familiar (familiers).

MAIN SENTENCE.

(*Continuation*).

For I expect a friend from Chicago and must stay in Boulogne till the steamer arrives.

For
I expect
a friend
from Chicago
and
must
stay
in Boulogne
till
the steamer
may arrive.

[1]See foot-notes on next page.

VIII.

a. Avoir 290
b. Theatre and Concert 294
c. Personal Conjunctive Pronouns 312
d. Exercise on the Pronouns 320
e. En and Y 321
f. Exercise on En and Y 322
g. Arrivée à Paris 323
h. Voitures de Place ou Fiacres 324
i. Omnibus et Tramways 326
j. Choix d'un Quartier.—Hôtels 327
k. Appartements Meublés 329
l. Restaurants 330
m. Vocabulary 332

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

Avoir.

(*Continuation*).

25 Oh yes, we employ it for instance in regard to the age of persons. Thus we say: How old are you? How old may his sister be? I don't know exactly how old she is, but I think she is twenty-one or twenty-two.—I don't think she is as old as that. (Literally: Certainly. We it employ for instance in speaking of the age of persons. Thus we say: What age have you? What age can have his sister? I not know *not* exactly (exactement) what age she has, but I think that she has twenty and one or twenty-two years.—I not believe *not* that she may be as old (agée).

26. This mode of expression is similar to the Spanish. (Literally: This manner (cette manière) *of* one's self to express is similar (semblable) in Spanish).

27. Precisely so. We also use *avoir* in regard to descriptions of the size of monuments, rivers, roads etc. As for instance: This river is 80 metres broad and 50 metres deep. (Literally: That is exact. We employ also the verb *avoir* in speaking generally (en général) of the dimensions of monuments, of the rivers (rivières), of the roads (des routes) etc. As for instance: This (cette) river has 80 metres (mètres) of breadth (largeur) and 50 metres of depth (profondeur).

28. What are the dimensions of this room?—I think it may be 35 feet long by fifteen wide. (Literally: What dimensions has this room?—I believe that *she* has twenty-five feet (pieds) of long upon (sur) fifteen of broad (large).

[1]The subjunctive must be used here as uncertainty is implied.

Avoir.

(*Suite*).

25. Certainement. Nous l'employons par‿exemple en parlant de l'âge des personnes. Ainsi nous disons: "Quel âge avez-vous?"
Quel âge peut‿avoir sa sœur?
Je ne sais pas‿exactement quel âge elle a, mais je pense qu'elle a vingt-et-un ou vingt-deux‿ans.
Je ne crois pas qu'elle soit[1]‿aussi âgée.

26. Cette manière de s'exprimer‿est semblable en espagnol. (mă-nē‿ar'—sĕx-prē-ma'—săń-blä'-bl').

27. C'est‿exact. Nous‿employons‿aussi le verbe *avoir* en parlant‿en général des dimensions des monuments, des rivières, des routes etc. Comme par‿exemple:
Cette rivière a quatre-vingts mètres de largeur et cinquante mètres de profondeur. (dē-măń-sē‿oń'—mō-nū-măń'—rē-vē‿ar'-rōōt'—lär-zhûr' — prō-fōń-dûr').

28. Quelles dimensions a cette chambre?—Je crois qu'elle a vingt-cinq pieds de long sur quinze de large. (lär'zh').

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō nōte; ōō room.

6. Certainly, I am married. The lady is related to me. She is my cousin. (Literally: In fact (en effet), I am married. The lady in question (en question) is one of my relatives (une de mes parentes). That is my cousin (ma cousine).
7. Oh, that's different. Pray excuse my joking. (Literally: Oh, that is very different. Will you please me pardon my joke (ma plaisanterie).
8. You needn't ask my pardon on account of your little joke. Boulogne is so tiresome that I do not know how to kill the time. (Literally: It is not necessary (nécessaire) that you yourself may excuse for this little joke. Boulogne is a little monotonous (monotone) and I not know how to kill (tuer) the time).
9. What! Are you so bored! Why don't you go to the theatre or to concerts? (Literally: What! Yourself bore you (vous ennuyez-vous)? Why not go you *not* to the theatre or to some concerts)?
10. I am passionately fond of going to theatres and would gladly visit a theatre here, but am afraid I shouldn't understand anything. (Literally: I love much the theatre, and I should be very happy (très heureux) *of* there to go, but I fear *of* not anything (ne rien) to understand).

---

[1]The subjunctive is used after impersonal verbs expressing *doubt*, *wish*, *fear*, *necessity*, *indecision*, *supposition* or *surprise*.

Il est important qu'il écrive,	It is important that he should write.
Il est temps que nous partions,	It is time we should leave.
Il ne me semble pas qu'il ait tort,	It doesn't seem to me that he is wrong.

When however, a positive fact is expressed, the indicative mood must be employed:

29. Cette maison n'a-t-elle pas soixante pieds de hauteur?—Elle a au moins quatre-vingts pieds! (mŏ ‿ĭń'—pē‿ā').

30. Trouverai-je tous ces‿idiotismes dans la grammaire?—Certainement; étudiez-les donc avec soin et pratiquez-les‿avec attention jusqu'à ce qu'ils vous soient tout‿à fait familiers. (sŏ‿ĭń'—ă-tăń-sē‿ōń'—fă-mē-lē‿ā').

PHRASE PRINCIPALE.

(*Suite*).

Car j'attends‿un‿ami de Chicago et dois rester
kăr zhă-tăń' zŭń nă-mē' dŭ Chicago a dŏ‿ă' rē-stā'
à Boulogne jusqu' à ce que le vapeur arrive.
ă bōō-lōn'-y' zhūs-kăs' kŭ lŭ vă-pūr' ă-rēv'.

Car (kăr)
j'attends (zhă-tăń')
un‿ami (zŭń nă-mē')
de Chicago (dŭ Chicago)
et (a)
dois[1] (dŏ‿ă')
rester (rē-stā')
à Boulogne (ă bōō-lōn'-y')
jusqu' à ce que[2] (zhūs-kăs-kŭ)
le vapeur (lŭ vă-pūr')
arrive. (ă-rēv').

[1]See foot-notes on next page.

Theatre and Concert.

1. Why do you stay in Boulogne? The town is not very interesting; there are but few sights. (Literally: Why stay you in Boulogne? The town (la ville) is not very interesting (intéressante); there are very few of things (très peu de choses) to (à) see).
2. I don't remain in Boulogne on account of the sights I have to stay here, because I expect some one from America. (Literally: I not stay *not* in Boulogne for what there is to see, but rather (bien) because I expect a person who comes from America).
3. Whom do you expect?
4. A young lady who probably will arrive by the next steamer (le prochain vapeur).
5. A young lady! That's very interesting! I thought you were married. (=I believed (je croyais) that you were married (marié).

---

[1]**Devoir** means *to owe, ought to, should, to be to.*

Monsieur Goulet me doit cent francs; il devrait me payer,	Mr. Goulet owes me an hundred francs; he ought to pay me.
Vous devriez‿écrire‿à votre père,	You should (ought to) write to your father.
Je pense que vous devriez lui faire‿une visite,	I think you ought to pay her a visit.
Vous devriez sortir‿avec moi,	You ought to go out with me.
Je ne puis; je dois faire‿une visite,	I can't; I have to pay a call.
Vous‿auriez dû venir plus tôt,	You ought to have come sooner.
J'aurais dû le payer hier,	I should have paid him yesterday.

[2]The subjunctive mood must be employed after the following compound conjunctions:

Afin que,	in order that.	Pour que,	in order that.
á moins que (*ne*),	unless.	pourvu que,	provided.
au cas que,	in case that.	non pas que,	not that.

Le Théâtre et le Concert.

1. Pourquoi restez-vous‿à Boulogne? La ville n'est pas très‿intéressante; il y a très peu de choses‿à voir. (lă vĕl'—treh zĭń-tă-rĕs-săń'-t').

2. Je ne reste pas‿à Boulogne pour ce qu'il y a à voir, mais bien parce que j'attends‿une personne qui vient d'Amérique. (pŏor s'kēl-ē‿ă'-ă vŏ‿ăr').

3. Qui attendez-vous?
4. Une jeune dame qui arrivera très probablement par le prochain vapeur. (prŏ-shĭń').
5. Une jeune dame! C'est très‿intéressant! Je croyais que vous‿étiez marié. (mă-rē-a').

---

avant que,	before.	pour peu que,	however little.
bien que,	though.	quoique,	though.
de crainte que (*ne*), de peur que (*ne*),	for fear that.	sans que,	without.
		si tant est que,	if it is true that.
en cas que,	in case that.	soit que,	whether.
encore que,	although.	supposé que,	suppose that.
loin que,	far from.	supposons que,	let us suppose that.
malgré que,	notwithstanding.	jusqu'à ce que,	till, until.
Afin que vous sachiez,		In order that you may know.	
En cas que vous restiez‿ici,		In case you remain here.	
A moins que vous ne lui écriviez,		Unless you write to him.	

The negative **ne** is used after the following conjunctions (*without implying negation*): **à moins que; de peur que; de crainte que.**

A moins que vous ne soyez laborieux,	Unless you are industrious.
De peur (De crainte) qu'il ne se plaignît,	For fear he might complain.

---

6. Certainly, I am married. The lady is related to me. She is my cousin. (Literally: In fact (en‿effet), I am married. The lady in question (en question) is one of my relatives (une de mes parentes). That is my cousin (ma cousine).
7. Oh, that's different. Pray excuse my joking. (Literally: Oh, that is very different. Will you please me pardon my joke (ma plaisanterie).
8. You needn't ask my pardon on account of your little joke. Boulogne is so tiresome that I do not know how to kill the time. (Literally: It is not necessary (nécessaire) that you yourself may excuse for this little joke. Boulogne is a little monotonous (monotone) and I not know how to kill (tuer) the time).
9. What! Are you so bored! Why don't you go to the theatre or to concerts? (Literally: What! Yourself bore you (vous‿ennuyez-vous)? Why not go you *not* to the theatre or to some concerts)?
10. I am passionately fond of going to theatres and would gladly visit a theatre here, but am afraid I shouldn't understand anything. (Literally: I love much the theatre, and I should be very happy (très‿heureux) *of* there to go, but I fear *of* not anything (ne rien) to understand).

---

[1]The subjunctive is used after impersonal verbs expressing *doubt*, *wish*, *fear*, *necessity*, *indecision*, *supposition* or *surprise*.

Il est‿important qu'il écrive,	It is important that he should write.
Il est temps que nous partions,	It is time we should leave.
Il ne me semble pas qu'il ait tort,	It doesn't seem to me that he is wrong.

When however, a positive fact is expressed, the indicative mood must be employed:

6. En‿effet, je suis marié. La dame en question est‿une de mes parentes. C'est ma cousine. (kĕs-tĕ‿ŏń'—kōō-zēn').

7. Oh, c'est bien différent. Veuillez me pardonner ma plaisanterie (pleh-zăń-t'rē').

8. Il n'est pas nécessaire que vous vous‿excusiez[1] pour cette petite plaisanterie. Boulogne est‿un peu monotone et je ne sais[2] comment tuer le temps. (mŏ-nŏ-tŏn'—tū-a').

9. Quoi! Vous‿ennuyez-vous? Pourquoi n'allez-vous pas‿au théâtre ou dans quelques concerts? (kŏń-sär').

10. J'aime beaucoup le théâtre, et je serais très‿heureux d'y aller, mais je crains de ne rien[3] comprendre. (treh zû-rû').

Il me semble qu'il a tort, — It seems to me he is wrong.

[2]With **savoir**, to know, **pouvoir**, to be able, **oser**, to dare, **cesser**, to cease, **pas** may be omitted. The use of *pas* is however, always correct.

[3]**Ne pas, ne rien** are usually placed before the infinitive:

Je lui ai dit de ne pas courir,	I told him not to run.
Tâchez de ne pas‿être‿en retard,	Try not to be late.
Il est difficile à un garçon de ne pas courir,	It is difficult for a boy not to run.

11. And why don't you attend the concerts? There is a concert-house here. But perhaps you are not fond of music? (Literally: Then why not go you *not* to the concerts? There is here a hall of concerts (une salle de concerts). You not love perhaps *not* the music (la musique)?

12 On the contrary, I am passionately devoted to it and in Chicago I attended the symphony-concerts regularly every Saturday. (Literally: To the contrary (au contraire), I of it am foolish (fou) and in Chicago I used to assist (j'assistais) regularly (régulièrement) all the Saturdays *to* the concerts of symphony (de symphonie).

13 Very well; then accompany me this afternoon to a concert. Strauss' Band in here just now. (Literally: That is good, then come with me this afternoon (cet‿après‿midi) to the concert. The orchestra of Strauss (l'orchestre de Strauss) is here at (en) this moment (ce moment).

---

[1] **Il y a** is also used to express *time*. It must be observed that in speaking of actions or conditions begun in the past, but still continuing the French use the present indicative, while we employ the past perfect tense in English:

Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous ‿êtes‿à Paris?	How long have you been in Paris?
Il y a quinze jours que j'y suis,	I have been here a fortnight.
Il y a deux mois que j'apprends le français,	I have been studying French for two months.
Il y a dix‿ans que ma mère est morte,	My mother has been dead these ten years.

When however, the action or state no longer continues, the past is used in French:

11. Alors, pourquoi n'allez-vous pas‿aux concerts? Il y a[1] ici une salle de concerts. Vous n'aimez peut-être pas la musique? (lă mū-zĕk').

12. Au contraire, j'en suis fou et à Chicago j'assistais[2] régulièrement tous les samedis‿aux concerts de symphonie.

13. C'est bon, alors venez‿avec moi cet‿après-midi au concert. L'orchestre de Strauss est‿ici en ce moment. (lŏr-kĕs'-tr'—mŏ-măń').

Il y avait‿un mois que j'étais‿à Paris,	I had been in Paris a month.
Il y avait quatre jours qu'il pleuvait,	It had been raining four days.
Il y avait‿cinq‿ans que je *ne* l'avais vue,	It was five years since I had seen her.

Ago is always translated by **il y a** and the French verb is put in the past tense:

Je suis venu à Paris il y a trente‿ans,	I came to Paris 30 years ago.

Il y a is also used to denote distance:

Combien y a-t-il de Paris à Boulogne?	How far is it from Paris to logne?
Il y a trois cent‿milles,	It is 300 miles.

[2]A peculiar French expression; **assister** in this connection, *attend.*

ă far; ā pale; ē eve; ē there; ō note; ōō room.

14. What a fortunate occurrence! Is that the celebrated "Valse-King"? (Literally: What chance (quelle chance)! Is that the celebrated king of the valse (le célèbre "Roi de la Valse")?
15. No; John Strauss died quite a while ago (= is dead there is some time).
16. Then it is his son, the composer of "The Bat"? I saw him many years ago in Boston. (Literally: Then, that is his son, the composer (le compositeur) of the Bat (de la Chauve-Souris). I him have seen in Boston there are some years (années).
17. No, it is not he either. He does not give any concerts. He is living in Vienna and does nothing but write music. (Literally: No, that not is *not* he (lui) not more (non plus[3]). He not gives never of concerts. He lives (il vit) in Vienna (Vienne) and not makes but (que) compose (composer) of the music).

---

[1]Observe that *a* in this connection is not expressed in French.

[2]After c'est—expressed or understood—we use the personal disjunctive pronouns, as:

C'est moi qui ai,	It is I who have	*or* I have.
C'est toi qui as,	It is thou who hast	" *thou* hast.
C'est lui qui a,	It is he who has	" *he* has.
C'est elle qui a,	It is she " "	" *she* "
C'est nous qui avons,	It is we " "	" *we* have.
C'est vous qui avez,	It is you " "	" *you* "
Ce sont eux qui ont,	It is they " "	" *they* "
Ce sont elles qui ont,	It is they " "	" *they* "

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ē there; ō note; ōō room.

14. Quelle[1] chance! Est-ce le célèbre "Roi de la Valse"? (shäñ'-s'—sa-la'br' rŏ‿ä' d'la väl's')

15. Non. Jean Strauss est mort il y a quelque temps.

16. Alors c'est son fils, le compositeur de la "Chauve-Souris". Je l'ai vu à Boston il y a quelques‿années. (kŏñ-pŏ-zē-tûr—shŏv' sōō-rē'—zä-nä').

17. Non, ce[2] n'est pas lui non plus[3]. Il ne donne jamais des concerts. Il vit[4]‿à Vienne et ne fait que composer de la musique. (ēl-vē-tä-vē‿ĕn' — kŏñ-pŏ-zä').

Examples:

C'est vous qui avez raison,	It is you who are right.
Ce sont‿eux qui doivent payer,	It is they who ought to pay.

[3]Must be given so, as for instance:

Allez-vous‿au concert?	Are you going to the concert?
Non, je n'y vais pas,	No, I am not.
Ni moi non plus,	Neither am I.

[4]**Vivre,** to live; **vivant,** living; **vécu,** lived.

Pres: Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vivons, vous vivez, ils vivent.
Imp: Je vivais, tu vivais, il vivait, nous vivions, etc.
Fut: Je vivrai, tu vivras, il vivra, nous vivrons, etc.
Cond: Je vivrais, tu vivrais, il vivrait, nous vivrions, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que je vive, que tu vives, qu'il vive, que nous vivions, que vous viviez, qu'ils vivent.

---

18. Well, who is it? Perhaps it is a distant relative of his? (Literally: Then who is this? This is perhaps a relative distant (un parent‿éloigné)?
19. On the contrary, it is a very near (proche) relative. It is Edouard Strauss, the brother of John.
20. Ah, now I remember him. Some years since he was in America with his Band and made a tour through the United States. (Literally: Oh, now I myself him remember. There are some years he *is* come to (en) America with his orchestra and has made several tours (tournées) in the States-United).
21. And did you hear him? Do you like him? He leads splendidly, does he not and his band plays dance-music better than any other musicians? (Literally: Him have you heard? How him find you? He leads splendidly. Not is this not that he and his orchestra interpret (interprètent) the music of dance better than all the other musicians (musiciens)?
22. I don't know about that. Personally I dislike him very much. (Literally: I not know *not*. As to him (quant‿à lui) I him detest (déteste).
23. And why? He is a handsome and attractive man. (Literally: Why? This is a handsome man, very attractive (attrayant).
24. He is indeed, but that is exactly the reason why I dislike him. (Literally: This is true, but exactly (justement) for this reason (cette raison) I not him like *not*.)
25. But that is a contradiction. How do you explain that?

18. Alors qui est-ce? C'est peut-être‿un parent‿éloigné? (pă-răń-ta-lŏ‿ăn-yă').
19. Au contraire, c'est‿un parent très proche, c'est‿Edouard Strauss, le frère de Jean. (prŏsh').

20. Oh, maintenant je me le rappelle. Il y a quelques années il est venu en‿Amérique avec son‿orchestre et a fait plusieurs tournées dans les‿Etats-Unis. (plū-zē‿ûr' tŏŏr-na').

21. L'avez-vous‿entendu? Comment le trouvez-vous? Il conduit splendidement. N'est-ce pas que lui et son‿orchestre, interprètent la musique de danse mieux que tous les‿autres musiciens? (kŏń-dū‿ē' splăń-dē-dŭ-măń' — ień-tēr-prat' — mū-zē-sē‿ień').

22. Je ne sais pas. Quant‿à lui je le déteste. (kăń-tă-lū‿ē' jŭl'-da-tĕst'),

23. Pourquoi? C'est‿un bel‿homme, très‿attrayant! (treh zā-trā-yăń').

24. C'est vrai, mais justement pour cette raison je ne l'aime pas.(zhŭs-tŭ-măń').

25. C'est‿une contradiction! Comment‿expliquez-vous cela? (kŏń-trā-dĕk-sē‿ŏń').

ă far; ā pale; ĕ eve; ê there; ŏ note; ŏŏ room.

26. Well, that is quite obvious, I should think. He is handsome and like all handsome men he is conceited. (Literally: Well, this is enough clear (clair) I think. He is handsome and like (comme) all the men handsome he is vain (vain).
27. There you are right. Handsome men are generally much more vain and conceited than beautiful women, and a conceited man is absolutely disgusting to me. (Literally: You have right. The men handsome are generally more vain and more conceited than the pretty (jolies) women. A man conceited me is absolutely insupportable (insupportable).
28. That's my case too; a vain man disgusts me. (Literally: This is the same thing for me; a man conceited me disgusts (dégoûte)?
29. And Strauss has disgusted you (=and Strauss you has disgusted (dégouté)?
30. Yes, he is distasteful to me. He dances while leading and is as affected as a young girl in her first ball-dress. (Literally: Yes, he me disgusts. He dances (il danse) in (en) leading his orchestra, and he is affected (maniéré) as a young girl (une jeune fille) in her first dress of ball (robe de bal).
31. Yes, affected and conceited he is. But do you know what the difference between "*vain*" and "*vin*" is? (Literally: Yes, he is affected and very vain. But know you what is the difference (la différence) between "vain" (conceited) and "vin" (wine)?
32. No, I don't; the two words sound alike. (Literally: No, I *not* of it know nothing These two words seem to sound (sonner) *of* same (de même).

26. Eh bien, c'est‿assez clair je pense. Il est beau et comme tous les‿hommes beaux il est vain. (vĭń).

27 Vous‿avez raison. Les‿hommes beaux sont généralement plus vains‿et plus fats que les jolies femmes. Un‿homme fat m'est‿absolument‿insupportable. (leh-zŏm'-bŏ'—fă—leh zhŏ-lē-făm'—ma-tăb-sŏ-lū-măń-tĭń-sū-pŏr-tă'bl').

28. C'est la même chose pour moi; un‿homme fat me dégoûte. (da-gōōt').

29. Et Strauss vous‿a dégoûté? (da-gōō-ta').

30. Oui, il me dégoûte. Il danse en conduisant son‿orchestre; et il est maniéré comme une jeune fille dans sa première robe de bal. (fē'-yū—băl).

31. Oui, il est maniéré et très vain. Mais savez-vous quelle est la différence entre "*vain*" et "*vin*"?

32. Non, je n'en sais rien. Ces deux mots semblent sonner de même.

ă far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

33. Yes, they sound the same, but that is the whole resemblance. The difference as to meaning however is very great and important. (Literally: They sound *of* same, but there only limits itself (se borne) the resemblance (la ressemblance). The difference in the signification is enough great and enough important)

34. Please explain it to me. I am always anxious to learn something new. (Literally: Will you please me it explain. I desire always to learn some thing *of* new).

35. Are you simply curious or desirous of information? (Literally: Is this simple curiosity (curiosité) or desire (désir) *of* you to instruct (instruire)?

36 No, I am not curious (curieux).

37. Does your wife say that too about you? In my experience I have always found that men are at least as curious as women. (Literally: Your wife says she this equally (également) in speaking of you? According to me (suivant moi) I have always seen that the men were at least as curious as the women).

38. Generally speaking, you may be right; but as far as I am concerned, it is really not the case. (Literally: If you speak in general, you have right; but in this which me concerns (concerne), truly this not is *not* the case)

39. Well, there are exceptions to every rule. (Literally: There not is *not* of rule without exception).

40. Is that a French proverb? I like it better than ours. (Literally: Is this a proverb (un proverbe) French? I it like better than the ours).

33. Ils sonnent de même, mais là seulement se borne la ressemblance. La différence dans la signification est‿assez grande et assez‿importante. (rë-säń-bläń'-s'—dë-fa-räń'-s'—sën-yë-fë-kä-së‿öń'—ä-seh-zlń-pör-tań'-t').

34. Veuillez me l'expliquer. Je désire toujours‿apprendre quelque chose de nouveau.

35. Est-ce simple curiosité ou désir de vous‿instruire? (slń'-pl' kū-rë‿ö-zë-ta' öo da-zër'—zlń-strū-ër')

36. Non, je ne suis pas curieux. (kū-rë‿ū').

37. Votre femme dit-elle cela également‿en parlant de vous? Suivant moi j'ai toujours vu que les‿hommes‿étaient‿au moins‿aussi curieux que les femmes (a-gäl'-mäń'—sū‿ë-väń').

38. Si vous parlez‿en général, vous‿avez raison, mais‿en ce qui me concerne, vraiment! ce n'est pas le cas. (zha-na-räl'—köń-sër'n'—lū kä).

39. Il n'y a pas de règle sans‿exception. (säń-zëg-sëp-së‿öń').

40. Est-ce‿un proverbe français? Je l'aime mieux que le nôtre. (prö-vërb').

---

41. Yes, there is at least more sense to it. The English proverb seems positive nonsense. How can the exception prove the rule? (Literally: Yes, it has at least more of sense. The proverb English seems a real (réel) nonsense (non-sens). How the exception can *she* prove (prouver) the rule)?
42. Don't let us dispute whether it is nonsense or not. I am not fond of disputations. I prefer that you explain the difference between "*vain*" and "*vin*" to me. (Literally: Not let us discuss (ne discutons pas) if this is a nonsense or not. I not like *not* the discussions (les discussions). I prefer that you me may explain the difference between "*vain*" and "*vin*").
43. I am not particularly fond of disputations myself. What do they amount to in the end? (Literally: I not like not particularly (particulièrement) the discussions myself. To what tend they (aboutissent-elles)?
44. In most cases to nothing at all, especially where the dispute refers to politics or religion. (Literally: To nothing at all in the most (la plupart) of the cases, especially when the discussion tends (porte) to the politics (sur la politique) or the religion (la religion).
45. These are subjects which in the English army for instance, are never touched. (Literally: *This* are of the subjects which in the army English (l'armée anglaise) for instance not are never broached upon (abordés).
46. And is that also the case in the French army?

[1]Generally we would say "*ou non*", but in order to avoid the repetition of the two *non*, pas is preferred here.

41. Oui, il y a au moins plus de sens. Le proverbe anglais semble un réel non-sens. Comment l'exception peut-elle prouver la règle? (sańs'—rä-ël nöń-sań's—lëg-sëp-së‿öń').

42 Ne discutons pas si c'est‿un non-sens‿ou pas[1]. Je n'aime pas les discussions. Je préfère que vous m'expliquiez la différence entre "vain" et "vin". (dës-kü-së‿öń'—dë-fa-räń'-s').

43. Je n'aime pas particulièrement les discussions moi-même. A quoi aboutissent-elles? (ä-bœ̈-tës'-tël').

44. A rien du tout dans la plupart des cas, surtout quand la discussion porte sur la politique ou la religion. (sür-tœ̈'—pö-lë-tëk'—rü-lë-zhë‿öń').

45. Ce sont des sujets qui dans l'armée anglaise par‿exemple ne sont jamais‿abordés. (zhä-meh-zä-bör-da').

46. Est-ce‿aussi le cas dans l'armée française?

ä far; ā pale; ë ëve; ê there; ö note; öö röom.

Unfortunately not. Our officers and soldiers discuss politics with predilection and our ministers set the examples. (Literally: Unfortunately (malheureusement) no. Our officers (nos‿officiers) and soldiers (soldats) discuss the politics with ardor (avec ardeur) and the ministers themselves (les ministres‿eux-mêmes) of it give the example).

48. You have many soldiers in France, haven't you?

49. Unfortunately by far too many. Militarism is the misfortune of our century and I fear all Europe will be wrecked by it. (Literally: Unfortunately much too much. The militarism (le militarisme) is the plague (la plaie) of our century and I fear that all the Europe *not* may be led (menée) thus to its ruin (à sa ruine).

50. In that regard we Americans are fortunate. We have but a small army; we fear no war; we live in peace with all nations and the people govern themselves. (Literally: We *other* Americans we are very happy under this respect (sous ce rapport). We have a small army, we not fear *not* the war (la guerre) and live in peace (en paix) with all the nations, we ourselves govern ourselves (nous nous gouvernons nous-mêmes).

---

[1]**Craindre,** to fear; **craignant,** fearing; **craint,** feared.

Pres: Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils [craignent.

Imp: Je craignais, tu craignais, il craignait, nous craignions, etc.

47. Malheureusement non. Nos‿officiers‿et soldats discutent la politique avec ardeur, et les ministres ‿eux-mêmes‿en donnent l'exemple. (nō-zō-fē-sē ‿a-za-sōl-dä' dēs-kût'—ăr-dûr'—leh mē-nēs'-tr'-zû-mêm').

48. Vous‿avez beaucoup de soldats‿en France, n'est-ce pas?

49. Malheureusement beaucoup trop. Le militarisme est la plaie de notre siècle, et je crains que toute l'Europe ne soit menée ainsi à sa ruine. (mē-lē-tä-rēs'-m'—lä plai—tōōt' lû-rōp'—mü-nä'—rü-ēn').

50. Nous‿autres‿Américains nous sommes très‿heureux sous ce rapport. Nous‿avons‿une petite‿armée; nous ne craignons[1] pas la guerre et vivons‿en paix‿avec toutes les nations, nous nous gouvernons nous-mêmes. (lä gair'—vē-voń-zäń-pal—nä-sē‿ōń'—gōō-vēr-nōń').

Fut: Je craindrai, tu craindras, il craindra, nous craindrons, etc.
Cond: Je craindrais, tu craindrais, il craindrait, nous craindrions, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que je craigne, que tu craignes, qu'il craigne, que nous [craignions, que vous craigniez, qu'ils craignent.

Simple as these rules are, *their* practical application gives great trouble to the student, especially in compound tenses.

The following tables have been used by thousands of my pupils who found them helpful.

Position of the Pronoun-Objects in Simple Tenses.

Affirmative.	Negative.	Question.	Negative Question.
je ◡ —	je ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — je?	ne ◡ — je pas?
tu ◡ —	tu ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — tu?	ne ◡ — tu pas?
il ◡ —	il ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — il?	ne ◡ — t-il pas?
nous ◡ —	nous ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — nous?	ne ◡ — nous pas?
vous ◡ —	vous ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — vous?	ne ◡ — vous pas?
ils ◡ —	ils ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — ils?	ne ◡ — ils pas?

Key to the Table.

This sign ◡ indicates the place where the pronouns have to be put.

It is immaterial whether there be one or two pronouns, their place is always where this sign ◡ is.

The verb goes where this sign — stands, whether it is the Present, Imperfect, Historical Tense, Future or Conditional.

Examples

Affirmative.

Je vous vois,	I see you.
Je le voyais,	I used to see him.
Je la verrai,	I shall see her.
Je les verrais,	I should see them.
Il me comprend,	He understands me.

diately after the verb (*do you, does he, did she, did we?* etc., is not expressed), as:

Parle-t-il?	Does he speak?
Comprenez-vous?	Do you understand?
Qu'a-t-il dit?	What did he say?
Avez-vous reçu?	Did you receive? etc.

3. The pronouns-objects, *i. e.*, the dative and accusative cases **me, te, lui, le, la, nous, vous, leur, les** are placed *immediately before* the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a *compound* one, as:

Je vous vois,	I see you.
Il me parle,	He speaks to me.
Nous vous envoyons,	We send you.
Vous lui apportez,	You bring him (—to him).
Je vous ai compris,	I have understood you.
Il m'a vu,	He has seen me.
Je lui ai écrit,	I wrote her (—to her).
Je leur ai dit,	I told them (—to them).

4. In negative sentences **ne** is placed directly after the subject (and before the pronoun-object), as:

Il ne me voit pas,	He does not see me.
Je ne lui parle pas,	I do not speak to him.
Vous ne me comprenez pas,	You don't understand me.
Je ne vous ai pas compris,	I did not understand you.
Il ne lui a pas écrit,	He did not write to her.
Il ne leur a pas envoyé,	He has not sent to them.

5. When a verb governs *two* pronouns they are both placed immediately before the verb (so that the one in the dative comes first and the accusative follows).

This rule applies only to **me le** (*or* la, les,) **te le** (*or* la, les), **nous le** (*or* la, les), **vous le** (*or* la les).

Observe that we always say **le** (la) **lui** and **le** (la) **leur.**

Simple as these rules are, *their* practical application gives great trouble to the student, especially in compound tenses.

The following tables have been used by thousands of my pupils who found them helpful.

Position of the Pronoun-Objects in Simple Tenses.

Affirmative.	Negative.	Question.	Negative Question.
je ◡ —	je ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — je?	ne ◡ — je pas?
tu ◡ —	tu ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — tu?	ne ◡ — tu pas?
il ◡ —	il ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — il?	ne ◡ — t-il pas?
nous ◡ —	nous ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — nous?	ne ◡ — nous pas?
vous ◡ —	vous ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — vous?	ne ◡ — vous pas?
ils ◡ —	ils ne ◡ — pas.	◡ — ils?	ne ◡ — ils pas?

Key to the Table.

This sign ◡ indicates the place where the pronouns have to be put.

It is immaterial whether there be one or two pronouns, their place is always where this sign ◡ is.

The verb goes where this sign — stands, whether it is the Present, Imperfect, Historical Tense, Future or Conditional.

Examples

Affirmative.

Je vous vois,	I see you.
Je le voyais,	I used to see him.
Je la verrai,	I shall see her.
Je les verrais,	I should see them.
Il me comprend,	He understands me.

Il vous le donnerait,	He would give it to you.
Nous le ferions,	We should do it.
Nous le leur enverrons,	We shall send it to them.
Vous me le donnerez,	You will give it to me.
Vous le lui direz,	You will tell it to him (*or* her).
Ils le font,	They do it.
Ils vous l'enverront,	They will send it to you.
Il le lui enverront,	They will send it to him (*or* her).

Negative.

Je ne vous vois pas,	I do not see you.
Je ne le voyais pas,	I did not use to see him.
Je ne la verrai pas,	I shall not see her.
Je ne les verrais pas,	I should not see them.
Il ne me comprend pas,	He does not understand me.
Il ne vous le donnerait pas,	He would not give it to you.
Nous ne le ferions pas,	We should not do it.
Nous ne le leur enverrons pas,	We shall not send it to them.
Vous ne me le donnerez pas,	You will not give it to me.
Vous ne le lui direz pas,	You will not tell it to him (*or* her).
Ils ne le font pas,	They don't do it.
Ils ne vous l'enverront pas,	They will not send it to you.
Ils ne le lui enverront pas,	They will not send it to him (*or* her).

Questions.

Vous vois-je? / **Est-ce que je vous vois?**	Do I see you?
Le voyais-je? / **Est-ce que je le voyais?**	Did I use to see him?
La verrai-je? / **Est-ce que je la verrai?**	Shall I see her?
Les verrais-je? / **Est-ce que je les verrais?**	Should I see them?
Me comprend-il?	Does he understand me?
Vous le donnerait-il?	Would he give it you?
Le ferions-nous?	Should we do it?
Le leur enverrons-nous?	Shall we send it to them?
Me le donnerez-vous?	Will you give it to me?
Le lui direz-vous?	Will you tell it to him (*or* her)?
Le font-ils?	Do they do it?
Vous l'enverront-ils?	Will they send it to you?
Le lui enverront-ils?	Will they send it to him (*or* her)?

Vous ne le leur‿auriez pas‿apporté,	You would not have brought it to them.
Ils ne l'ont pas refusé,	They did not refuse it.
Ils ne nous l'auraient pas‿envoyé,	They would not have sent it to us.

Questions.

Vous ai-je compris? Est-ce que je vous‿ai compris?	Did I understand you?
L'ai-je vu? Est-ce que je l'ai vu?	Did I see him?
L'aurais-je fait? Est-ce que je l'aurais fait?	Would I have done it?
Vous l'a-t-il envoyé?	Did he send it to you?
M'aurait-il vu?	Would he have seen me?
Me l'aurait-il dit?	Would he have told it to me?
Le lui avons-nous‿écrit?	Did we write it to him (*or* her)?
Vous l'aurions-nous donné?	Would we have given it to you?
L'avez-vous‿acheté?	Did you buy it?
Le leur‿auriez-vous‿apporté?	Would you have brought it to them?
L'ont-ils refusé?	Did they refuse it?
Nous l'auraient-ils‿envoyé?	Would they have sent it to us?

Negative Questions.

Ne vous‿ai-je pas compris? Est ce que je ne vous‿ai pas compris?	Did I not understand you?
Ne l'ai-je pas vu? Est-ce que je ne l'ai pas vu?	Did I not see him?
Ne l'aurais-je pas fait? Est-ce que je ne l'aurais pas fait?	Would I not have done it?
Ne vous l'a-t-il pas‿envoyé?	Didn't he send it to you?
Ne m'aurait-il pas vu?	Would'nt he have seen me?
Ne me l'aurait il pas dit?	Wouldn't he have told it to me?
Ne le lui avons nous pas‿écrit?	Didn't we write him (*or* her) so?
Ne vous l'aurions-nous pas donné?	Wouldn't we have given it to you?
Ne l'avez-vous pas‿acheté?	Did you not buy it?
Ne le leur‿auriez-vous pas‿apporté?	Wouldn't you have brought it to them?
Ne l'ont-ils pas refusé?	Haven't they refused it?
Ne nous l'auraient-ils pas‿envoyé?	Wouldn't they have sent it to us?

Key to the Table.

This sign ‿ indicates the place where the pronouns have to be put.

It is immaterial whether there be two pronouns or one. Their place is always where this sign ‿ is.

The past participle goes where this sign —— stands, whether the verb stands in the Past Perfect, Pluperfect, the Future (past) or Conditional (past).

Examples:

Affirmative.

Je vous‿ai compris,	I have understood you.
Je l'ai vu,	I saw him.
Je l'aurais fait,	I would have done it.
Il vous l'a envoyé,	He sent it to you.
Il m'aurait vu,	He would have seen me.
Il me l'aurait dit,	He would have told me.
Nous le lui avons‿écrit,	We wrote it to him (*or* her).
Nous vous l'aurions donné,	We would have given it to you.
Vous l'avez‿acheté	You bought it.
Vous le leur‿auriez‿apporté,	You would have brought it to them.
Ils l'ont refusé,	They refused it.
Ils nous l'auraient‿envoyé,	They would have sent it to us.

Negative.

Je ne vous‿ai pas compris,	I did not understand you.
Je ne l'ai pas vu,	I did not see him.
Je ne l'aurais pas fait,	I would not have done it.
Il ne vous l'a pas‿envoyé,	He did not send it to you.
Il ne m'aurait pas vu,	He would not have seen me.
Nous ne le lui avons pas‿écrit,	We did not write it to him (*or* her).
Nous ne vous l'aurions pas donné	We shouldn't have given it to you.
Vous ne l'avez pas‿acheté,	You did not buy it.

Vous ne le leur‿auriez pas‿apporté,	You would not have brought it to them.
Ils ne l'ont pas refusé,	They did not refuse it.
Ils ne nous l'auraient pas‿envoyé,	They would not have sent it to us.

Questions.

Vous ai-je compris? Est-ce que je vous‿ai compris?	Did I understand you?
L'ai-je vu? Est-ce que je l'ai vu?	Did I see him?
L'aurais-je fait? Est-ce que je l'aurais fait?	Would I have done it?
Vous l'a-t-il envoyé?	Did he send it to you?
M'aurait-il vu?	Would he have seen me?
Me l'aurait-il dit?	Would he have told it to me?
Le lui avons-nous‿écrit?	Did we write it to him (*or* her)?
Vous l'aurions-nous donné?	Would we have given it to you?
L'avez-vous‿acheté?	Did you buy it?
Le leur‿auriez-vous‿apporté?	Would you have brought it to them?
L'ont-ils refusé?	Did they refuse it?
Nous l'auraient-ils‿envoyé?	Would they have sent it to us?

Negative Questions.

Ne vous‿ai-je pas compris? Est-ce que je ne vous‿ai pas compris?	Did I not understand you?
Ne l'ai-je pas vu? Est-ce que je ne l'ai pas vu?	Did I not see him?
Ne l'aurais-je pas fait? Est-ce que je ne l'aurais pas fait?	Would I not have done it?
Ne vous l'a-t-il pas‿envoyé?	Didn't he send it to you?
Ne m'aurait-il pas vu?	Would'nt he have seen me?
Ne me l'aurait-il pas dit?	Wouldn't he have told it to me?
Ne le lui avons nous pas‿écrit?	Didn't we write him (*or* her) so?
Ne vous l'aurions-nous pas donné?	Wouldn't we have given it to you?
Ne l'avez-vous pas‿acheté?	Did you not buy it?
Ne le leur‿auriez-vous pas‿apporté?	Wouldn't you have brought it to them?
Ne l'ont-ils pas refusé?	Haven't they refused it?
Ne nous l'auraient-ils pas‿envoyé?	Wouldn't they have sent it to us?

Recapitulation of the Above Rules.

1. The place of the pronoun-objects is before the verb, whether there be two pronouns or one, and whether the verb stands in a simple or compound tense[1].

2. When there are two pronoun-objects, **le, la** or **les** take the second place, except when the other pronoun is **lui** or **leur**, when they come first.

There is only

One Exception

to these rules:

When the verb stands in the affirmative Imperative, the pronoun-objects are placed just as in English:

Donnez-**le moi**,	Give it to me.
Envoyez-**les leur**,	Send it to them.
Parlez-moi,	Speak to me.
Dites-le lui,	Tell it to him (*or* her).

The following simple table illustrates all possible positions of

Two Pronoun-Objects before the Verb

Me **Te** **Nous** **Vous**	**Le** **La** **Les**	**Lui** **Leur**

Key to the Table.

Cover the right-hand square (containing **lui** and **leur**), and you will see that **le, la** and **les** always follow after **me, te, nous** and **vous.**

Then cover the left-hand square (containing **me, te, nous** and **vous**), and it will be clear to you that **le, la** and **les** always precede **lui** and **leur.**

[1] *Me* and *to me*—**me**, before the verb in all tenses and moods, except in the **affirmative Imperative**, when it is rendered by **moi.** The same is true of **te** and **toi**, *thee, to thee.*

Translate this Exercise on the Pronouns

and send it to our *Correspondence Department* for correction.

What did you write him?—I wrote him to send us these goods at once.—Has he sent them?—We received a letter yesterday that he had sent them, but we have not as yet received them.—What would you have done in my place? Would you have spoken to him about this matter or not?—If I had been in your place I would not have spoken to him about it. I would have handed him the money and that is all.—Did you buy these gloves in this store?—No, I bought them in London.—Have you worn them long?—I have worn them for two months.—If you see him, give him this package and tell him to come to see me.—Did you study the rules which I gave you?—I studied them and think I know them.—Did you write any exercises about the pronouns?—Yes sir, but I left them at home. I forgot to bring them.—Bring them to me this afternoon and I will correct them.—I will do so without fail.—I should be very much obliged to you if you were to ask him to send me the patterns (les échantillons) which I selected a fortnight ago.—I beg your pardon sir; I did not understand you.—I told you to ask him to send me the patterns which I selected.—When did you chose them?—I selected them a fortnight ago.—If Mr. Bronsard should come, tell him that I could not wait for him any longer.—Did you see him to-day?—No, I saw him yesterday when he was going to the post-office.—Did you speak to him?—No, sir, I did not. Hasn't the laundress (la blanchisseuse, blăń-shē-sûz') brought my linen (mon linge, lĭń'-zh') yet?—Yes, she brought it

this morning and I put it on your bed.—Where did you put it?—I put it on your bed, sir.—Did you brush (brossé) my clothes, waiter?—Yes, sir, I did. I put them on the chair in your room.—Did you tell him to go to the bank?—Yes, I told him so.—Did you check the baggage and did you give her the check?—I gave it to her last evening, but she has mislaid (égaré) it and can not find it.—Did any one call during my absence?—Two of your countrymen came to pay you a call.—Didn't they leave (laissé) their cards with you?—They told me their names, but upon my word (ma foi!), I have forgotten them.—Do not speak to him about this affair.—Don't tell them anything about my business.—Tell it to him.—Do not tell it to them.

En and Y.

1. **En** and **y** are treated like pronoun-objects and stand always before the verb, except of course, in the affirmative Imperative.
2. When **en** or **y** meets with another personal pronoun it is always placed *last*, as: Je m'en souviens, I remember.—Je l'y ai mené, I led him there.—Je vous‿en‿ai parlé, I spoke to you about it.
3. After the affirmative Imperative **en** and **y** come *after* the verb: Donnez-m'en, Give me some.—Allez-y, Go there. But with the negative Imperative: Ne m'en donnez pas, Don't give me any.—N'y allez pas, Don't go there.

Exercise.

To be sent for correction to our *Correspondence Department.*

Show me some good steel pens (de bonnes plumes

métalliques).—Here are some excellent ones.—Waiter, I have no napkin.—Here is one, sir.—If you need good sugar, we can furnish (fournir) you some at a very low price (à bien bon marché).—No thanks, I don't need any at present.—I do not like this room. Haven't you another one which you can give me?—We have none on this floor, sir.—Waiter, bring me a decanter of ice-water (une caraffe frappée), if you please.—We haven't any, sir, but I'll bring you some ice (de la glace) on a plate, if you like.—This roast-beef is excellent. May I not help you to some more (encore)?—This meat is very tender (tendre). May I offer you (vous‿en‿offrirai-je encore) a piece (un morceau)?—Give me a very small piece only; I haven't any appetite.—You are giving me too much (trop); give me only half of it (la moitié).—Do you want a fork?—Thanks, I have one.—I want to change this bill. Have you any gold (de l'or)?—I haven't any at present, but I shall have some in a few minutes.—Have you a few more five franc pieces?—I have a few more. (=Have you still some pieces (pièces) of five francs? I of them have still some (quelques-unes).—Have you any change with you?—No, I haven't any.—Are you going to the bank?—No, I am not going there.—One second-class ticket for Boulogne, if you please!—There are none (sold); this is an express train. Only first-class tickets sold.—Please go into the waiting-room. I shall be there in two minutes.—Conductor, two seats for Lyon, please.—There are no more in these carriages; further down, please (descendez du train).—Is it far from here to the Champs-Elysées (shăń za-lē-za')?—This street doesn't lead there at all.—Don't you need any gloves?—Yes, I need two pairs.—This pair is too narrow for me.—Pass

the gloves to me, if you please; I'll put a little powder in them.

Exercise.

Translate all exercises into English, then render them into French—without consulting my books—and send them to our *Correspondence Department* for correction.

Arrivée A Paris.[1]

Aussitôt descendu du wagon, le voyageur sortira de la gare pour retenir soit‿un‿omnibus de famille, soit‿une voiture de place, dont‿il gardera avec soin le numéro qui lui aura été délivré par le cocher.

Un certain nombre de voitures‿à quatre places stationnent[2] près des gares, mais‿il faut se hâter[3] pour ‿en retenir‿une.

Les cochers des voitures‿à deux places acceptent généralement de placer‿une malle à côté d'eux.

Si l'on‿est nombreux[4], ou si l'on‿a beaucoup de bagages, il vaudra[5] toujours mieux retenir‿un‿omnibus de famille.

Après s'être‿assuré de sa voiture, le voyageur rentrera dans‿une salle d'attente spéciale. Il devra rester là jusqu'au moment où un‿employé de la gare viendra ouvrir[6] les portes‿et invitera les voyageurs‿à reconnaître leurs bagages, lesquels leur seront remis‿en‿échange[7] du bulletin d'enregistrement délivré au départ.

[1]These exercises contain a great many useful hints for tourists and give a great deal of information in regard to cabs, hotels, boarding-houses, sights, customs, etc.—[2]Stationner, to stand.—[3]Se hâter, to hurry, to hasten.—[4]Nombreux, numerous.—[5]Il vaudra mieux, it will be better.—[6]Ouvrir, to open.—[7]En échange, in exchange.

Le voyageur devra ensuite[1] dire‿à l'employé de l'octroi[2] s'il n'a rien‿à déclarer; l'employé visitera les bagages et les marquera à la craie[3] d'un signe conventionnel[4].

Les bagages‿enregistrés‿à l'étranger pour Paris et qui n'auraient pas‿été visités‿à la douane-frontière[5], doivent‿également‿être soumis[6]‿au visa des‿employés de la douane.

Un facteur se chargera ensuite de les transporter‿à la voiture choisie[7] et dont‿on lui donnera le numéro, si c'est‿une voiture de place.

La rémunération‿à donner‿au facteur est de dix sous et au-dessus,[8] suivant le nombre des colis.

Voitures De Place Ou Fiacres.

Les voitures de places‿ou fiacres stationnent près des gares‿et des monuments, sur les places‿et les boulevards, et, le soir, à la sortie[1] des théâtres.

Les voitures‿à deux places sont propres‿et bien‿attelées[2], mais sous le rapport des voitures‿à quatre places, Paris est‿au-dessous[3] de bien des‿autres capitales de l'Europe et même de certaines villes de France.

Il est‿à peu près[4]‿impossible de trouver sur la voie[5]

---

[1]Ensuite, afterwards, then.
[2]L'employé de l'octroi, custom-house officer.
[3]La craie, the chalk.
[4]With a conventional (usual) sign.
[5]Custom-house at the frontier.
[6]Soumettre, to submit; soumis, submitted.
[7]Choisir, to choose to select.
[8]Over, above.
[1]At the exit, outlet.
[2]Atteler, to harness up, to put to. Les voitures sont bien‿attelées, the carriages are well appointed, equipped.
[3]Below.

publique une voiture fermée à quatre places, propre‿ et large, dans laquelle une famille de quatre personnes puisse s'asseoir‿à l'aise[6] pour se rendre‿au théâtre ou en soirée.

Le strapontin[7], qui se trouve dans certaines voitures, n'est commode qu'avec un‿enfant, mais lorsque l'on‿ est trois grandes[8] personnes, il constitue[9] un véritable supplice[10].

Quand‿on prend‿une voiture‿à l'heure,[11] il faut‿ avoir soin: 1°de demander‿au cocher son numéro et de le garder en cas de difficultés‿ultérieures; 2°de regarder sa montre et de controler l'heure‿avec la montre du cocher.

Les cochers de Paris n'aiment généralement pas marcher‿à l'heure; mais quand‿ils stationnent, ils sont‿obligés de le faire; s'ils font des difficultés, on n'a qu'à s'adresser‿au gardien[12] de la station.

L'usage s'est‿établi de donner‿au cocher un pourboire de trois‿à dix sous ou plus, suivant la longeur de la course[13] ou le nombre d'heures pendant lesquelles la voiture aura été employée.

Dans‿aucun cas, les cochers ne pourront‿exiger[14] de pourboire des voyageurs.

---

[6]Almost.
[8]La voie, the track, course, road.
[6]At ease, comfortably.
[7]A small seat which is folded up when not required.
[8]Grown-up, adult.
[9]It constitutes.
[10]Le supplice, punishment, torment.
[11]On time, à l'heure.
[12]The superintendent.
[13]La course, the drive. A tarif giving the price of fares, is found in every cab.
[14]To exact.

Omnibus et Tramways.[1]

La Compagnie génerale des omnibus possède 52 lignes[2] d'omnibus et de tramways, désignées par une ou plusieurs lettres de l'alphabet.

Chacune des voitures d'omnibus contient[3] 36 ou 38 places, dont 14 à l'intérieur, et 12 ou 14 à l'impériale[4]; de nouvelles voitures, mises en service sur quelques lignes, contiennent 50 places, dont 16 à l'intérieur, 30 à l'impériale et 4 sur le plate-forme.

Une place d'intérieur ou de plate-forme coûte 30 centimes (6 sous), quelle que soit la longeur du parcours[5], et donne droit à un billet de correspondance[6] qu'il faut réclamer[7] en payant sa place et conserver[8] pour le remettre avec le numéro d'ordre, qu'on devra prendre au bureau en descendant de voiture, au conducteur de la voiture de correspondance.

Une place d'impériale coûte 15 centimes (3 sous); avec correspondance 30 centimes (6 sous).

Les voitures des différentes lignes se reconnaissent, le jour, à leur couleur, et le soir, à leurs lanternes.

Une plaque de verre[9], transparente le soir, apposée[10]

---

[1]The origin of the word tramway has seen explained before.

[2]La ligne (lēn'-y'), the line.

[3]Contenir, to contain.

[4]L'impériale, the roof of an omnibus or cab.

[5]Whatever the length of the ride may be.

[6]A transfer—ticket.

[7]To demand, to ask for.

[8]To retain, to preserve.

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

au-dessus de la portière[10] et portant le mot "*Complet*",[11] indique au public que toutes les places d'intérieur et de plate-forme sont occupées.

Quand on se présente à l'une des stations des omnibus, il faut dire, en entrant, où l'on désire aller et prendre un numéro d'ordre[12] délivré par le contrôleur, car le conducteur fait l'appel[13] des numéros à l'arrivée de la voiture.

Si l'on perd dans un omnibus quelque objet de valeur[14], on doit le réclamer au dernier bureau de la ligne d'omnibus que l'on a prise, avant de faire sa déclaration à la préfecture de police.

Choix d'un Quartier.—Hôtels.

Le choix[1] d'un logement, à Paris, est généralement déterminé d'abord[2] par le but[3] de voyage, ensuite par le budget[4] de chaque voyageur.

Le prix des logements varie[5] dans des proportions énormes, suivant la saison, le quartier[6], le rang de l'hôtel et la mode de location[7] (au jour, à la semaine ou au mois).

---

[9]Une plaque de verre, a glass-plate.

[10]Placed above the door.

[11]Full, all seats taken.—People get a seat in French street-cars or *'busses*. Every person receives a number at the various starting or stopping places and passengers receive seats according to their number.

[12]See Note 11.

[13]Calls out.

[14]Some valuable object (=object of value).

See foot-notes on next page.

Dans certains quartiers (rue et faubourg Montmartre, rue Saint-Honoré, rue Richelieu, environs[8] du Palais-Royal, et, sur la rive gauche[9], rue de Seine, rue Bonaparte, etc.) on‿obtient pour 4 à 5 francs par jour une chambre‿au premier‿ou au second‿étage, sur la rue[10], suffisamment grande et comfortable[11], tandis que[12], dans les quartiers de la Chaussée-d'Antin, du faubourg Saint-Honoré, des Champs-Elysées, des Tuileries, on‿est, pour les mêmes prix, logé au quatrième ou au cinquième‿étage, le plus souvent sur‿une cour[13].

Dans la plupart des‿hôtels du second‿ordre[14], quel que soit le quartier[15], on peut trouver pour 3 francs par jour une chambre fort modeste sans doute, mais propre, et une chambre fort convenable[16] pour 5 à 6 francs.

Le maximum est, dans les‿hôtels de premier rang, de 25 à 35 francs par jour, pour chambre‿à coucher‿et salon.

Le prix des chambres‿au mois suit[17]‿une moyenne proportionnelle[18], c'est-à-dire qu'il varie de 70 à 80 francs de 200 à 250 francs.

Tous ces prix sont d'ailleurs[19]‿approximatifs, comme‿on le comprend facilement.

---

[1] The selection, choice.
[2] *D'abord*, in the first place.
[3] *Le but*, the purpose, aim.
[4] *Le budget*, the budget, funds, purse.
[5] Varies.
[6] *Le quartier*, the quarter, particular region of the town.
[7] *La mode de location*, the way of living, contract as to rent.
[8] *Les‿environs*, the surroundings, neighborhood.
[9] *La rive gauche*, the left bank (of the Seine).
[10] *Sur la rue*, fronting towards the street
[11] Kŏń-fŏr-tă'-bl', convenient, comfortable.
[12] *Tandis que*, whilst
[13] *Sur la cour*, fronting towards the court-yard.

L'étranger qui cherche[20] avant tout[21] les distractions, et qui désire voir "le Paris des plaisirs", doit choisir les boulevards, du faubourg Poissonnière à la Madeleine, l'avenue de l'Opéra, la rue de Rivoli, le faubourg Saint-Honoré, les Champs-Elysées, etc.

Appartements Meublés.[1]

Les appartements meublés se placent en quelque sorte comme intermédiaires entre les hôtels et les appartements ordinaires.

La location[2] s'y fait au mois[3], à la quinzaine même[4], rarement à la semaine et jamais au jour; aussi l'appartement meublé ne convient-il qu'aux personnes qui séjournent pendant plusieurs mois à Paris. On y fournit[5] le linge de lit et de toilette, on se charge du service de la chambre ou des chambres, et c'est habituellement tout.

On trouve des appartements meublés dans tous les quartiers, mais surtout[6] dans les quartiers des Champs-Elysées.

---

[14]Second class hotels.
[15]Wherever located; in any location.
[16]Comfortable.
[17]*Suivre*, to follow.
[18]In proportion.
[19]Otherwise, besides.
[20]*Chercher*, to seek, to look for
[21]Above all.
[1]Furnished apartments.
[2]*La location*, the rent, contract for renting.
[3]Contract for rent is made by the month.
[4]By the fortnight even.
[5]*Fournir*, to furnish.
[6]*Surtout*, especially.

Ils s'annoncent par des écriteaux suspendus[7] à la porte d'entrée[8] de la maison et qui au lieu d'être[9], comme pour tous les autres appartements, sur papier blanc[10], sont uniformément sur papier jaune[11] avec le mot "meublé."

Le prix d'une chambre convenablement meublée varie, selon[12] la situation, entre 50 et 100 francs par mois.

Le service, qui est un cinquième environ[13] du prix de la chambre, se paye en plus[14].

Certaines maisons meublées se rapprochent[15] des hôtels ordinaires. Elles ont comme ceux-ci table d'hôte et salon de lecture; seulement le nombre des locataires[16] y étant plus limité, la vie[17] intérieure y est plus calme[18] et la dépense[19] proportionnellement moins forte[20].

Ce sont des pensions de famille[21], prix variant de cinq à huit francs par jour.

Restaurants.

Lorsqu'on est seul, si l'on ne veut pas trop dépenser, on devra prendre ses repas[1] dans un restaurant à prix fixe.

Si l'on mange à la carte (demander au garçon la *carte du jour*) on devra compter sur une dépense de 10 à 12 francs par jour (sans prendre aucun extra).

Deux personnes auront plus d'avantage[2] à manger à la carte, car les portions[3] sont fortes, et elles ne

---

[7]By signs suspended.
[8]At the entrance gate.
[9]Instead of being.
[10]On white paper.
[11]On yellow paper.
[12]*Selon*, according to.
[13]*Environ*, about.
[14]Extra, additionally.
[15]Come near to, are almost like.
[16]Guests.
[17]*La vie*, the life.
[18]Quieter.
[19]*La dépense*, the expense.
[20]Less.
[21]*Des pensions de famille*, boarding-houses.

dépenseront pas beaucoup plus qu'une seule personne.

Les *hors-d'oeuvre*, que le garçon‿apporte toujours, sans qu'on les‿ait demandés, augmentent[4] le prix du repas.

On peut ne boire que la moitié de la bouteille servie[5] (dans ce cas, faire remarquer‿au garçon que l'on‿a qu'une demi-bouteille).

Lorsqu'on‿a fini, on demande[6]‿au garçon *l'addition*[7]. On‿aura soin de vérifier et de s'assurer si tout ce qui est‿inscrit[8] vous‿a été servi. En général l'écriture ‿est‿illisible[9]; il ne faut pas craindre[10] de demander des‿explications[11].

L'habitude est de donner‿en pourboire au garçon 5 centimes par franc.

Dans presque tous les cafés, on peut déjeuner‿avec œufs, bifteck, côtelette ou viande froide.

On peut‿aussi déjeuner dans les brasseries[12] pour‿un prix modéré.

Tables d'Hôte.

La plupart des‿hôtels de quelque importance[13] en‿ont‿une, servie de six‿heures‿à sept‿heures, au prix moyen[14] de 4 francs et 5 francs, où les‿étrangers sont‿admis‿aussi bien que les locataires.

Dans quelques maisons, il est nécessaire de s'inscrire ‿à l'avance[15] ou d'être présenté, mais‿en général il suffit[16] d'arriver‿à l'heure du dîner.

---

[1]Meals.
[2]Profit; advantage; will do better.
[3]The portions; the dishes served.
[4]Increase.
[5]Wine is always served and charged for, whether it is taken or not.
[6]Demander à, to ask.
[7]L'addition, the bill (in a restaurant *only*).
[8]Charged.
[9]The writing is illegible.
[10]One need not hesitate.
[11]Explanations.
[12]The breweries.
[13]Ĭń-pŏr-tăń-s', importance.
[14]At an average price.
[15]Beforehand, in advance.
[16]It suffices.

Ils s'annoncent par des‿écriteaux suspendus[7]‿à la porte d'entrée[8] de la maison et qui au lieu d'être[9], comme pour tous les‿autres‿appartements, sur papier blanc[10], sont‿uniformément sur papier jaune[11] avec le mot "meublé."

Le prix d'une chambre convenablement meublée varie, selon[12] la situation, entre 50 et 100 francs par mois.

Le service, qui est‿un cinquième environ[13] du prix de la chambre, se paye en plus[14].

Certaines maisons meublées se rapprochent[15] des hôtels‿ordinaires. Elles‿ont comme ceux-ci table d'hôte et salon de lecture; seulement le nombre des locataires[16] y étant plus limité, la vie[17] intérieure y est plus calme[18] et la dépense[19] proportionnellement moins forte[20].

Ce sont des pensions de famille[21], prix variant de cinq à huit francs par jour.

Restaurants.

Lorsqu'on‿est seul, si l'on ne veut pas trop dépenser, on devra prendre ses repas[1] dans‿un restaurant‿à prix fixe.

Si l'on mange à la carte (demander‿au garçon la *carte du jour*) on devra compter sur‿une dépense de 10 à 12 francs par jour (sans prendre‿aucun‿extra).

Deux personnes‿auront plus d'avantage[2] à manger ‿à la carte, car les portions[3] sont fortes, et elles ne

[7]By signs suspended.
[8]At the entrance gate.
[9]Instead of being.
[10]On white paper.
[11]On yellow paper.
[12]*Selon*, according to.
[13]*Environ*, about.
[14]Extra, additionally.
[15]Come near to, are almost like.
[16]Guests.
[17]*La vie*, the life.
[18]Quieter.
[19]*La dépense*, the expense.
[20]Less.
[21]*Des pensions de famille*, boarding-houses.

Pouvez-vous me donner‿une banquette à moi seul conducteur? (băń-kĕt').	Can you give me a whole side (*une banquette*) to myself, conductor?
Je voudrais pouvoir dormir‿à mon‿aise.	I should like to sleep comfortably (= at my ease).
Complet! (kŏń-pleh).	Quite full!
Le compartiment‿est‿au complet.	All the seats in this compartment are taken.
Pardon, il y a place pour‿une‿huitième personne.	Pardon me, but there are eight places and only seven are taken.
Cela ne m'amuserait pas de rester‿en route.	It would inconvenience me to stay behind (=It would not amuse me to stay on my way.)
Conducteur, ces messieurs ne veulent pas me laisser monter. Il y a cependant deux places, qui ne sont pas occupées.	Guard, these gentlemen will not allow me to get in and there are still two seats disengaged.
Y a-t-il des compartiments pour fumeurs? (fū-mûr').	Is there a smoking-carriage?
Fumer. (fū-ma')	To smoke.
La fumée. (fū-ma').	The smoke.
Fumez-vous?	Do you smoke?
Me permettriez-vous d'allumer‿un cigare?	Would you allow me to light a cigar?
Mais certainement! Faites, monsieur, faites!	Why certainly!
Le tabac vous gêne-t-il?	Do you object to my smoking?

Je ne peux pas supporter (endurer) la fumée.	I cannot endure tobacco-smoke.
Est-il permis de fumer?	Is smoking permitted?
Défense de fumer.	Smoking is prohibited here.
Vous m'obligeriez infiniment, monsieur, si vous vouliez renoncer à fumer. Je ne puis pas endurer la fumée.	You would greatly oblige me by leaving off smoking, sir. I cannot endure the smell of tobacco.
Vous offrirai-je un cigare?	May I offer you a cigar?

La Fenêtre. (fü-nä'-tr').	**The Window.**
Ouvrez la fenêtre.	Open the window.
Fermez la fenêtre.	Shut the window.
Le courant d'air. (kōō-răń').	The draught.
Il y a un courant d'air.	There is a draught here.
Sentez-vous le courant d'air quand j'ouvre la fenêtre?	Do you feel the draught when I open the window?
Il fait un courant d'air très vif; laissez-la entr'ouverte.	There is a great draught here; leave it open just a little (half way).
Le vent vient de tous les côtés. (văń).	The wind blows from all sides.
Il fait du soleil; je vais baisser les stores.	The sun is shining; I will lower the blinds.
La poussière.	The dust.
Il fait de la poussière	It is dusty.
Il fait tant de poussière; veuillez fermer la fenêtre.	There are clouds of dust here; please shut the windows.

La Station.	**The (Way) Station.**
Quel est le nom de cette station? (nŏń—stä-sē‿ŏń'). Quelle est cette station?	What is the name of this station?
Avez-vous saisi le nom que le conducteur a crié?	Did you catch the name the guard called out?
Conducteur, où sommes-nous?	Conductor, where are we?
La prochaine station est-elle encore‿éloignée? (a-lŏ‿ăn-yā').	Is it still far to the next station?
A quelle station peut-on prendre‿un bon déjeuner?	At what station is there a chance of getting a good breakfast?
Un wagon-lit.	A sleeping-car.

Arrêter.	**To Stop.**
Combien de temps le train s'arrête-t-il ici?	How long does the train stop here?
Conducteur, quand s'arrête-t-on pour dîner?	Conductor, when do we stop for dinner?
Combien de temps s'arrête-t-on‿ici?	How long do we stop here?
Combien d'arrêt à la prochaine station?	How long do we stop at the next station?
Où est-ce qu'on arrête un peu plus longtemps?	Where do we stop a little longer?
Pourquoi y a-t-il arrêt?	Why do they stop here?
Combien de temps s'arrête-t-on à Orléans?	How long do we stop at Orléans?
Rouen! On arrête‿ici cinq minutes!	Rouen! We stop five minutes!

Changer De Voiture.	**To Change Cars.**
Faut-il changer? Dois-je changer de voiture?	Have I to change cars?
Montrez-moi votre billet, s'il vous plaît.	Pray show me your ticket.
Non, vous ne changez pas; ce train va directement‿à Bordeaux.	No, you don't change; this train goes through to Bordeaux.
Vous changez‿à Blois.	You change cars at Blois.
Ce train correspond-il à Blois?	Does this train connect at Blois?
Où allez-vous?—A Paris.	Where are you going?—To Paris.
Vous‿aurez quatre‿heures‿à attendre à Blois.	You will have to wait four hours at Blois.
Les trains ne correspondent pas. (kŏ-rĕs-pŏñ'-d').	The trains do not connect.
Vous‿auriez dû changer‿à Orléans; les correspondances se font là.	You ought to have changed at Orléans; the trains connect there.
Le train a manqué sa correspondance.	The train has missed connection.
La Frontière.	**The Frontier.**
Avons-nous déjà passé la frontière? (frŏñ-tē‿ăr').	Have we passed the frontier?
La douane; les droits.	Customs, duties.
Où est la douane?	Where is the custom-house?
La visite de la douane où a-t-elle lieu? (lē‿ū').	Where does the custom-examination take place?
La visite est-elle minutieuse?	Is the examination strict?

IX.

a. Main Sentence..... 338
b. The weather..... 340
c. Health and illness..... 350
d. Time of the day..... 360
e. Cab..... 365
f. With a physician..... 370
g. Cafés..... 386
h. Etablissements de bouillon..... 387
i. Anecdotes..... 388
j. Vocabulary..... 404

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

MAIN SENTENCE.

You ought not to have gone out without your rubbers, in this changeable weather. In consequence of your carelessness you have contracted a cold and will be obliged to keep your room for a quite while before you will be able to continue your journey.

Literal Translation.

You not should have not ought go out through this miserable weather without your rubbers. By consequence of your negligence you have taken cold and you will be obliged of to keep the room for some time before that you *not* may be able to continue your journey.

You ought not to have gone out without your rubbers, in this changeable weather.

You ought not to have
go out
through
this miserable weather
without
your rubbers.

1. Why did you go out in this horrid weather without your rubbers? You ought not to have done that. (Literally: Why *are* you gone out through this horrible weather without your rubbers? You not ought to have *do* that).

---

[1]**Sortir,** to go out; **sortant,** going out; **sorti,** gone out.
Pres: Je sors, tu sors, il sort, nous sortons, vous sortez, il sortent.
Imp: Je sortais, tu sortais, il sortait, nous sortions, etc.
Fut: Je sortirai, tu sortiras, il sortira, etc.
Cond: Je sortirais, tu sortirais, il sortirait, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que je sorte, que tu sortes, qu'il sorte, que nous sortions, [que vous sortiez, qu'ils sortent.

PHRASE PRINCIPALE.

Vous n'auriez pas dû sortir par ce vilain temps, sans vos caoutchoucs. Par suite de votre négligence vous avez pris froid, et vous serez obligé de garder la chambre pour quelque temps, avant que vous ne puissiez continuer votre voyage.

Prononciation.

Vŏŏ nŏ-rē‿ă' pă dū sŏr-tēr' păr sū vē-lĭń' tăń săń vŏ kă‿ōō-tshŏŏk'. Păr sū‿ē'-t', dŭ vŏ'-tr' na glē-zhăń'-s' vōō zā-vā' prē frŏ‿ă' a vōō s'ra'zŏ-blē-zha' dŭ găr-dā' lă shăń'-br' pōōr kĕl-kŭ tăń, ā-văń' kŭ vōō nū pū‿ē-sē‿ ā' kŏń-tē-nū-ā' vŏ'-tr' vŏ‿ā-yăzh'.

Vous n'auriez pas dû sortir par ce vilain temps, sans vos caoutchoucs.

Vous n'auriez pas dû	(vōō nŏ-rē‿ă' pă dū)
sortir	(sŏr-tēr')
par	(păr)
ce vilain temps	(sū vē-lĭń' tăń)
sans	(săn')
vos caoutchoucs.	(vŏ kă‿ōō-tshŏŏk').

1. Pourquoi êtes-vous sorti[1] par ce vilain temps sans vos caoutchoucs? Vous n'auriez pas dû faire cela.

The following verbs in **ir** are conjugated like **sortir**:

Consentir,	to consent.	Repartir,	to set out again.
Départir,	to distribute.	Ressentir,	to resent.
Desservir,	to clear the table.	Ressortir,	to go out again.
Dormir,	to sleep.	Sentir,	to feel, to smell.
Mentir,	to lie.	S'endormir,	to fall asleep.
Partir,	to depart.	Sortir,	to go out.

2. I would not have done so if I had not thought the weather would clear. (Literally: I not it would have *not* made if I not had *not* thought that the weather itself would clear (s'éclaircirait).
3. How could you have supposed such a thing? The weather has been fearful for days. (Literally: How have you could (pu) suppose this? The weather has been so horrid (si affreux) all these days).
4. Yes, for this season of the year it was bad enough, nevertheless I thought it would clear. (Literally: Yes, this year (cette année) the season has been enough bad, despite (malgré) this I have believed (cru) that the weather itself would clear (s'éleverait).
5. An erroneous supposition, my dear sir. You don't know our changeable climate. (Literally: This is an error (une‿erreur) my dear sir. You not know *not* yet how much our climate (notre climat) is changeable (changeant).
6. I always understood that the climate in France was very fine and according to the weather-reports, I supposed that it was surely going to clear. (Literally: I have always heard say that the climate in France was very fine and according to (suivant) the probabilities (les probabilités) I have believed that surely the weather itself would clear (s'éclaircirait).

---

[1]After **si**, if, the French use either the present or imperfect tense, according to the sense of the phrase (and *not* the future or conditional, as we do in English):

Si je puis faire cela, je le ferai	If I can do that I will.
S'il pouvait‿écrire, ce serait mieux,	If he could write, it would be better.
Je vous serais bien obligé, si vous	I should be greatly obliged to you if

2. Je ne l'aurais pas fait, si[1] je n'avais pas pensé que le temps s'éclaircirait. (sa-klair-sē-reh').

3. Comment‿avez-vous pu supposer cela? Le temps a été si affreux tous ces jours. (sū-pō-za'—ă-frû').

4. Oui, cette‿année la saison a été assez mauvaise, malgré cela j'ai cru que le temps s'éleverait. (sa-lū-v' reh').

5. C'est‿une‿erreur, mon cher monsieur. Vous ne savez pas‿encore combien notre climat‿est changeant. (klē-mă'—shăń-zhăń').

6. J'ai toujours‿entendu dire que le climat‿en France était très beau et suivant les probabilités j'ai cru que sûrement le temps s'éclaircirait.

---

lui disiez de m'envoyer ces livres,	you would tell him to send me these books.

Still, when si stands for whether, the future and the conditional are used in French:

Je ne sais pas si elle viendra,	I don't know whether she will come.
Je ne savais pas si vous‿iriez au théâtre,	I did not know whether you would go to the theatre.

7. The weather-reports? Do you belong to the few who believe in weather prophets? (Literally: The probabilities? Are you then of the number of those who believe in the (aux) predictions (prédictions) upon the weather?)
8. No, generally I am not so credulous, and I only regret that this time I allowed myself to be deceived by the "probabilities". (Literally: In general I not am *not* credulous (crédule) and I regret truly (véritablement) this time *of* to have been deceived (déçu) by the probabilities).
9. Yes, you ought not to have done that. You have been imposed upon. (Literally: Yes, you not should have not *ought* there (y) believe. You have been imposed upon (trompé).
10. Most likely, we shall have to stay in all afternoon. Just look how it rains! (Literally: It is very probable (probable) that we shall stay in (à) the house all this afternoon. There is just (justement) the rain (la pluie).

---

[1]There are seven verbs which are conjugated like **recevoir**, to receive. Some grammarians consider these verbs as a class and give four regular conjugations.

Recevoir, to receive; **recevant**, receiving; **reçu**, received.

Pres: Je reçois, tu reçois, il reçoit, nous recevons, vous recevez, ils reçoivent.

Imp: Je recevais, tu recevais, il recevait, nous recevions, etc.

Pret: Je reçus, tu reçus, il reçut, nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes, ils reçurent.

Fut: Je recevrai, tu recevras, il recevra, nous recevrons, etc.

Cond: Je recevrais, tu recevrais, il recevrait, nous recevrions, etc.

Pres. Subj: Que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive, que nous recevions, que vous receviez, qu'ils reçoivent.

---

7. Les probabilités? Etes-vous donc du nombre de ceux qui croient‿aux prédictions sur le temps? (prä-dĕk-sē‿ŏń').

8. En général je ne suis pas crédule, et je regrette véritablement cette fois d'avoir‿été déçu[1] par les probabilités. (vä-rē-tä-blü-mäń'—da-sü').

9. Oui, vous n'auriez pas dû y croire. Vous‿avez‿été trompé. (trŏń-pa').

10. Il est très probable que nous resterons‿à la maison tout cet‿après-midi. Voici justement la pluie. (prō-bä'-bl'—zhüst'-mäń').

Imp. Subj: Que je reçusse, que tu reçusses, qu'il reçût, que nous [reçussions, que vous reçussiez, qu'ils reçussent.

The folloving seven verbs are conjugated in the same manner:

apercevoir,	to perceive. (The cedilla (ç) is used before o and u)
concevoir,	to conceive.
décevoir,	to deceive.
devoir,	to owe.
redevoir,	to still owe.
percevoir,	to collect; to perceive.
recevoir,	to receive.

For other verbs ending in **oir**, see Irregular verbs, Part X.

---

11. Yes, it is really pouring. It is useless to think about going out in this fearful weather. A great pity, isn't it? (Literally: Yes, it rains in torrents (à verse). It is useless (inutile) of to think (songer) to (à) go out through this fearful (affreux) weather. That is very annoying (ennuyeux), is it not?
12. Yes, it's too bad! But what about a short drive? (Literally: Certainly! What would say you of a a little *promenade* in carriage(promenade‿en voiture[2])?
13. Be advised by me. Stay at home. Just see how it lightens! (Literally: Believe me. Stay in the house. See how it lightens (il éclaire)!
14. Yes, and now it commences to thunder. Goodness, what a clap of thunder! That must have struck near by! (Literally: Yes, it commences to (à) thunder (tonner). Goodness (mon Dieu[3]) what clap of thunder (coup de tonnerre). It must (il doit) have fallen (être tombé) near of here).

---

[1]**Pleuvoir,** to rain, is an impersonal verb, used only in the third person singular.

Pleuvoir, to rain; **pleuvant,** raining; **plu,** rained.

Pres: il pleut, it rains.
Imp: il pleuvait, it rained.
Pret: il plut, it rained.
Fut: il pleuvra, it will rain.
Cond: il pleuvrait, it would rain.
Pres. Subj: qu'il pleuve, it may rain.
Imp. Subj: qu'il plût, it might rain.

[2]We have no (single) expression for *driving* or a *drive* in French, but say:

Faire‿un tour‿en chemin de fer, To take a railway trip.

11. Oui, il pleut[1] à verse. Il est inutile de songer à sortir par cet affreux temps. C'est bien ennuyeux, n'est-ce pas? (ē-nū-tēl'—sŏń-zhā'—ăń-nū-yū').

12. Certainement! Que diriez-vous d'une petite promenade en voiture[2]? (prŏ-m'nă'-d').

13. Croyez-moi. Restez à la maison. Voyez comme il éclaire! (ā-clair').

14. Oui, il commence[3] à tonner. Mon Dieu[4], quel coup de tonnerre! Il doit être tombé près d'ici! (kŏ-măń'-s'—dē û'—koo d' tŏ-nair').

---

faire un tour en voiture,	To take a drive; to go out driving.
" " " en traineau,	To take a sleigh-ride; to go out sleighing.
" " " à pied,	To take a walk.
" " " à cheval,	To take a ride (on horseback).

[3]**Commencer**, to begin, is generally followed by à, as:

On a commencé à jouer,	They have begun to play.

But if a certain time is stated, it is followed by **de** (so as to avoid the repetition of à), as:

Il commença de parler à deux heures,	He began to talk at two o'clock.

[4]An exclamation commonly used by French people, but meaning no more to them than our "Good gracious, goodness!"

---

15. But what is that? A carriage in this storm at our door? Who can that be? (Literally: What is that there (qu'est-ce qu'il y a)? A carriage before (devant[1]) our door (notre porte) through such a weather (un pareil temps)? Who that can well be?)
16. If I am not mistaken, it is your compatriot, Mr Pierson. (Literally: If I not myself deceive *not* (si je ne me trompe pas) this is your compatriot (votre compatriote), Mr. Pierson).
17. What can bring him here in this fearful weather? —Ah, there he is! (Literally: What is this which can then him lead (l'amener) here through this fearful weather? Ah, him behold (le voici)!
18. But my dear Lewis, what brings you here in this horrible weather? And oh! you are wet to the skin! (Literally: My dear Lewis (Louis), what is this which you leads here through this horrid (vilain) weather? You are soaked (trempé) to the bones (jusqu'aux‿os).
19. I only went across the street to get into a cab and in those few steps I got wet through and through. (Literally: I have only crossed (traversé) the street in order to (pour) take a cab and in these few (quelques) instants, I have been soaked to the bones).
20. You must change your clothes at once or you'll catch your death. (Literally: You ought to change *of* clothes (de[s] vêtements) at once, otherwise (autrement) you will catch (vous‿attraperez) your death (votre mort).

[1]We have two French prepositions meaning before, viz.: **devant**, used in regard to place, and **avant** used as to time.

15. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a? Une voiture devant[1] notre porte par‿un pareil temps?. Qui cela peut-il bien‿être? (kehs-kēl-ē-ä'—dü-văń'—pä-rē'-y').

16 Si je ne me trompe pas c'est votre compatriote, monsieur Pierson.

17. Qu'est-ce qui peut donc l'amener‿ici par cet‿affreux temps?—Ah, le voici!

18. Mon cher Louis, qu'est-ce qui vous‿amène ici par ce vilain temps? Vous‿êtes trempé jusqu'aux‿os. (trăń-pä zhüs-kō-zō')

19. J'ai seulement traversé la rue pour prendre‿une voiture et dans ces quelques‿instants, j'ai été trempé jusqu'aux‿os. (zĭń-stăń').

20. Vous devriez changer de[2] vêtements tout de suite, autrement vous‿attraperez votre mort. (ō-tr'-măń'—zä-trä-p'rā—mōr).

[2]De is used idiomatically with changer.

21. Come at once into my room and lay aside your things. (Literally: Come quickly into my room to take off (retirer) your clothes).

22. I came to bring you an invitation. Our friend, Mr. Hugh McIndoe, sends his regards and..... (Literally: I came you bring an invitation (une invitation). Our friend you sends his regards (ses amitiés) and.....).

23. Pardon me for interrupting you, but your health is of greater importance than any invitation. First change your clothes and then tell me what brings you here. (Literally: Pardon me if I you interrupt (interromps), but your health is more important than any invitation. Come first (d'abord) to change *of* clothes and you me will tell afterwards (après) what (ce qui) you leads here).

24. Just as you like. But I really do not take cold as easily as you imagine. (Literally: As you will want. I not take *not* cold as easily as you it think).

---

[1]**Interrompre**, to interrupt, is slightly irregular and is conjugated like: **Rompre**, to break; **rompant**, breaking; **rompu**, broken.

Pres: Je romps, tu romps, il rompt, nous rompons, vous rompez, ils [rompent.

Imp: Je rompais, tu rompais, il rompait, nous rompions, etc.

Fut: Je romprai, tu rompras, il rompra, nous romprons, etc.

Cond: Je romprais, tu romprais, il romprait, nous romprions, etc.

Pres. Subj: Que je rompe, que tu rompes, qu'il rompe, que nous [rompions, que vous rompiez, qu'ils rompent.

[2]When the pronoun **le** refers to a noun, it agrees in gender and number with the same:

---

21. Venez vite dans ma chambre retirer vos vêtements.

22. Je venais vous‿apporter‿une‿invitation. Notre ‿ami, monsieur Hugh McIndoe vous envoie‿ses amitiés et..... (lń-vē-tă-sē‿ŏń' — vōō zăń-vō‿ā').

23. Pardonnez-moi si je vous‿interrompe[1], mais votre santé est plus‿importante qu'une‿invitation. Venez d'abord changer de vêtements et vous me direz‿après ce qui vous‿amène‿ici. (zlń-tē-rŏń'-p'—plū zlń-pŏr-tăń'-t'—zā-prā').

24. Comme vous voudrez. Je ne prends pas froid‿aussi facilement que vous le[2] pensez.

Etes-vous sa tante?	Are you his aunt?
Non, je ne la suis pas,	No, I am not.
Sont-ce là vos frères?	Are those your brothers?
Oui, ce les sont,	Yes, they are.

But le meaning cela remains unchanged when it represents an adjective or a noun taken adjectively, as:

Etes-vous bons‿amis?	Are you good friends?
Oui, nous le sommes,	Yes, we are.
Etes-vous‿Américaine?	Are you an American lady?
Je le suis.	I am.

As will be seen le in all these cases, is not expressed in English.

ă far; ā pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ŏ note; ōō room.

25. Here is every thing you need. Fortunately we are of the same size and every thing will fit you splendidly. (Literally: Here is all which (ce qui) you is necessary (nécessaire). Fortunately (heureusement) that we are of the same size (la même grandeur); these clothes you will *go* wonderfully (à merveille).
26. Take off all your damp clothes at once and put on mine. As soon as you are dressed I'll ring for the waiter. He'll see that your clothes are dried. (Literally: Take off (ôtez) then your clothes damp (mouillés) at once and put on (mettez) the mine (les miens). As soon as you will be dressed (habillé) I shall ring the waiter. He will make dry (sêcher) your clothes).

√ MAIN SENTENCE.

(*Continuation*).

In consequence of your carelessness you have contracted a cold.

In consequence of
your carelessness
you have taken
cold.

---

1. What is the subject of to-day's lesson?
2. In to-day's lesson we will talk about diseases and health, for that is an important theme. (Literally: In the lesson of to-day we shall talk of the diseases (des maladies) and of the health; this is a subject very important).

---

25. Voici tout ce qui vous‿est nécessaire. Heureusement que nous sommes de la même grandeur; ces vêtements vous‿iront‿à merveille.

26. Otez donc vos vêtements mouillés tout de suite et mettez les miens. Aussitôt que vous serez‿habillé, je sonnerai le garçon. Il fera sécher vos‿habits.

PHRASE PRINCIPALE.

(*Suite*).

Par suite de votre négligence vous‿avez pris froid.

Par suite de	(păr sū‿ĕt' dŭ)
votre négligence	(vŏ'-tr' nā-glē-zhăń'-s')
vous‿avez pris	(vōō zā-vā prē)
froid.	(frŏ‿ā').

---

1. Quel est le sujet de la leçon d'aujourd'hui?
2. Dans la leçon d'aujourd'hui nous parlerons des maladies‿et de la santé; c'est‿un sujet fort‿important. (fŏr-tĭń-pŏr-tăń').

---

3. And the consideration of this theme will probably lead to many new expressions? (Literally: Very probably the conversation us will lead to (à) employ *of* new expressions (de nouvelles expressions)?
4. Without doubt. Now let us begin at once. How are you to-day? It seems to me, you are looking ill and fatigued. (Literally: Without doubt. Let us see, let us commence at once. How yourself carry you to-day? It me seems that you appear fatigued and suffering (souffrant).
5. I am not very well. I think I took cold last night on leaving the theatre. (Literally: I not myself feel *not* very well. I believe that yesterday evening I have taker cold in going out from the theatre).
6. I am very sorry indeed to hear that. Didn't you wear your rubbers? (Literally: I am really (réellement) very sorry to know that. Not had you *not* your rubbers)?
7. I am sorry to say I did not. The weather was so charming when I started for the theatre that the thought of rubbers or an umbrella never occurred to me. (Literally: Unfortunately no. The weather was so fine when I *am* set out for the theatre that I *not* have not at all (nullement) thought to (à) take my umbrella or *of* the rubbers).
8. You have a bad cold. You really seem to have a bad cold. (Literally: You have a bad cold). You seem really to have taken a bad cold).
9. Yes, I caught a miserable cold. (Literally: Indeed, I have taken a terrible cold).

3. Très-probablement la conversation nous conduira à employer de nouvelles‿expressions? (prŏ-bă-b'lû-măń'—kŏńvĕr-să-sĕ‿ŏń'—zĕx-prĕ-sĕ‿ŏń').

4. Sans doute. Voyons, commençons tout de suite. Comment vous portez-vous‿aujourd'hui? Il me semble que vous paraissez fatigué et souffrant. (fă-tĕ-gă').

5. Je ne me sens pas très bien. Je crois qu'hier soir j'ai pris froid‿en sortant du théâtre. (săń).

6. Je suis réellement bien fâché de savoir cela. N'aviez-vous pas vos caoutchoucs?

7. Malheureusement non. Le temps‿était si beau, quand je suis parti pour le théâtre, que je n'ai nullement pensé à prendre mon parapluie ou des caoutchoucs.

8. Vous‿avez‿*un mauvais rhume.* Vous paraissez réellement‿avoir pris‿un mauvais rhume. (rûm').

9. En‿effet j'ai pris‿un terrible rhume. (tĕ-rē'-bl')

10. I trust it is nothing but a cold. Be sure to be careful and dress warm, for a cold in our changeable climate becomes easily serious. (Literally: I hope that this not is but a cold. Be prudent. wear *of* the clothes warm, for in our climate so changeable (si changeant), a cold may have *of* the consequences very serious (des conséquences très sérieuses).
11. Quite true, and I'll take better care of myself in future. My throat pains me. (Literally: That is true, in future I shall take more of care (soin) of my person. My throat (ma gorge) me makes feel badly (me fait mal).
12. If I were in your place I would consult a good physician at once. You are quite hoarse. (Literally: If I were in (à) your place I would consult (je consulterais) without delay (sans retard) a good physician. You are very hoarse (enroué).
13. Being hoarse does not trouble me much, for I easily get rid of it; but the pains in my throat make me nervous. (Literally: A hoarseness (un enrouement) *not* is nothing, I myself of it rid (débarrasse) very easily, but the throat-ache (le mal de gorge) me renders nervous (nerveux).
14. I really believe I am making you nervous, but that wasn't my intention. On the contrary, I only wished to warn you not to neglect your cold. (Literally: I believe positively (positivement) that I you render nervous, but this not was *not* my intention. On the contrary, I desired only you to warn (avertir) *of* not to neglect (ne pas négliger) your cold).

10. J'espère que ce n'est qu'un rhume. Soyez prudent, portez des vêtements chauds, car dans notre climat si changeant, un rhume peut‿avoir des conséquences très sérieuses. (prü-dăń'—shăń-zhăń'—kŏń-sa-kăń'-s'—sa-rē‿ûz').

11. C'est vrai, à l'avenir je prendrai plus de soin de ma personne. Ma gorge me fait mal.

12. Si j'étais‿à votre place, je consulterais sans retard un bon médecin. Vous‿êtes très‿enroué (zăń-rōō-ā').

13. Un‿enrouement n'est rien, je m'en débarrasse très‿aisément, mais le mal de gorge me rend nerveux. (gŏr'-zh'—răń' nĕr-vû').

14. Je crois positivement que je vous rends nerveux, mais ce n'était pas mon‿intention. Au contraire, je désirais seulement vous‿avertir de ne pas négliger votre rhume. (nā-glē-zha).

ā far; ă pale; ē eve; ê there; ō note; ōō room.

15. Oh no, I don't get nervous as easily as that. Nevertheless I shall do as you say and consult a good physician. (Literally: Oh no, I not become *not* (je ne deviens pas) nervous so easily as that. Nevertheless (néanmoins) I shall follow your advice (votre‿avis); I shall consult a good physician).

16. What are you? Do you belong to the old school or the new? (Literally: What is this that you are? Belong you (appartenez-vous) to the old school (à la vieille école) or to the new)?

17. You mean homoeopaths or allopaths? (Literally: Want you to speak of the homoeopaths and allopaths (des‿alleopathes)?

18. Yes, we have some excellent physicians of either school here. (Literally: Yes, we have here *of* excellent physicians in the two schools).

19. In Chicago I generally take homoeopathic remedies, but I made the acquaintance of Dr. Caldwell here and put great confidence in him. (Literally: In Chicago I use generally *of* the remedies homoeopathic (des remèdes‿homoeopathiques), but I have made here the acquaintance (la connaissance) of the Dr. Caldwell and I have great confidence (grande confiance) in (en) him).

---

[1]**Suivre,** to follow; **suivant,** following; **suivi, followed.**

Pres: Je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous **suivez, il suivent.**

Imp: Je suivais, tu suivais, il suivait, nous suivions, **etc.**

Fut: Je suivrai, tu suivras, il suivra, nous suivrons, etc.

Cond: Je suivrais, tu suivrais, il suivrait, nous suivrions, etc.

Pres. Subj: Que je suive, que tu suives, qu'il suive, que nous suivions, [que vous suiviez, qu'ils suivent.

[2]Old is given by **vieux** (before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant), **vieil** (before masc. nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute), and **vieille,** before feminine nouns.

---

15. Oh non, je ne deviens pas nerveux si facilement que cela. Néanmoins je suivrai[1] votre‿avis; je consulterai un bon médecin. (nā-ăń-mŏ‿ĭń').

16. Qu'est-ce que vous‿êtes? Appartenez-vous‿à la vieille[a] école ou à la nouvelle? (vē‿ĕy').

17. Voulez-vous parler des‿homoeopathes et des‿alleopathes?

18. Oui, nous‿avons‿ici d'excellents médecins dans les deux‿écoles. (dĕx-sē-lăń').

19. A Chicago j'use généralement des remèdes homoeopathiques, mais j'ai fait‿ici la connaissance du Dr. Caldwell, et j'ai[b] grande confiance en lui. (zhūz' zhā-nā-răl'--măń' deh rū-mad' sŏ-mū-ŏ-pă-tēk' — kŏ-nā-sāńs'—dŏk-tûr'—kŏń-fē‿ăń'-s).

---

[1]A personal pronoun used as *subject* is repeated before every verb.

a. When the verbs are of different tenses:

Je dis et je dirai toujours..... I say and will always say.....

b. If we pass from a negative to an affirmative proposition and vice versa:

Vous n'avez pas soif et vous voulez boire, You are not thirsty and wish to drink.

In all other cases the pronoun may be omitted or repeated, just as taste directs.

ā far; ă pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ōō room.

20. He is an allopath and has an extensive practice, especially among Americans. He comes from Chicago, if I am not mistaken. (Literally: He is allopath and has a large practice (une grande clientèle), especially (surtout) among (parmi) the Americans. If I not myself deceive *not*, he comes from (de) Chicago).

21. Yes, his brother is one of the first lawyers in our town. The firm is known under the name of Caldwell & Pierson (=The firm (la raison sociale) C. and P. is well known (connue).

22. And your friend McIndoe who during that bad weather sent you an invitation, is also a lawyer, is he not? (=Your friend who you has sent an invitation to dinner at the time (à l'époque) of this horrid weather, not is he not lawyer)?

23. Yes, he also is an attorney. He promised to call for me. He was to be here at eleven. He is generally very punctual and will be here soon. (Literally: Yes, he is lawyer. He me has even (même) promised (promis) that he would come me see. He ought to be here at eleven o'clock. Generally (d'habitude) he is very punctual (exact) and he will be soon (bientôt) here).

---

[1]The indefinite English *a*, *an* is not used in French in the following and similar expressions:

Etes-vous Anglais? Are you an Englishman?

---

20. Il est‿alleopathe[1] et a une grande clientèle, surtout parmi les‿Américains. Si je ne me trompe pas, il vient de Chicago.

21. Oui, son frère est‿un des premiers‿avocats de notre ville. La *raison sociale* Caldwell et Pierson est bien connue.

22. Votre‿ami McIndoe qui vous‿a envoyé une‿invitation‿à dîner‿à l'époque de ce vilain temps, n'est-il pas‿avocat?

23. Oui, il est‿avocat. Il m'a même promis qu'il viendrait me voir. Il doit‿être‿ici à onze‿heures. D'habitude il est très‿exact et il sera bientôt‿ici.

Non, je suis‿Américain,	No, I am an American.
Ce monsieur est médecin,	This gentleman is a physician.
Cet‿Italien est musicien,	This Italian is a musician.

ä far; ā pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ōō room.

24. There goes the bell. That must be he, for it is striking eleven. (=Some one rings (on sonne). This must be he, for (car) eleven hours strike (onze‿heures sonnent).
25. Ah, my dear McIndoe, punctual as usual! You come to the minute! (=You are to the minute).
26. We were talking of you.
27. Speak of angels.... (Literally: When one speaks of the wolf (du loup), he not is *not* far).
28. Pray, don't joke. I don't feel like joking. (Literally: Let us see, not joke *not*. I not myself feel *not* of humor (d'humeur) to laugh(à rire).
29. What is the matter? (=What is up)?
30. I took cold last night and my throat pains frightfully. (Literally: I have taken cold the night last and my throat me makes frightfully (horriblement) ill (mal).

[1]The time of the day is expressed in the following ways

Il est‿une‿heure,	It is	one o'clock.	
Il est‿deux‿heures,	" "	two "	
" " trois‿heures,	" "	three "	
" " quatre‿heures,	" "	four "	
" " cinq‿heures,	" "	five "	
" " six‿heures,	" "	six "	
" " sept‿heures,	" "	seven "	
" " huit‿heures,	" "	eight "	
" " neuf‿heures,	" "	nine "	
" " dix‿heures,	" "	ten "	
Il est‿onze‿heures,	" "	eleven "	
Il est **midi**,	" "	twelve o'clock.	(Noon).
" " **minuit**,	" "	" "	(Midnight.)
" " une‿heure cinq (minutes),	It is	five minutes past one.	
Il est deux‿heures dix ("),	" "	ten " " two.	
" " trois‿heures‿et quart,	" "	a quarter " three.	
" " quatre‿heures vingt,	" "	twenty minutes past four.	
" " cinq‿heures vingt-cinq,	" "	twenty-five " " five.	
" " six‿heures‿et demie,	" "	half past six.	
" " sept‿heures moins vingt-[cinq,	" "	twenty-five minutes to seven.	
" " huit‿heures moins vingt,	" "	twenty minutes to eight.	
" " neuf‿heures moins‿un [quart,	" "	a quarter to nine.	

24. On sonne! — Ce doit‿être lui, car‿onze‿heures[1] sonnent. (sŏn').

25. Ah, mon cher McIndoe, toujours‿exact! Vous‿êtes‿à la minute. (mē-nūt').
26. Nous parlions de vous.
27. Quand‿on parle du loup, il n'est pas loin. (lōō—lŏ‿lŭ').
28. Voyons, ne plaisantez pas. Je ne me sens pas d'humeur[2]‿à rire[3]. (rēr').

29. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?
Qu'y a-t-il?
30. J'ai pris froid la nuit dernière et ma gorge me fait‿horriblement mal. (tŏ-rē-blŭ-măń').

Il est dix‿heures moins dix,	It is ten minutes to ten.
" " onze‿heures moins cinq,	" " five " " eleven.
Il est‿onze‿heures précises,	" " eleven o'clock precisely.
Il est près de minuit,	" " nearly midnight.
Votre montre retarde de trois minutes,	Your watch is three minutes slow.
" " avance de " "	" " " " " fast.
Ma montre va bien,	My watch is (goes) right.
" " " mal,	" " goes badly.

[2]Similarly we say:

Il est de très mauvaise humeur,	He is very angry. (He is in a very bad humor).
Pourquoi êtes-vous de si mauvaise humeur?	Why are you so angry?
Il a l'air de très mauvaise humeur,	He looks very angry.
Pourquoi avez-vous l'air de si mauvaise humeur?	What makes you look so cross?

[3]**Rire**, to laugh; **riant**, laughing; **ri**, laughed.

Pres: Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient.
Imp: Je riais, tu riais, il riait, nous riions, vous riiez, ils riaient.
Fut: Je rirai, tu riras, il rira, nous rirons, vous rirez, ils riront.
Cond: Je rirais, tu rirais, il rirait, nous ririons, etc.
Pres. Subj.: Que je rie, que tu ries, qu'il rie, que nous riions, que vous riiez, qu'ils rient.

31. Then consult Dr. Caldwell. You can't find a better physician in all Paris (dans tout Paris).

32. I intend doing so, and would like to ask you to accompany me to his house. (Literally: I want there to go and should like well (j'aimerais‿assez) that you me may accompany to him).

33. With pleasure. Put a shawl around your throat and button up your overcoat to the top, for the wind has turned and it has grown quite cold. (=Put (mettez) then a shawl (un foulard) around (autour de) your throat and button your overcoat to high (jusqu'en haut), for the wind is changed and it makes very cold).

34. Then it has stopped raining? (=Then the rain has ceased (cessé)?

35. It stopped an hour ago. Now tie this warm shawl around and button up your overcoat so as not to catch more cold. (Literally: *She* has ceased an hour ago (il y a une‿heure). Tie around (nouez) this thick (épais) shawl and button your overcoat in order not to (afin de ne pas) take more of cold).

---

[1]The pupil must familiarize himself with the irregular comparatives and superlatives.

1. Adjectives:

bon, meilleur, le meilleur,	good, better, the best.
mauvais, pire, le pire,	bad, worse, the worst.
petit, moindre, le moindre,	little, less, the least.

Ce vin est bon, le vôtre est meilleur, mais le mien est le meilleur. Jean est mauvais, Jules est pire, mais Robert est le pire de l'école *or* Jean est mauvais, Jules est plus mauvais, mais Robert est le plus mauvais de l'école. De deux maux‿il faut éviter le pire, of two evils avoid the worst. Ce n'est pas‿être petit que d'être moindre qu'un grand, being less great is not being small. On ne sentait pas le moindre vent, not the least wind was felt.

---

31. Consultez donc le Dr. Caldwell. Vous ne pouvez pas trouver‿un meilleur[1] médecin dans[2] tout Paris (mĕ-yûr').

32. Je veux‿y aller et j'aimerais‿assez que vous m'accompagniez[3] chez lui.

33. Avec plaisir. Mettez donc un foulard autour de votre gorge et boutonnez votre pardessus jusqu'en haut, car le vent‿est changé et il fait très froid.

34. Alors la pluie a cessé?

35. Elle a cessé il y a une‿heure. Nouez cet‿épais foulard et boutonnez votre pardessus afin de ne pas prendre plus de froid.

---

2. Adverbs:

bien, mieux, le mieux,	well, better, best.
mal, pis, le pis,	bad, worse, worst.
peu, moins, le moins,	little, less, least.
beaucoup, plus, le plus,	much, more, most.

Albert écrit bien, Gustave écrit mieux, mais Jacques écrit le mieux. Thérèse lit mal, sa sœur lit encore pis (*or* plus mal), et leur frère lit le plus mal. Mon père a peu voyagé; moi j'ai encore moins voyagé, mais ma mère a le moins voyagé de toute notre famille.

[2]Dans—in, within.

[3]After verbs expressing a wish or desire the subjunctive mood must follow.

---

36. Be assured, I'll take care of myself. (Literally: Not fear *nothing*; I shall be prudent).
37. Be sure to do so. Nothing is so disagreeable as sickness in a strange town. (Literally: Do it, for nothing *not* is more disagreeable than *of* to be sick in a town where one is stranger (étranger).
38. Are you going to walk? A short walk will do me good (=me will do *of* the good).
39. How can you think of such a thing? A walk with your cold would be the greatest carelessness you could commit. No, no, you are going to ride (Literally: Of it (y) think you? A walk with such a (un pareil) cold would be the greatest imprudence. No, no, we go *go* in carriage).
40. You are a cautious fellow, but you are quite right. It certainly would be most disagreeable if I were laid up in Paris for any length of time. (Literally: You are a man prudent, but you have right. This would be very disagreeable for me *of* to fall ill in Paris for some time (pour quelque temps).
41. Let us take a cab.
42. There is one. I am going to hail it. (Literally: Of it there is one. I go it call).
43. But that's an open carriage. That would be worse than walking. (=But this is a carriage uncovered (découverte). That would be worse (pis) for me than *of* to walk).
44. That's indeed an open carriage, but the driver will close it (la fermera).
45. Close your carriage tight, cabman. This gentleman is ill and must not be exposed to draughts. (Literally: Driver, close well your carriage. This gentleman is ill and not ought *not* feel the air).

36. Ne craignez rien; je serai prudent. (prū-dăń').

37 Faites-le, car rien n'est plus désagréable que d'être malade dans‿une ville où l'on‿est‿étranger. (a-trăń-zhā').

38. Allez-vous marcher? Une petite promenade me fera du bien.
39. Y pensez-vous? Une promenade‿avec un pareil rhume serait la plus grande‿imprudence. Non, non, nous allons‿aller‿en voiture. (ĭń-prū-dăń's').

40. Vous‿êtes‿un homme prudent, mais vous‿avez raison. Ce serait très désagréable pour moi de tomber malade‿à Paris pour quelque temps.

41. Prenons‿une voiture.
42. En voilà une. Je vais l'appeler

43. Mais c'est‿une voiture découverte. Cela serait pis pour moi que de marcher. (dā-kōō-vĕrt'—pē).

44. C'est‿en effet‿une voiture découverte, mais le cocher la fermera.
45. Cocher, fermez bien votre voiture. Ce monsieur est malade et ne doit pas sentir l'air.

ā far; ă pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ōō room.

46. All right, sir! Just wait a moment before getting in. I shall be done in a second. (Literally: Very well, sir. Wait an instant before to enter. I shall have finished within one second).
47. There gentlemen! The carriage is tightly closed. Get in please. Where to pray?
48. Drive us rapidly to No. 42 Boulevard des Italiens.
49. On time (à l'heure), gentlemen?—Certainly; it is quarter past eleven by my watch. Hurry up!
50. Do you always engage a cab on time? (=Take you always a cab by the hour (à l'heure)?
51. That depends on circumstances; on general principles driving on time is preferable, especially with cabs "of the first class," as they have good horses. (Literally: That depends (depend) *of* the circumstances (des circonstances); in principle (en principe) it is preferable *of her* take on time, especially when *this* are *of* the "voitures de remise," as (attendu que) they have *of* good horses (bons chevaux).
52. Cabs seem to be very cheap here?
53. In comparison with America, certainly! All the drivers here wear a uniform, are exceedingly polite and cannot overcharge any one. (Literally: Yes, if one them compares (compare) with the America. All the drivers wear a uniform (une livrée), are very polite (polis), they not can *not* you overcharge (surcharger).
54. They cannot overcharge a stranger? And why not? How could a stranger tell what the right fare would be? (Literally: They not can *not* overcharge a stranger? And why not? How a stranger can he know what is the veritable (véritable) price)?

46. Très bien monsieur! Attendez‿un‿instant avant d'entrer. J'aurai fini dans‿une seconde. (nĭń-stań').

47. Voici messieurs! La voiture‿est bien fermée. Montez je vous prie. Où allez-vous?
48. Menez-nous vivement 42 Boulevard des‿Italiens.
49. A l'heure, messieurs?—Certainement; à ma montre, il est‿onze‿heures‿et quart. Allez vite!
50, Prenez-vous toujours‿une voiture à l'heure?

51. Cela dépend des circonstances; en principe, il est préférable de la prendre‿à l'heure, surtout quand ce sont des voitures de remise, attendu qu'elles‿ont de bons chevaux. (dā-päń'—sēr-kōń-stäń'-s'—prĭń-sēp'—rū-mēz'—sh'-vō').

52. Les voitures me semblent très bon marché?
53. Oui, si on les compare avec l'Amérique. Tous les cochers portent‿une livrée, sont très polis, ils ne peuvent pas vous surcharger. (sūr shär-zhä').

54. Ils ne peuvent pas surcharger un‿étranger? Et pourquoi pas? Comment‿un‿étranger peut-il savoir quel est le véritable prix?

55. The tariff is put up in every cab and the driver is obliged to give a receipt and his number to each person. (Literally: The tariff (le tarif) is placed in the interior (à l'intérieur) of each cab and the driver must hand (remettre) to the passenger a receipt with (portant) his number).
56. And suppose he doesn't do it? What then? (Litterally: And if he not it does *not*. What happens (qu'arrive-t-il)?
57. Look what is said at the foot of the tariff: "Travelers ought to demand a receipt and his number from the driver." (Literally: See at the foot (au bas) of the tariff it is said that the travelers ought to demand of the (au) driver a receipt with his number).
58. And in case the driver should not give me the correct receipt? What happens then? How do I obtain my legal rights? (Literally: In case where the driver not me would give *not* a good receipt? What happens then? And how could I obtain justice)?
59. All drivers stand under police-control. You either apply to the nearest policeman or you order the driver to take you to the nearest police-station. (Literally: All the drivers are under the control (le contrôle) of the prefecture of police (la Préfecture de Police). You can yourself address be it (soit) to the first agent of police whom you will meet, be it (soit) order to the coachman *of* you to drive (mener) to the post of police the most near).
60. And will he do it?—Without any doubt. But here we are! Pray get out. Driver, wait here till we get back.

55. Le tarif est placé à l'intérieur de chaque voiture et le cocher doit remettre‿au voyageur un bulletin portant son numéro.

56. Et s'il ne le fait pas? Qu'arrive-t-il?

57. Voyez‿au bas du tarif il est dit: "Que les voyageurs doivent demander‿au cocher un bulletin avec son numéro."

58. Au cas où le cocher ne me donnerait pas‿un bon bulletin? Qu'arrive-t-il alors? Et comment pourrais-je obtenir justice? (jü-stēs').

59. Tous les cochers sont sous le contrôle de la Préfecture de Police. Vous pouvez vous‿adresser soit‿au premier‿agent de Police que vous rencontrez, soit‿ordonner‿au cocher de vous mener ‿au poste de police le plus près.

60. Le fera-t-il?—Sans doute. Mais nous voici arrivés. Descendez. Cocher, attendez-nous‿ici!

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ōō room.

MAIN SENTENCE.

(*Continuation*).

You will have to keep your room for days before you can continue your journey.

You will be obliged to (=of)
keep
the room
during
some time
before that
you may (not) be able
to continue
your journey.

---

1. I would like to consult you, doctor. Since last evening I have felt so badly that I am afraid I shall be seriously ill. (Literally: I should like you to consult (consulter), sir. Since yesterday evening I not myself feel *not* well and I have fear of to fall (tomber) seriously (sérieusement) ill).
2. What is the matter with you?
3. At first I fancied I had a bad cold. Since this morning however, I feel violent pains in my throat and my breathing has become painful. (Literally: I have believed quite at first (tout d'abord) that I had a bad cold. But since this morning I experience (j'éprouve) *of the* pains violent (des douleurs atroces) in the throat and it me is very difficult to breathe (de respirer).
4. Have you noticed any other symptoms (d'autres symptomes)?

PHRASE PRINCIPALE.

(*Suite*).

Vous serez‿obligé de garder la chambre pendant quelque temps, avant que vous ne puissiez continuer votre voyage.

Vous serez‿obligé de (vœ̆ s'rā' zŏ-blē-zhā' dŭ)
garder (gär-dā')
la chambre (lä shäń'-br')
pendant (päń-däń')
quelque temps (kĕl-kŭ-täń')
avant que (ä-väń-kŭ)
vous ne puissiez (vœ̆ nŭ pü‿ē-sē‿eh')
continuer (köń-tē-nū-a')
votre voyage. (vŏ'-tr' vŏ‿ä-yäzh').

---

1. Je voudrais vous consulter monsieur. Depuis hier soir je ne me sens pas bien, et j'ai peur de tomber sérieusement malade. (sä-rē‿ū-zŭ-mäń').

2. Qu'avez-vous?
3. J'ai cru tout d'abord que j'avais‿un mauvais rhume. Mais depuis ce matin j'éprouve des douleurs‿atroces dans la gorge, et il m'est très difficile de respirer. (zhä-prœ̆v'—dœ̆-lûr-zä-trŏs'—görzh'—rŭ-spē-rā').

4. Avez-vous remarqué d'autres symptomes? (rū-mär-kā' sĭń-ptŏm').

ä far; ä pale; ē eve; ê there; ŏ note; œ̆ room.

5. I feel as if all my limbs were broken and my feet feel so heavy that I can scarcely drag myself along. (Literally: It me seems that I have all the limbs (tous les membres) crushed (brisés) and my legs (mes jambes) appear so heavy (lourds) that this is with pain that I myself drag (que je me traîne).
6. And how is your head?
7. My head feels heavy, but I cannot say I have a headache. (Literally: I have the head heavy (lourde), notwithstanding (cependant) I not can say that I have pain in the head).
8. And how is your appetite?
9. My appetite seems to have left me entirely. I really had to force myself to take a cup of coffee, and I have not eaten anything to-day. (Literally: I not have *not of* appetite at all. I myself *am* forced in order to take a cup of coffee, and to-day I not have *nothing* eaten).
10. Do you cough?—I commenced to cough an hour ago.
11. Is it painful? (Literally: That you makes it badly)?
12. Yes, especially here in the chest, or rather in the bronchial tubes. (=Yes, especially (surtout) here in the chest (la poitrine), or rather (plutôt) in the bronchial tubes (dans les bronches).
13. Pray take a seat here at the window, so that I may have a good light for my examination. (Literally: Sit down here before (devant) the window, in full light (en pleine lumière), in order that (afin que) I you may examine).
14. Show me your tongue, please. Put it out a little farther (sortez-la davantage).

5. Il me semble que j'ai tous les membres brisés et mes jambes paraissent si lourds que c'est‿avec peine que je me traîne. (zhăń'-b'—train').

6. Et la tête? (tăt').
7. J'ai la tête lourde, cependant je ne puis dire que j'ai mal à la tête. (s'păń-dăń')

8. Et l'appétit?
9. Je n'ai pas d'appétit du tout. Je me suis forcé pour prendre‿une tasse de café, et aujourd'hui je n'ai rien mangé.

10. Toussez-vous?—J'ai commencé à tousser il y a une‿heure.
11. Cela vous fait-il mal?

12. Oui, surtout‿ici dans la poitrine, ou plutôt dans les bronches. (pō‿ă-trēn'—broń-sh').

13. Asseyez-vous‿ici devant la fenêtre, en pleine lumière, afin que je vous‿examine. (ăń plehn' lū-mē‿ăr'—zē-xă-mēn').

14. Montrez-moi votre langue; sortez-la davantage. (dă-văń-tazh').

---

15. Your tongue is very much coated (très chargée). When did you take cold?
16. Night before last, I think. I went home from the theatre without rubbers or overcoat.

17. What! Night before last in that frightful storm! How could you have been guilty of such carelessness? (Literally: What (quoi)! Night before last during that frightful storm (cet‿affreux‿orage)! How have you been able to commit (commettre) *a such*[1] imprudence (une telle imprudence)?
18. It was exceedingly hot and sultry in the theatre. The house was packed; not a single seat was disengaged. (Literally: It made a heat stifling (une chaleur‿étouffante) at the theatre. The house (la salle) was crowded (bondée[2]), not a seat (un siège) was free (libre).
19 I was glad to get out in the fresh air (en plein‿air). I wanted to cool off a little on my way home. (=I had need *of* to take a little the fresh (le frais) before of re-enter).

---

[1]**Tel, telle** has two significations, ***such*** **and** ***many a*** **(man). In the** first case, it is an adjective and agrees with its noun; **in the latter it is** used without a substantive.

Telle était la difficulté,	**Such was the difficulty.**
Tel parle de choses qu'il n'entend pas,	**Many a man talks about things he does not understand.**

Un tel has the meaning of our ***so and so.***

Monsieur un tel,	**Mr. so and so.**
Madame une telle,	**Mrs. so and so.**

---

15. Votre langue est très chargée. Quand‿avez-vous pris froid?
16. L'avant dernière nuit, je crois. Je suis‿allé du théâtre chez moi sans caoutchoucs et sans pardessus.
17. Quoi! L'avant dernière nuit pendant cet‿affreux ‿orage! Comment‿avez-vous pu commettre‿une telle[1] imprudence? (ĩñ-prü-dăñ'-s').

18. Il faisait‿une chaleur étouffante au théâtre. La salle était bondée[2], pas‿un siège était libre.

19. Je fus bien content de sortir‿en plein‿air. J'avais besoin de prendre‿un peu le frais‿avant de rentrer.

Notice also the expression: **Il n'y a rien de tel que,** there is nothing like, as:

Il n'y a rien de tel que d'avoir‿une bonne conscience,	There is nothing like having a good conscience.

[2]We could also say: La salle était comble. On the other hand we say:

La pleine lune,	The full moon.
La lune est dans son plein,	The moon is full.

But:

J'ai la tête prise	My head feels full.

When we talk of *dress* we say:

La tenue de soirée, / La grande toilette,	Full dress.

---

20 That was a piece of carelessness of which I really did not think you capable. Why didn't you take a cab? (Literally: This was a veritable imprudence of which I not you would have never believed capable (capable). Why not have you *not* taken a cab)?

21. I wanted to cool off, as I told you (=I wanted me to cool off (me rafraîchir), as I you it have told).

22. That was very careless. Now please lay aside your vest. I want to examine your lungs (je veux vous ausculter).

23. You frighten me, doctor. I trust my lungs are not affected. (Literally: You me frighten (effrayez) doctor. I hope that my lungs (mes poumons) not are *not* attacked (attaqués).

24. I hope not, but I have to examine them carefully. Now take a deep breath. (Literally: I hope *that* not (que non[1]), but it is necessary that I them may examine carefully (soigneusement). Let us see, breathe well).

25. Oh, that pains!—Where? Point out the spot. (Literally: Oh, how this me makes ill (mal)! Where? Show me the place).

26. Well, now take another breath, as deep as you can. (Literally: Well, breathe once more (encore une fois); breathe as deeply (largement) as you can).

27. And now turn around, so that I can examine your back. (Literally: Turn yourself (tournez-vous) that I you may examine in the back (le dos).

---

[1]Similarily we say:

Je dis que oui,	I say yes.
Je dis que non,	I say no.

20. C'était‿une véritable imprudence, dont je ne vous ‿aurais jamais cru capable. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas pris‿une voiture? (vă-rē-tă'-bl' ĭń-prū-dăń'-s' kă-pă'-bl').

21. Je voulais me rafraîchir comme je vous l'ai dit. (ră-frai-shĕr').

22. C'était très‿imprudent. Veuillez retirer votre gilet. Je veux vous‿ausculter. (zŏs-kūl-tā').

23. Vous m'effrayez docteur. J'espère que mes poumons ne sont pas‿attaqués? (pōō-mŏń').

24. J'espère que non[1], mais‿il faut que je les‿examine soigneusement. Voyons, respirez bien. (sŏ‿ ăn‿yū-z'măń')

25. Oh! comme cela me fait mal!—Où? Montrez-moi la place. (plăs').

26. Bien, respirez‿encore‿une fois; respirez‿aussi largement que vous pouvez. (lăr-zhŭ-măń').

27. Tournez-vous, que je vous‿examine dans le dos. (dŏ).

Je suppose que oui,	I suppose so.
Je suppose que non,	I don't suppose so.
Je vous‿assure que non,	I assure you it is not so.

---

28. Does it look serious, doctor? (Literally. This seems it serious (sérieux) doctor)?
29. I'll tell you in a few minutes as soon as I am done with my examination. (Literally: I you it will tell in an instant as soon as (aussitôt que) I shall have finished *of* you to examine).
30. How is your sleep?—Bad; I get no rest. (=How is your sleep (votre sommeil)?—Bad; I not repose (repose) *not*).
31. Do you feel very thirsty?—Yes, I have been quite thirsty and have been drinking a great deal of water. (Literally: Yourself feel you thirsty (altéré)? —Yes, I have had *very* thirst and I have drunk (bu) much of water).
32. Let me feel your pulse. Your pulse is very quick. You are feverish. (Literally: Let us see your pulse (votre pouls). Your pulse strikes (bat) very quickly. You have the fever (la fièvre).
33. Now take this instrument for a few minutes in your mouth I have to know how your respiration is. (Literally: Keep (gardez) this instrument (cet instrument) some minutes in your mouth (votre bouche). I want to know how is your respiration (votre respiration).
34. You have quite an attack of bronchitis. Go home at once and go to bed. Did you walk here? (Literally: You have a bronchitis (une bronchite). Reenter (rentrez) *to you* at once and lie down (couchez-vous). *Are* you come afoot)?

---

[1]**Boire,** to drink; **buvant,** drinking; **bu,** drunk.
Pres: Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous *buvons*, vous *buvez*, ils boivent.
Imp: Je buvais, tu buvais, il buvait, nous buvions, etc.
Prét: Je bus, tu bus, il but, nous bûmes, vous bûtes, ils burent.

---

28. Cela paraît-il sérieux docteur?

29. Je vous le dirai dans‿un‿instant aussitôt que i'aurai fini de vous‿examiner. (dăń zŭń nĭń-stăń').

30. Comment‿est votre sommeil?—Mauvais, je ne repose pas. (sŏ-mĕ'-y'—jŭn' rŭ-pōz' pă).

31. Vous sentez-vous‿altéré?—Oui, j'ai eu très soif et j'ai bu[1] beaucoup d'eau.

32. Voyons votre pouls.—Votre pouls bat très vite. Vous‿avez la fièvre. (pōō—vēt' fē‿av'-r').

33. Gardez cet‿instrument quelques minutes dans votre bouche. Je veux savoir comment‿est votre respiration. (tĭń-strŭ-măń'—mē-nūt'—bōōsh'—rŭ-spē-rā-sē‿ōń').

34. Vous‿avez‿une bronchite. Rentrez chez vous tout de suite et couchez-vous. Etes-vous venu à pied? (brōń-shēt'—pē‿a').

Fut: Je boirai, tu boiras, il boira, nous boirons, etc.
Cond: Je boirais, tu boirais, il boirait, nous boirions, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive, que nous *buvions*, que vous *buviez*, qu'ils boivent.

---

35. No, in a cab.—Not in an open one, I trust?—Oh no, it was closed tightly. (Literally: No, in a carriage.—Not in a cab open (découverte) I suppose? —Oh no, *she* was well closed).
36. That was sensible. Avoid any draught or cold. I shall prescribe some medicine for you. You have to take it punctually every two hours. (Literally: This was very sensible (très sensé). Avoid (évitez) the currents of air (les courants d'air) and the cold. I you shall make a prescription (une ordonnance). You will take regularly all the two hours this medicine (cette médecine).
37. Don't stop on your way, but drive home at once. (Literally: Not yourself stop (arrêtez) *not* on way (en route), but return (rentrez) *at you*).
38. Have I to stay in bed (m'aliter)?
39. I told you already that you'll have to go to bed at once. You'll have to keep your room for days, for bronchitis in our climate is not to be be trifled with. (Literally: I you have already told *of* yourself to put (mettre) to the bed (au lit) without more *to* delay (sans plus tarder). You will have to keep the room during several (plusieurs) days, for the bronchitis (les bronchites) in our climate not are *not* a small affair).
40. Then I am seriously ill? (=Am I seriously taken)?
41. Not fatally so. But I must tell you that you will have to stay in bed for a week at least. (Literally: No, not as much (tant) as that. But I must you warn (avertir) that you will have to (à) keep the bed for a week at least (au moins).

35. Non, dans‿une voiture.—Pas dans‿une voiture découverte je suppose?—Oh non, elle était bien fermée. (sū-pŏz').

36. C'était très sensé. Evitez les courants d'air et le froid. Je vous ferai une‿ordonnance. Vous prendrez régulièrement toutes les deux‿heures cette médecine. (săń-sa'—ā-vē-ta'—kŏŏ-răń' ūn nŏr-dŏ-năń'-s'—rā-gū-lē‿a-rū-măń'—mā-d'sēn').

37. Ne vous‿arrêtez pas‿en route, mais rentrez chez vous.

38. Dois-je m'aliter? (mă-lē-ta').
39. Je vous‿ai déjà dit de vous mettre‿au lit sans plus tarder. Vous devrez garder la chambre pendant plusieurs jours, car les bronchites dans notre climat ne sont pas‿une petite‿affaire. (lē—plū-zē‿ûr').

40. Suis-je sérieusement pris?
41. Non, pas tant que cela. Mais je dois vous‿avertir que vous‿aurez‿à garder le lit pour‿une semaine au moins.

42. And when do you think I can continue my journey? (=When then shall I be able to continue my journey)?

43. That depends on circumstances. In the first place we must get rid of your fever. At any rate, you must be prepared to spend at least a fortnight here. (Literally: That depends of the circumstances(des circonstances). Quite at first (tout d'abord) it is necessary yourself to set free (débarrasser) of the fever. At any rate (de tôute manière) prepare yourself (attendez-vous) to (à) stay at least fifteen days here).

44. And when will you call on me? (=When will you come me see)?

45. It is now a quarter to twelve. My office-hours last till two. After that I have three patients to visit who are dangerously ill. (Literally: It is now midday less the quarter. I receive until two o'clock; I have three patients (malades) who not *go not* well, to (à) visit).

46. You are very busy?—Unfortunately so. There is at present much sickness in town. (Literally: You are very busy (occupé)?—Unfortunately yes, at this moment (en ce moment) there are much of persons ill in town (en ville).

47. And when may I expect you? (=When may I hope you to see)?

42. Quand‿alors pourrai-je continuer mon voyage? (kŏń-tē-nū-a'- mŏń vŏ‿ä-yäzh').

43. Cela dépend des circonstances. Tout d'abord il faut vous débarrasser de la fièvre. De toute manière attendez-vous‿à rester‿au moins quinze jours‿ici (sēr-kŏń-stäń'-s'—dä-bŏr'—mä-nē‿ar').

44. Quand viendrez-vous me voir?

45. Il est maintenant midi moins lè quart. Je reçois jusqu'à deux‿heures; j'ai trois malades qui ne vont pas bien, à visiter.

46. Vous‿êtes très‿occupé?—Malheureusement oui; en ce moment il y a beaucoup de personnes malades ‿en ville. (mŏ-mäń'—äń vēl').

47. Quand puis-je espérer vous voir?

48. I'll call on you between four and five without fail. In the meanwhile take the medicine I have prescribed for you; every two hours a table-spoon full. (Literally: I shall come without fail (sans faute) between (entre) four o'clock and five. In the meanwhile (en‿attendant) take the potion (la potion) which I you have prescribed (ordonnée), a table-spoon (une cuiller‿à soupe) all the two hours).
49. Be careful to have the right temperature in your room. You had better have a fire. (Literally Have (ayez) well care (soin) *of* to have always the same temperature (la même température) in your room. *Make* make *of* the fire (du feu).
50. Keep yourself warm and avoid catching cold. I'll be with you between four and five. Good bye; I trust you'll soon be better. (Literally: Keep yourself warmly (chaudement) and avoid the cold. I shall be with you between four and five. Good bye; I hope that you will soon be better).

48. Je viendrai sans faute entre quatre‿heures‿et cinq. En‿attendant prenez la potion que je vous ‿ai ordonnée, une cuiller‿à soupe toutes les deux ‿heures. (ăń nă-tăń-dăń'—pŏ-sĕ‿ŏń'—kû‿a-yair').

49. Ayez bien soin d'avoir toujours la même température dans votre chambre. Faites faire du feu. (tăń-pa-ră-tûr'—fû).

50. Tenez-vous chaudement et évitez le froid. Je serai chez vous‿entre quatre‿et cinq. Au revoir, j'espère que vous serez bientôt mieux.

ä far; ă pale; ĕ eve; ê there; ŏ note; ŏŏ room.

Cafés.

Les cafés sont‿excessivement nombreux‿à Paris. On‿en rencontre dans tous les quartiers, mais surtout sur les boulevards, au Palais-Royal, aux Champs-Elysées, dans les principales rues passantes‿et aux‿abords[1] de toutes les gares de chemin de fer.

Les consommations[2]‿y sont généralement bonnes. Le prix d'une consommation‿ordinaire (café, bock[3], verre de liqueur, etc.) varie, suivant les quartiers, entre 30 et 60 centimes. Le prix des glaces[4] varie, selon les ‿établissements, entre 50 centimes‿et 1 franc 25 centimes.

Il est d'usage[5] de donner‿au garçon un pourboire de 10 centimes.

On peut dans tous les cafés se faire servir le matin du café au lait, du chocolat, du thé avec du pain‿et du beurre.

Dans presque tous les cafés, on peut se faire servir une côtelette, un bifteck, des viandes froides‿et des‿ oeufs; ces consommations sont‿ordinairement bonnes, et le prix‿en‿est le même que dans les bons restaurants.

Il nous‿est‿impossible de donner‿une nomenclature même abrégée[6] des principaux cafés de Paris. Nous nous bornerons[7]‿à mentionner[8] ceux qui se distinguent par‿une notoriété[9] tout‿à fait‿exceptionnelle ou par quelque particularité.

---

[1] L'abord, the access.
[2] La consommation, the refreshment.
[3] Un bock, a glass of beer.
[4] Of ices, ice-cream.
[5] It is customary.
[6] Abbreviated.
[7] We shall limit ourselves.
[8] To mention.
[9] Notoriety, fame.

Nous citerons: le Grand-Café, boulevard des Capucines 14, au coin de la rue Scribe; le café Américain, boulevard des Capucines 4; le célèbre glacier Tortoni, au coin de la rue Taitbout; le cabaret du Chat Noir[10]. rue Victor-Massé 12, une des curiosités de Paris; on y donne en‿hiver‿et au printemps des représentations très suivies: ombres, monologues, chansons, etc.; on n'y est reçu que sur‿invitation; le prix de la consommation est de 4 francs au minimum.

Etablissements de Bouillon.

Les‿établissements de bouillon, fondés[1] par Monsieur Duval, boucher, sont situés: boulevard Montmartre, 21; boulevard de la Madeleine, 27; boulevard Poissonnière, 11; boulevard de Sébastopol, 141; boulevard Saint-Michel, 26; rue de Rivoli, 47; rue Lafayette, 63. etc.

Une dame seule peut très bien‿entrer dans ces‿établissements dont la clientèle est fort convenable.

On reçoit‿en‿entrant‿une carte sur laquelle la bonne[2] qui sert, inscrit‿au fur‿et à mesure[3] ce que l'on commande.

Le Banquier Anglais et L'Irlandais.

Un banquier de Londres[1] avait besoin d'un domestique. Un Irlandais vint[2] s'offrir pour‿entrer‿à son service.

---

[10]Black cat.

[1]Founded. — [2]The waitress.—[3]*Au fur‿et* à mesure, proportionally.

[1]A banker of London.

[2]Irregular prétérit of venir, to come. It has already been stated that the historical tense, the prétérit, is used in narratives. The regular conjugation of the historical tense is given in the next note.

Prét: Je vins, tu vins, il vint, nous vînmes, vous vîntes, ils vinrent.

"De quel pays‿êtes-vous?" lui demanda[3] le banquier.
"Je suis‿Anglais," répondit[4] l'autre.
"De quel endroit[5], s'il vous plaît?"
"De Dublin."
"Comment pouvez-vous dire que vous‿êtes‿Anglais, puisque[6] vous‿êtes né en‿Irlande?"
"Mais, monsieur, si j'étais né dans‿une‿écurie[7], ce ne serait pas‿une raison, je crois, pour que je fusse[8] un cheval.

---

[3]The Prétérit, the historical tense, adds the following endings to the stem in the three regular conjugations:

1st.	2nd.	3rd.
—— ai.	—— is.	—— is.
—— as.	—— is.	—— is.
—— a.	—— it.	—— it.
—— âmes.	—— îmes.	—— îmes.
—— âtes.	—— îtes.	—— îtes.
—— èrent.	—— irent.	—— irent.

If therefore we take parler, to speak, finir, to finish and vendre, to sell, we form the

Prétérit.

1st	2nd.	3rd.
Je parl*ai*.	Je fin*is*.	Je vend*is*.
tu parl*as*.	tu fin*is*.	tu vend*is*.
il parl*a*.	il fin*it*.	il vend*it*.
nous parl*âmes*.	nous fin*îmes*.	nous vend*îmes*.
vous parl*âtes*.	vous fin*îtes*.	vous vend*îtes*.
ils parl*èrent*.	ils fin*irent*.	ils vend*irent*.

The pupil must thoroughly familiarize himself with these forms as they are constantly employed in narratives.

[4]Replied, historical tense of répondre, to reply, to answer.

[5]From which place?

[6]Since, as.

[7]Une‿écurie, a stable.

[8]Subjunctive (imparfait) of être, to be.

Imp. Subj. Que je fusse, que tu fusses, qu'il fût, que nous fussions, que vous fussiez, qu'ils fussent.

La Prévoyance.[1]

Une bonne vieille[2], après avoir fait ses prières devant l'image[3] de saint Michel. prit[4] deux petits cierges[5], et en alluma un pour l'archange[6] et l'autre pour Satan, représenté sous ses pieds

Le curé du village[7], qui passait par là en ce moment, s'en aperçut[8].

Il s'écria[9]: "Eh! que faites-vous là? Est-ce que vous êtes folle[10]? Vous brûlez[11] un cierge au diable[12]"?

"Non, monsieur le curé, je ne suis pas folle. J'ai toujours entendu dire qu'il était prudent d'avoir des amis partout[13]: on ne sait pas où l'on ira.[14]

Léon X et l'alchimiste.[1]

Un alchimiste qui se vantait[2] d'avoir trouvé le secret[3] de faire de l'or[4], demandait une récompense[5] à Léon Dix.

---

[1]Precaution, foresight.

[2]A good old woman. Vieille is the feminine form of vieux, old.

[3]The image, statue.

[4]The historical tense of the irregular verb prendre, to take.

Prét: Je pris, tu pris, il prit, nous prîmes, vous prîtes, ils prirent.

[5]Candles.

[6]The archangel.

[7]The village-curate, priest.

[8]Observed it.—Apercevoir, to perceive is conjugated like recevoir, to receive. The conjugation of this verb has been given before. The historical tense is conjugated.

Prét: Je reçus, tu reçus, il reçut, nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes, ils reçurent.

[9]He cried out. Historical tense.

[10]Folle, feminine form of fou, foolish.

[11]You burn.

[12]Le diable, the devil.

[13]Everywhere.

[14]The alchimiste.—[2]Boasted.—[3]The secret.—[4]Gold.—A reward.

Ce pape[6] parut[7] acquiescer à sa demande.

Le charlatan se flattait[8] déjà d'avoir fait fortune[9]; mais s'étant de nouveau[10] présenté à Leon X pour le même motif[11], celui-ci lui fit[12] donner un grand sac[13] vide, en lui disant: "Puisque vous savez faire de l'or, il ne vous faut qu'un sac pour le garder."

Le Martyre de Saint Sébastien.

Deux paysans[1] furent[2] envoyés par leur village dans une ville, pour choisir un habile peintre[3], qui devait faire le tableau[4] pour le maître-autel[5] de leur église. Il devait représenter le martyre de saint Sébastien.

Le peintre auquel ils s'adressèrent[6] leur demanda[7] s'il devait représenter le saint vivant[8] ou mort.

Cette question les mit[9] quelque temps dans l'embarras[10].

Enfin[11] l'un d'eux dit[12]: "Le plus sûr[13] est que vous le représentiez vivant: si on veut l'avoir mort, on pourra toujours bien le tuer[14]."

---

[6]This pope.—[7]Historical tense of paraître, to appear.

Prét: Je parus, tu parus, il parut, nous parûmes, vous parûtes, ils parurent.

[8]Flattered himself.—[9]To have made his fortune.—[10]Again, anew.—[11]For the same purpose.—[12]Historical tense of faire, to make, to do.

Prét: Je fis, tu fis, il fit, nous, fîmes, vous fîtes, ils firent.

[13]An empty bag.

[1]Peasants.—[2]Were sent.—[3]A clever painter.—[4]The painting.—[5]The High-Altar.—[6]Historical tense of s'addresser, to apply.—[7]Historical tense of demander, to ask.—[8]Alive or dead.

[9]Historical tense of mettre, to put, to place.

Prét: Je mis, tu mis, il mit, nous mîmes, vous mîtes, ils mirent.

[10]Embarassment, *i. e.* rather embarrassed them.—[11]At last, finally.—[12]Historical tense of dire, to say, to tell.

Prét: Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous dîmes, vous dîtes, ils dirent.

[13]The surest, best way is (—would be).—[14]To kill.

Remède Contre Les Rats.[1]

Un‿aubergiste[2] qui avait‿un peu écorché[3] un de ses hôtes[4], se plaignait[5] devant lui de ce que les rats dévoraient[6] ou gâtaient[7] tout dans la maison.

L'étranger lui dit: "Il y a un bon moyen[8] de vous‿en débarrasser?"

"Ah! Monsieur, vous me rendriez‿un grand service."

"Rien n'est plus simple."

"Et comment donc?"

"Vous n'avez qu'à leur présenter‿une note aussi chère que la mienne, et le diable m'emporte[10] s'ils‿y reviennent."

L'Esprit dans L'Enfance.[1]

Un monsieur‿âgé[2], se trouvant‿un soir, dans la société de quelques personnes qui s'amusaient beaucoup des mots spirituels[3] d'un‿enfant, dit‿à quelqu'un près de lui que les‿enfants spirituels faisaient‿ordinairement[4] des‿hommes sots[5].

L'enfant l'entendit et lui dit: "Monsieur, vous‿aviez beaucoup d'esprit, sans doute, quand vous‿étiez jeune."

---

[1]A remedy against rats.—[2]An innkeeper.—[3]To flay, to overcharge, to skin.—[4]Guest.—[5]Complained; Imperfect of plaindre, to complain (conjugated like craindre, to fear).—[6]Devoured.—[7]Spoiled.—[8]Means, remedy.—[9]To get rid of them.—[10]And may the devil take me off, fly away with me.

[1]Childhood.—[2]Old.—[3]Witty.—[4]Generally.—[5]Stupid.

Le poète et le pâtissier.[1]

Un poète avait fait‿une chanson[2] à la louange[3] des pâtés[4] du meilleur pâtissier du pays. Celui-ci, pour lui en montrer sa reconnaissance[5], lui envoya[6] un des‿objets qu'il avait tant loués[7] dans la chanson.

Le poète fut‿extrêmement satisfait d'une pareille attention; mais quelle fut sa surprise! quelle fut sa douleur[8]! En mangeant le dernier morceau du délicieux[9] pâté, il entrevoit[10], regarde et s'assure que le papier sur lequel le pâté a été cuit[11]‿au four[12] c'est justement la copie[13] de la chanson qu'il avait‿envoyée au pâtissier. Il court[14]‿en fureur[15] chez lui et l'accuse[16] hautement du crime[17] très grave de lèse-poésie[18].

"Mais, monsieur," répond l'autre sans s'émouvoir[19], "pourquoi êtes-vous si fâché[20]? Vous‿avez fait‿une chanson sur mes pâtés, et moi, j'ai fait‿un pâté sur votre chanson.

---

[1]The poet and the pastry-cook.—[2]A song.—[3]In praise of.—[4]The patties.—[5]His gratitude.—[6]Historical tense of envoyer, to send.—[7]Praised.—[8]His grief.—[9]Delicious.—[10]Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of, to see imperfectly.—[11]Cuire, to bake, to cook (conjugated like conduire, to lead).—[12]Le four, the oven.—[13]The copy.

[14]**Courir**, to run; **courant**, running; **couru**, ran.

Pres: Je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent.

Imp: Je courais, tu courais, il courait, nous courions, etc.

Prét: Je courus, tu courus, il courut, nous courûmes, vous courûtes, ils [coururent.

Fut: Je courrai, tu courras, il courra, nous courrons, vous courrez, ils [courront.

Cond: Je courrais, tu courrais, il courrait, nous courrions, etc.

Pres. Subj.: Que je coure, que tu coures, qu'il coure, que nous courions, [que vous couriez, qu'ils courent.

Imp. Subj.: Que je courusse, que tu courusses, qu'il courût, que nous [courussions, que vous courussiez, qu'ils courussent.

[15]In a fury, enraged.—[16]Accuses him.—[17]Le crime (krēm'), the crime.—[18]High treason in regard to poetry. (Lèse-majesté, high treason).—[19]Without becoming excited.—[20]Angry.

Le Jeune Arithméticien.

Un fermier[1], qui ne savait ni[2] lire ni écrire, et qui avait quelques‿épargnes, voulut[4] faire donner de l'instruction à son fils‿unique[5] et l'envoya dans‿un pensionnat[6].

Après‿y avoir passé deux‿années, le jeune‿homme revint[7] chez ses parents, et entra[8] dans la ferme[9] au moment où son père et sa mère se mettaient‿à table devant‿un plat de viande et un plat de légumes[10].

Après les‿embrassements d'usage[11], le fermier dit[12]‿à son fils, tandis que[13] la mère préparait‿un troisiéme couvert[14]: "Eh bien, mon garçon, as-tu bien‿employé ton temps? Es-tu devenu savant[15]?"

"Oh! oui, mon père," répondit l'écolier[16] avec suffisance[17].

"Sais-tu compter, surtout, mon fils?"

"J'étais le plus fort‿en‿arithmétique," répondit‿encore le jeune drôle[18], "et je puis vous donner la preuve[19] que je sais faire des comptes[20] que vous ne feriez pas vous-même.

"Je ne dis pas non....mais voyons la preuve de ton savoir."

"Voici: combien de plats croyez-vous‿avoir sur votre table?"

---

[1]A farmer.—[2]Ni—ni—neither—nor—[3]Savings.—[4]Historical tense of vouloir, to want, to desire.

Prét: Je voulus, tu voulus, il voulut, nous voulûmes, vous voulûtes, ils voulurent.

[5]Only.—[6]Boarding-school.—[7]Historical tense of revenir, to return.—[8]Historical tense of entrer, to enter.—[9]The farm.—[10]A dish of vegetables.—[11]The customary salutations.—[12]Historical tense of dire, to tell, to say.—[13]Whilst.—[14]A third cover.—[15]A scholar.—[16]The pupil.—[17]With conceit, conceitedly.—[18]The young rogue.—[19]The proof.—[20]How to do ex-

---

"Deux," répondit le père; "un plat de viande, un‿autre de légumes."

"Eh bien, vous vous trompez. Il y a trois plats sur votre table."

"Parbleu[21]! je serais bien‿aise d'entendre ton raisonnement[22] à l'appui[23] de ce compte-là."

"Rien de plus facile; nous disons: plat de viande, cela fait‿un; plat de légumes, cela fait deux; j'additionne[24] et je dis: un‿et deux font trois."

"C'est juste, c'est fort juste," dit le fermier. Eh bien, je vais manger‿un plat, ta mère mangera le second, et toi, tu mangeras le troisième en récompense de ton savoir."

Le Meunier et son Fils[1].

Un jour un meunier et son fils conduisirent[2] leur‿âne[3] à la ville pour le vendre‿au marché.

Chemin faisant, ils rencontrèrent[4]‿un homme‿à cheval qui leur dit‿en riant: Vous‿êtes bien sots[5] de laisser‿aller l'âne sans charge[6], et sans qu'aucun de vous songe à le monter."

Aussitôt le père dit‿à son fils d'enfourcher[7] l'âne.

Quelques moments‿après ils rencontrèrent‿un charretier[8]. Celui-ci cria au fils: "Un vigoureux[9] garçon comme toi devrait‿avoir honte de se faire porter par

amples.—[21]Zounds! Forsooth!—[22]Reasoning, argument.—[23]In support of.—[24]I add.

[1]The miller and his son.

[2]Historical tense of conduire, to conduct, to lead.

Prét: Je conduisis, tu conduisis, il conduisit, nous conduisîmes, vous conduisîtes, ils conduisirent.

[3]Their donkey.—[4]Historical tense of rencontrer, to meet.—[5]Stupid.—[6]Without any burden.—[7]To bestride.—[8]A waggoner.—[9]Vigorous.

---

cette bête[10] et de laisser cheminer‿à côte de soi son vieux père."

En‿entendant ces paroles[11], le fils sauta[12] lestement[13] à bas de l'âne et fit[14] monter le vieillard[15] à sa place.

Un peu plus loin ils rencontrèrent‿une paysanne qui dit‿au meunier: "Vous‿êtes vraiment‿un père sans‿entrailles[17] pour rester si commodément‿assis sur cet‿âne, tandis que votre pauvre‿enfant a de la peine[18] à vous suivre en marchant sur ce chemin sablonneux[19]."

Alors le père fit monter le fils derrière lui sur l'âne.

A quelque distance de là, ils rencontrèrent‿un berger[20] qui faisait paître[21] son troupeau[22] le long de la route[23].

En voyant passer les deux‿hommes montés sur l'âne le berger s'écria[24]: "Oh! la pauvre bête! elle doit‿inévitablement succomber[25] sous ce double fardeau[26]. Vous‿êtes vraiment les bourreaux[27] de cet‿animal."

Alors‿ils descendirent[28] de l'âne tous les deux[29], et le fils dit‿au père: "Que devons-nous faire maintenant de cet‿âne pour contenter tout le monde? Il ne nous reste plus qu'à lui lier[30] les jambes, le suspendre[31]‿à un bâton[32] et le porter sur nos‿épaules[33]‿au marché."

"Tu le vois maintenant, mon fils," répondit le père, "on ne peut jamais réussir[34]‿à contenter tout le monde, et la sagesse[35] nous conseille[36] de suivre cette maxime: "Fais ton devoir[37], et ne t'inquiète nullement de ce que peut dire le monde."

---

[10]This beast.—[11]These words.—[12]Historical tense of sauter, to jump.—[13]Nimbly.—[14]Historical tense of faire, to make. (Conjugated before).—[15]The old man.—[16]A peasant-woman.—[17]Les‿entrailles (fem.), the entrails, bowels.—Un père sans‿entrailles, a heartless father.—[18]Trouble; can scarcely follow you.—[19]Sandy.

[20]A shepherd.—[21]To browse.—[22]His herd.—[23]Roadside.—[24]Historical tense of s'écrier, to cry out.—[25]To succumb.—[26]Double burden, load.—[27]Executioners, tormentors.—[28]Historical tense of descendre, to descend, to get off.—[29]Both of them.—[30]To tie.—[31]To suspend, to hang.—[32]On a stick.—[33]On our shoulders.—[34]To succeed.—[35]Wisdom.—[36]Counsels us.—[37]Thy duty.

Le Paysan dans le Ciel.[1]

Il mourut[2] une fois un pauvre bon paysan qui vint[3] à la porte du paradis[4].

En même temps il mourut un riche seigneur[5] qui monta aussi au ciel.

Saint Pierre[6] arriva avec ses clefs[7], ouvrit[8] la porte et fit entrer le seigneur; mais, sans doute, il n'avait pas vu le paysan, car il le laissa[9] dehors[10] et ferma la porte.

Le paysan entendit[11] la joyeuse[12] réception que le ciel faisait au richard[13] avec le chant[14] et la musique.

---

[1]In Heaven.

[2]Historical tense of mourir, to die.

Prét: Je mourus, tu mourus, il mourut, nous mourûmes, vous mourûtes, ils moururent.

[3]Historical tense of venir, to come.

Prét: Je vins, tu vins, il vint, nous vînmes, vous vîntes, ils vinrent.

[4]Paradise.—[5]Lord.—[6]St. Peter.—[7]With his keys.

[8]Historical tense of **Ouvrir**, to open, **ouvrant**, opening; **ouvert**, opened.

Pres: J'ouvre, tu ouvres, il ouvre, nous ouvrons, vous ouvrez, ils ouvrent.
Imp: J'ouvrais, tu ouvrais, il ouvrait, nous ouvrions, etc.
Prét: J'ouvris, tu ouvris, il ouvrit, nous ouvrîmes, vous ouvrîtes, ils ouvrirent.
Fut: J'ouvrirai, tu ouvriras, il ouvrira, nous ouvrirons, etc.
Cond: J'ouvrirais, tu ouvrirais, il ouvrirait, nous ouvririons, etc.
Pres. Subj: Que j'ouvre, que tu ouvres, qu'il ouvre, que nous ouvrions, que vous ouvriez, qu'ils ouvrent.
Imp. Subj: Que j'ouvrisse, que tu ouvrisses, qu'il ouvrît, que nous ouvrissions, que vous ouvrissiez, qu'ils ouvrissent.

[9]Historical tense of laisser, to leave.—[10]Outside.—[11]Historical tense of entendre, to hear.—[12]Joyful, glad.—[13]To the rich man.—[14]The song, the

---

Quand le bruit[15] se fut‿apaisé[16], saint Pierre revint et fit‿entrer le pauvre‿homme.

Celui-ci s'attendait qu'à son‿entrée le chant‿et la musique allaient recommencer. Mais tout resta[17] tranquille. On le reçut de bon coeur, les‿anges[18]‿allèrent ‿au-devant de lui, mais personne ne chanta[19].

Il demanda à saint Pierre pourquoi on ne le recevait pas comme le riche, et si la partialité[20] regnait‿au ciel comme sur la terre.

"Non," lui répondit le saint, "tu nous‿es‿aussi cher qu'aucun‿autre, et tu goûteras[21] tout comme celui qui vient d'entrer, les joies[22] du paradis; mais, vois-tu, des pauvres paysans comme toi, il en‿entre ici tous les jours, tandis que des riches, il n'en vient pas‿un tous les cent‿ans."

Garrick.

Le célèbre‿acteur[1] Garrick avait‿un merveilleux talent pour contrefaire[2] le langage[3], les manières et jusqu'à l'extérieur[4] des personnes mêmes qu'il ne voyait pas‿habituellement[5].

Il rencontre‿un jour, dans‿une rue de Londres, un jeune‿homme qu'il avait vu quelquefois[6], et qui paraissait‿accablé[7] d'une profonde douleur. Il s'arrête et lui en demande la cause.

---

singing.—[15]The noise, the sounds.—[16]Had grown quiet.—[17]Historical tense of rester, to remain.—[18]The angels.—[19]Historical tense of chanter, to sing.—[20]Partiality.—[21]Goûter, to taste.—[22]The joys.

[1]Actor.—[2]To imitate; to feign.—[3]The language, style, manner of voice.—[4]The exterior, appearance.—[5]Habitually.—[6]Sometime.—[7]Over-

---

"J'ai perdu mon père," répond le jeune‿homme, "il est mort dans cette‿auberge[8], que vous pouvez‿apercevoir[9]‿à l'extrémité de la rue, et le maître de l'hôtel, profitant[9] du désordre[10] où la douleur m'avait jeté[11] a pris dans la valise de mon père le portefeuille[12] qui contenait tout notre bien[13]."

Garrick, touché[14] de ce récit[15], conçoit[16] à l'instant l'idée de lui faire restituer ce larcin[17]. Il se rappelait parfaitement‿avoir vu le vieillard; il avait remarqué son costume bizarre[18], la longue canne[19] qu'il tenait‿à la main et je ne sais quoi d'original répandu[20] sur toute sa personne.

"Avez-vous," dit Garrick, "conservé[21] les‿habits que portait votre père au moment de sa mort?"

"Oui, sans doute."

"Envoyez-les moi, et je vous ferai rendre votre portefeuille."

Le jeune‿homme eut[22] bientôt porté chez Garrick le costume de son père, l'acteur, après s'en‿être revêtu[23], alla frapper[24]‿à la porte de l'aubergiste.

Un voleur[25]‿est rarement un‿esprit fort[26]: celui-ci, depuis son vol[27], s'imaginait[28] toujours voir le défunt[29]‿à ses côtés, et quand‿il ouvrit la porte, il crut[30] recon-

---

whelmed, crushed. — [8]This inn. — [9]Perceive, see. — [10]The disorder. — [11]Plunged. — [12]The pocket-book. — [13]Our wealth. — [14]Touched. — [15]The recital. — [16]Concevoir, to conceive. — [17]Larceny, theft, robbery. — [18]His queer costume. — [19]The long cane. — [20]Spread. — [21]Preserved.

[22]Historical tense of avoir, to have.

Prét: J'eus, tu eus, il eut, nous‿eûmes, vous‿eûtes, ils‿eurent.

[23]After having dressed in the same — [24]To knock. — [25]A thief. — [26]L'esprit, spirit, mind, soul, genius, wit. Un‿homme d'esprit, a man of genius. — Un‿esprit fort, a free-thinker. — [27]His theft. — [28]Imagined, fancied. — [29]The defunct, the dead man.

[30]Historical tense of croire' to believe.

Prét: Je crus, tu crus, il crut, nous crûmes, vous crûtes, ils crurent.

---

maître réellement celui qu'il avait vu enterrer[31] deux jours‿auparavant[32]; il pâlit[33] et resta immobile.

Garrick, contrefaisant‿alors la voix[34] du vieillard: "Eh bien," lui dit-il, "mon cher hôte, me voici de retour[35] de mon petit voyage."

"Vous vous portez bien?" dit l'aubergiste sans‿oser le regarder‿en face.

"Parfaitement. Je vais maintenant partir pour Liverpool, où je m'embarque pour l'Irlande. Je viens vous faire mes‿adieux[36], vous remercier de vos bons‿offices et vous demander ma valise."

"La....la....voici," dit le fripon[37], qui s'était hâté[38] de l'aller chercher et d'y remettre furtivement[39] le portefeuille.

Le jeune‿homme n'en pouvait croire ses‿yeux[40]‿en revoyant sa fortune, et ses larmes[41] de reconnaissance touchèrent Garrick plus que les‿applaudissements[42] du théâtre.

Un Pari.[1]

Un monsieur‿à cheval s'arrêta un soir devant‿une‿auberge qui était remplie[2] de voyageurs. Il entra dans la cour, appela l'aubergiste d'une voix forte, et lui dit d'avoir soin de son cheval et de le mettre‿à l'écurie[3].

"Nous n'avons pas‿une seule place," dit l'aubergiste, "l'écurie est remplie de chevaux."

"Oui, oui," répondit le voyageur, qui paraissait ne pas‿entendre, "je penserai à vous demain."

"Mais je vous dis que nous n'avons pas‿une seule place."

[31]To bury, to inter.—[32]Before.—[33]He grew pale.—[34]The voice.—[35]Here I am back.—[36]I came to bid you good-bye.—[37]The rogue, rascal, knave, thief.—[38]Hastened.—[39]Furtively.—[40]His eyes.—[41]His tears of gratitude.—[42]The applause.

[1]A bet.—[2]Filled.—[3]The stable.

"Donnez-lui de l'avoine[4] et autant de foin[5] qu'il en voudra manger," dit le voyageur; et il entra sans façon[6] dans la maison.

"Il doit‿être fou," dit l'aubergiste.

"Je crois qu'il est sourd[7]," répliqua[8] le garçon d'écurie; "mais‿en tout cas[9] nous devons‿avoir soin de son cheval, nous‿en sommes responsables[10].

Notre voyageur‿était‿entré dans la maison. L'hôtesse[11] lui répéta qu'il était‿impossible de le loger.

"Pas de compliments," cria-t-il si haut que l'hôtesse trembla[12], "pas de façons[13], je vous prie, "tout va fort bien. Je me contente de peu, vos paroles sont‿entièrement‿inutiles[14], car je suis si sourd que je n'entendrais pas‿un coup de canon[15]."

Aussitôt il prit‿une chaise et s'assit[16] auprès du feu, comme s'il eût-été chex lui. L'aubergiste et sa femme qui ne savaient pas comment s'en débarrasser, résolurent[17] de lui faire passer la nuit sur‿une chaise, car tous les lits‿étaient‿occupés.

---

[4]Oats.—[5]As much hay.—[6]Without ceremony, without further ado.—[7]Deaf.—[8]Historical tense of répliquer, to reply,—[9]At any rate, in any case.—[10]Responsible.—[11]The hostess.—[12]Historical tense of trembler, to tremble.—[13]No ceremonies.—[14]Useless.—[15]Un coup de canon, a canon-shot.

[16]Historical tense of s'asseoir, to sit down.

Prét: Je m'assis, tu t'assis, il s'assit, nous nous assîmes, vous vous assîtes, ils s'assirent.

[17]**Résoudre**, to resolve; **résolvant**, resolving; **résolu**, resolved.

Pres: Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils [résolvent.

Imp: Je résolvais, tu résolvais, il résolvait, nous résolvions, etc.

Prét: Je résolus, tu résolus, il résolut, nous résolûmes, vous résolûtes, [ils résolurent.

Fut: Je résoudrai, tu résoudras, il résoudra, etc.

Cond: Je résoudrais, tu résoudrais, il résoudrait, etc.

Pres. Subj.: Que je résolve, que tu résolves, qu'il résolve, que nous [résolvions, que vous résolviez, qu'ils résolvent.

Imp. Subj.: Que je résolusse, que tu résolusses, qu'il résolût, que nous [résolussions, que vous résolussiez, qu'ils résolussent.

Bientôt‿après, il vit[18] que le repas‿était servi dans ‿une pièce voisine[19]. Il prit‿aussitôt‿une chaise et se mit‿à table. En vain[20] lui cria-t-on aussi fort que l'on put[21]‿à l'oreille[22] que c'était pour‿une société particulière[23] qui n'admettrait‿aucun‿étranger. Il sembla croire qu'on voulait le placer‿au haut de la table, c'est-à-dire à la place d'honneur. Il les remercia de leur politesse[24], en les‿assurant que sa place lui paraissait très convenable. On vit‿alors qu'on ne pouvait pas s'en faire comprendre, et on le laissa tranquille.

Après qu'il eut‿assez bien mangé, il mit sur la table une pièce de deux francs pour prix de son dîner, mais l'hôtesse la repoussa[25] dédaigneusement[26] en disant: "Quoi! vous croyez qu'un repas comme vous‿en‿avez ‿absorbé[27] un se trouve pour deux francs?"

"Je vous demande pardon, madame," répondit-il, "je veux payer moi-même mon dîner; je remercie ces messieurs de leur politesse, mais je ne souffrirai pas qu'ils payent pour moi."

Il regarda alors‿à sa montre, sortit de la pièce, en souhaitant[28]‿une bonne nuit‿à la société, et trouva bientôt le chemin d'une chambre‿à coucher.

Les autres voyageurs rirent[29] de bon coeur de son‿ apparente stupidité[30] et envoyèrent‿après lui un domestique pour voir‿où il était‿allé. Celui-ci revint bientôt et raconta[31] qu'il avait pris possession d'une de leurs chambres. On résolut‿alors de l'en chasser de force[32].

Comme‿ils s'approchaient[33] de la porte, ils‿entendirent qu'il la barricadait[34]‿avec les meubles[35] et qu'il se parlait‿à lui-même à haute voix. Ils prêtèrent[36] l'oreille et l'entendirent qui disait:

ä far; ă pale; ē eve; ĕ there; ō note; ōō room.

"Que je suis donc malheureux! Quelqu'un pourrait briser[37] la porte sans que je l'entende; ces messieurs peuvent‿être des gens‿honnêtes, mais peut-être qu'ils ne le sont pas. Comme j'ai quelque argent, je ne veux pas m'exposer‿au danger[38]. Non, je ne me mets pas‿au lit et je n'éteins[39] pas la lumière; je reste debout[40] toute la nuit, je prends mes pistolets[41], et si quelqu'un ‿entre‿ici, je tire dessus‿immédiatement[42]."

Quand ses‿auditeurs[43]‿entendirent cela, ils n'essayèrent plus de le déloger[44]; il se mit‿au lit, passa une nuit tranquille, et le monsieur dont‿il avait pris la chambre avait dû chercher‿un gîte[45] où il avait pu.

Le lendemain matin, notre voyageur descendit, alla chercher son cheval, le conduisit devant la porte, où il trouva la société déjà réunie[46] et songeant à se moquer[47] de lui encore‿une fois.

Quand il fut monté, il jeta[48] trente sous‿au valet d'écurie pour son cheval et quelques sous‿aussi pour l'aubergiste, et il dit‿alors d'un‿air tout changé:

---

[18]Historical tense of voir, to see.

Prét: Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vîmes, vous vîtes, ils virent.

[19]In an adjoining room.—[20]In vain.

[21]Historical tense of pouvoir, to be able.

Prét: Je pus, tu pus, il put, nous pûmes, vous pûtes, ils purent.

[22]The ear.—[23]Private company.—[24]Politeness.—[25]Pushed it back.—[26]Disdainfully.—[27]Absorbed, eaten.

[28]Wishing.

[29]Historical tense of rire, to laugh.

Prét: Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rîmes, vous rîtes, ils rirent.

[30]His apparent stupidity.—[31]Historical tense of raconter, to tell.—[32]To drive him out by force.—[33]Approached.—[34]He was barricading it.—[35]The furniture.—[36]Historical tense of prêter, to lend.—[37]To break.—[38]Le danger (dăń-zhă'), danger.—[39]Eteindre, to extinguish. (Conjugated like craindre, to fear).—[40]I remain up, I shall stay up.—[41]My pistols.—[42]I shall at once fire on him.—[43]Listeners, hearers.—[44]To dislodge.—[45]A resting-place.—[46]Assembled.—[47]To make fun of him.—[48]Historical tense

"Messieurs, je vous remercie de la politesse que vous m'avez témoignée[49]. Je demande pardon à l'un de vous de lui avoir pris son lit. La nuit précédente[50] on avait refusé ici un logement à un de mes amis, et il a parié[51] vingt louis d'or que je n'en trouverais pas. C'est pour cela que j'ai fait le sourd. Je vous laisse à juger[52] si je l'ai bien fait."

Il donna de l'éperon[53] à son cheval et partit.

---

of jeter, to throw.—[49]Which you have shown me.—[50]Preceding.—[51]He bet.—[52]To judge.—[53]He gave spurs to.

VOCABULAIRE. (*Suite*).	VOCABULARY. (*Continuation*).
Les bagages sont-ils‿examinés sur le navire, avant de débarquer, ou à terre après le débarquement? (nă-vēr' da-băr-k'-măń').	Will the baggage be examined on board before landing, or on shore after landing?
Où faut-il porter les bagages pour la visite de la douane?	Where must I take my baggage for examination?
Qu'est-ce qui paie des droits?	What is liable to duty?
Je ne pense pas‿avoir quelque chose à déclarer.	I do not think I have any thing to declare.
Faut-il ouvrir les malles?	Have the trunks to be opened?
Faut-il sortir les‿effets?	Have the things to be taken out?
Nous voici à la frontière. Les‿officiers de la douane française viennent.	Here we are at the frontier. Here come the French custom-house officers.
Avez-vous des‿articles soumis‿aux droits?	Have you anything dutiable with you? (= Have you some articles subject to the duties)?
Sur quels‿articles y a-t-il des droits?	On which articles do you collect duties?
Sur les cigares seulement.	On cigars only.
Je n'ai ni cigares ni cigarettes, je ne fume pas.	I carry neither cigars nor cigarettes; I don't smoke.

Veuillez ‿ ouvrir cette malle.	Pray open this trunk.
Qu'y a-t-il dans cette malle?	What does this trunk contain?
Il n'y a que des vêtements, du linge et des ‿ effets ‿ à mon ‿ usage.	It contains nothing but clothing, linen and personal effects.

Arriver.	**To Arrive.**
A quelle heure arriverons-nous ‿ à Paris?	At what time shall we reach Paris?
Serons-nous bientôt ‿ arrivés ‿ à Paris?	Shall we soon be due in Paris?
Sommes-nous ‿ encore loin de Paris?	Is it still far to Paris?
Combien de tunnels nous reste-t-il encore ‿ à passer?	How many more tunnels have we still to pass?
Avons-nous déjà passé la Seine?	Have we already crossed the Seine?
Quel est ce fleuve?	What is the name of this river?
Quelle est cette montagne (cette ‿ île)? (ël)?	What is the name of this mountain (this island)?
Le train a dix minutes de retard.	The train is ten minutes late.
Je crains que nous ne soyons ‿ en retard.	I am afraid we shall be late.

L'arrivée.	**The Arrival.**
Facteur, vite, arrêtez-moi une voiture. Voilà mon bulletin.	Porter, reserve a cab for me, quick! Here is my baggage-check.
Où délivre-t-on les bagages?	Where is the baggage delivered?

Il y a trois colis, facteur; cette malle, ce sac (de voyage) et ce carton‿à chapeau.	There are three pieces, porter; this trunk, this carpet-bag and this hat-box.
Porte-moi tout ceci à la voiture numéro 227.	Take these to my cab No. 227.
Cocher, attendez mes bagages.	Driver, wait for my baggage.
Cocher, donnez-moi votre numéro et restez pour‿attendre les bagages.	Driver, give me your number and wait for my baggage.
Placez la malle près du cocher (*or*, sur le siège).	Place the trunk on the driver's seat.
Tenez, facteur, voici pour vous.	Here porter, is your gratuity.
Conduisez-moi à l'hôtel Continental. (kŏń-tē-năń-tăl').	Drive me to the Continental Hotel.

L'Hôtel.—Les Chambres.—Le Mobilier.

Hotel.—Rooms.—Furniture.

L'hôtel.	The hotel.
Un hôtel de premier‿ordre.	A first-class hotel.
Un hôtel de second‿ordre.	A second-class hotel.
Pouvez-vous me recommander‿un‿hôtel à Blois?	Can you recommend me a hotel in Blois?
Quel est le meilleur‿hôtel à Boulogne?	Which is the best hotel in Boulogne?
A quel hôtel descendez-vous?	At what hotel do you stop?
Faut-il prendre‿une voiture?	Is it necessary to take a carriage?

Je vous recommande cet‿hôtel.	I can recommend you this hotel.
La pension. (păń-sē‿ōń').	The board.
Le propriétaire.	The proprietor.
Le garçon.	The waiter.
La fille (de chambre).	The chamber-maid.
Veuillez nettoyer ma chambre de suite.	Pray arrangé (clean) my room at once.
Faites mon lit je vous prie.	Please fix my bed.
L'ascenseur. (lă-săń-sûr')	The elevator; lift.

La Chambre. — The Room.

Une chambre sur le devant. / Une chambre donnant sur la rue.	A front-room.
Une chambre sur le derrière. / Une chambre donnant sur la cour.	A back-room.
La chambre‿à coucher.	The bed-room.
Le salon.	The drawing-room.
Le petit salon.	The sitting-room.
Une chambre‿au rez-de-chaussée.	A room on the ground-floor.
Une chambre‿au premier, au second, au troisième (étage).	A room on the first, second, third floor.
Puis-je avoir‿une chambre?	Can I have a room?
Y a-t-il des chambres disponibles?	Are there any rooms disengaged?
Je voudrais‿une chambre‿à un lit.	Let me have a single (bedded) room.

Je voudrais‿un salon et une chambre‿à coucher‿à deux lits.	I desire to have a sitting-room and a bed-room with two beds.
A quel étage?	On what floor?
Je ne voudrais pas‿être logé trop haut.	I do not wish to climb many stairs.
Y a-t-il un‿ascenseur?	Is there an elevator?
Pourrais-je avoir‿une chambre‿au rez-de chaussée?	Could I have a room on the ground-floor?
Je désirerais‿une chambre‿au premier‿avec vue sur le lac.	I wish to have a room on the first floor overlooking the lake.
Cette chambre donne-t-elle sur la rue ou sur la cour?	Does this room front towards the street or the yard?
La chambre ne me convient pas; faites-m'en voir‿une‿autre.	I do not like this room; show me another.
Je l'arrête.	I'll take it.
Je resterai quelques jours; quel est le prix de cette chambre par jour?	I shall stay several days; what is your charge per day?
Le service compris?	Inclusive of attendance?
C'est trop cher; pourrais-je en‿avoir‿une à 4 francs?	That is too dear; couldn't I have one for 4 francs?
Quel est le prix par jour pour la pension, la chambre et le service?	What is your charge for board, room and attendance per day?
La porte.	The door.
Cette porte ne ferme pas.	This door will not shut.
Où donne cette porte?	Where does this door lead to?

Cette porte communique avec le salon.	This door communicates with the sitting-room.
La fenêtre. La croisée. (krŏ‿ă'-zā).	The window.
A une fenêtre; à deux fenêtres.	With one window; with two windows.
Donnez-moi une chambre ‿à deux fenêtres; les chambres‿à une fenêtre sont trop sombres.	Give me a room with two windows, rooms with one window are too dark.
Le plancher. (plăń-shā').	The floor (of a room).
Le tapis. (tă-pē').	The carpet.
Un descente de lit.	A bed-carpet; a mat.
N'avez-vous pas des tapis sur le plancher?	Haven't you any carpets on the floor?
Nous‿avons seulement des descentes de lit.	We have only mats before the beds.
On trouve rarement des tapis couvrant‿entièrement le plancher‿en Belgique.	One rarely finds carpets covering the whole room in Belgium.
Le plafond. (plă-fŏń').	The ceiling.

Le lit; les lits. — The bed; the beds.

Propre.	Clean.
Frais.	Fresh.
La couverture de laine.	The blanket.
Le traversin (tră-vĕr-sĭń').	The bolster.
Un matelas (mă-tŭ-lă').	A mattress.
Un sommier‿élastique.	A spring-mattress.
Un drap (de lit).	A sheet.
Faites mettre des draps blancs.	Have clean sheets put on.

Les draps de lit ne sont pas très blancs (propres).	The sheets are not quite clean.
Cette couverture ne me suffit pas; donnez-m'en une‿autre.	This blanket does not keep me warm, give me another.
J'aime à avoir la tête haute; donnez-moi encore‿un‿oreiller (ŏ-rë-yä').	I like my head to be high; give me another pillow.
Dormir.	To sleep.
Vous‿êtes-vous bien reposé?	Did you rest well?
Ordinairement je dors très bien, mais la nuit dernière j'ai mal dormi.	Generally I sleep very well, but last night I slept badly.
Faire le lit.	To make the bed.
Veuillez faire mon lit de suite.	Pray fix my bed at once.
Je suis très fatigué et je veux me retirer de suite.	I am very tired and wish to go to bed at once.
A quelle heure s'est-il couché?	At what time did he go to bed?
Il s'est couché à dix‿heures.	He went to bed at ten.
Je n'ai pas fermé l'oeil de la nuit.	I have not slept a wink the whole night (=I have not closed the eye of the night).

---

[1]To call, **appeler**, in phrases like these:

Comment cela s'appelle t-il en français?	What do you call this?

But:

Voulez-vous venir me prendre?	Will you call for me?
Voulez-vous que j'aille vous prendre?	Shall I call for you?
Est-on venu le prendre?	Has it been called for?

Eveiller (ā-vĕ-yā').	To call[1]; to awaken.
Eveillez-moi de bonne heure; je veux partir par le premier train.	Call me early; I want to leave by the first train.
Je veux faire la grasse matinée; que personne ne vienne me déranger demain matin.	I want to have a long night's rest; don't allow any one to disturb me to-morrow morning.
Qu'on ne me réveille pas avant neuf heures; je veux prendre une bonne nuit de repos.	I am not to be called before nine o'clock; I wish to have a good night's rest.

La Table (tā'-bl').

The Table.

Le tapis de table.	The table-cover.
La chaise.	The chair.
La chaise à bascule.	The rocking-chair.
La garde-robe.[1]	The wardrobe.
Une armoire à glace.	A wardrobe (with mirrors).
La commode.	The chest of drawers.
Une commode à trois tiroirs.	A bureau with three drawers.
Le miroir (mē-rō-ăr').	The mirror.
Le sofa. / Le canapé.	The sofa.
La lampe[2] (lăń'-p').	The lamp.
Est-elle faite?	Has it been cleaned?
Il n'y a plus d'huile.	There is no oil in it.
La mèche n'est pas coupée droit.	The wick is not cut evenly.
Un abat-jour[3].	A shade (of a lamp).

[1] Ma garde-robe, my dresses, my clothes.

[2] A street lamp, un réverbère.

[3] L'ombre, the shade, shadow.—La nuance, shade (of color).

Le verre (de lampe[1]).	The chimney.
Le candélabre.	The chandelier.
Un candélabre à quatre branches.	A chandelier with four brackets.
La bougie (bōō-zhē').	The candle.
Le gaz.	The gas.
Allumer.	To light.
Eteindre.	To put out.
Ouvrez le robinet (rō-bē-neh').	Turn on the gas.
Fermez le robinet.	Turn off the gas.
Une allumette.	A match.
Des allumettes[2].	Matches.
Apportez-moi de l'eau fraîche à boire.	Bring me fresh water to drink.
Apportez-moi de l'eau pour la toilette.	Bring me fresh water to wash with.
Remplissez la carafe (le pot à l'eau).	Fill the pitcher.
Où est la sonnette?	Where is the bell?
A quelle heure dîne-t-on à la table d'hôte?	At what hour is the table d'hote-dinner?
Nettoyez ces habits, garçon.	Brush these clothes, waiter.
Mes habits et mes bottes sont mouilles; faites les sécher. (mōō-ya').	My clothes and boots are wet; please dry them.
Faites du feu. (fû).	Light a fire.

[1]La cheminée, the chimney.

[2]The match (marriage), le mariage. To make a good match, trouver un bon parti. To match (marry), se marier.

The match (contest), la lutte; la course.

To match (suit), assortir. It does not match, cela n'est pas assorti.

Veuillez me procurer ‿un commissionnaire parlant ‿anglais, s'il est possible. (pŏ-sē' bl').	Get me a commissioner, if possible, someone who speaks English.
Y a-t-il des lettres pour moi?	Are there any letters for me?
Est-on venu me demander?	Did anyone inquire for me?
Si l'on vient me demander, vous direz que je rentrerai à six ‿heures.	If anyone asks for me, tell them that I expect to be back at six.
Si l'on vient me demander, vous direz que je suis ‿allé chez monsieur Quéry, où l'on me trouvera jusqu'à quatre ‿heures.	If anyone inquires for me, tell them that I have gone to Mr Quéry's where I can be found till four o'clock.
Si le tailleur vient m'apporter mon ‿habit, dites-lui de revenir demain matin.	If the tailor should bring me my coat, tell him to call again to-morrow morning.
S'il m'arrive des paquets faites-les mettre dans ma chambre s'il vous plaît.	If any packages should come for me, have them put into my room, please.
Pourrais-je écrire quelques mots ‿au bureau?	Could I write a few lines in the office?
Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît, tout ce qu'il faut pour ‿écrire.	Pray give me some writing-materials.
Je partirai demain par le train de six ‿heures, gare de l'est. Pourrai-je prendre l'omnibus de l'hôtel?	I start to-morrow by the six o'clock train, Eastern station. Will the omnibus go there?

Faites-moi appeler à temps.	Let me be called in time.
Arrêtez à temps une voiture et faites descendre mes effets.	Get me a carriage in good time and have my baggage brought down.
Dites qu'on fasse ma note.	Have my bill made out.
Donnez-moi la note, je vous prie.	Please give me my bill.
Je n'ai pas eu cela.	I have not had this.
C'est déjà payé.	That has already been paid.
Je trouve ce prix trop élevé.	I find this charge too high.
Réveillez-moi demain matin à cinq heures; frappez vigoureusement à ma porte. (vē-gōō-rū-z'-măń').	Call me at five to-morrow; knock loudly at my door.
Je serais désolé de manquer le train.	I should be sorry to miss the train.

De l'Habillement. (dŭ lă-bē-yŭ-măń') — Dress.

Le vêtement. (vāt'măń').	The suit.
Un habit complet. (köń-pleh).	A suit, a complete suit of clothes.
Le pardessus. / Le paletot.	The overcoat.
Un pardessus d'été.	A summer overcoat.
Un pardessus d'hiver.	A winter overcoat.
Un habit.	A coat; a dress-coat.
Le justaucorps. (zhū-stō-kŏr').	The (close fitting) coat.
La redingote. (rū-dĭń-gŏt').	The frock-coat.

Un gilet. (zhē-leh).	A waistcoat.
Le gilet blanc.	The white waistcoat.
Un pantalon. Une paire de pantalons.	Trousers.
Les bretelles. (brŭ-tĕl').	Suspenders.
La poche.	The pocket.
Le mouchoir. (mœ̆-shŏ-ăr').	The handkerchief.
Le bouton. (bœ̆-tŏñ').	The button.
Il manque un bouton.	A button is off here.
Faites-moi, je vous prie, mettre un bouton, mais bien solidement.	Please have a button put on, but strongly.
Boutonnez votre pardessus.	Button your overcoat.
Déboutonnez votre redingote.	Unbutton your coat.
La boutonnière.	The button-hole.
La boutonnière est déchirée; je vous prie de la refaire.	The button-hole is torn; please mend it.
Le tire-bouton. (tēr-bœ̆-tŏñ').	The button-hook.
La chemise. (shŭ-mēz').	The shirt.
La chemise de nuit.	The night-shirt.
Changer de chemise.	To put on a clean shirt.
Le devant de chemise. Le plastron.	The shirt-front.
Le col.	The (shirt) collar.
Le faux-col.	The collar (to button on).
Un col montant (*or* droit)	A stand-up collar.
Un col rabattu.	A lay-down collar.
Les manchettes. (măñ-shĕt').	The cuffs.

La cravate.	The neck-tie.
Lier; attacher. (lē-a').	To tie.
Faire un noeud. (nû).	To tie a knot.
Le gilet de flanelle.	The flannel waistcoat.
Les caleçons (kă-l'sŏń').	The drawers.
Les souliers.	The shoes.
Une paire de souliers.	A pair of shoes.
Une paire de bottes.	A pair of boots.
Des bottines.	High shoes.
Prenez-moi la mesure d'une paire de bottes.	Measure me for a pair of boots.
Les pantoufles.	The slippers.
La robe.	The dress.
Le peignoir.	The wrapper; morning-dress.
Le jupon. (zhû-pŏń')	The petticoat.
Le linge. (lĭń'-zh').	The linen.
Les gants.	The gloves.
Une paire de gants.	A pair of gloves.
Des gants de chevreau. / Des gants de peau.	Kid-gloves.
Le manteau (măń-tŏ').	The cloak.
La pelisse. / Le manteau fourré.	The fur-cloak.
Le manchon. (măń-shŏń').	The muff.

Chez un Tailleur. — At a Tailor's.

Pouvez-vous me recommander un bon tailleur?	Can you recommend me a good tailor?
Travaille-t-il bien?	Is his workmanship good?
Faites-moi voir vos échantillons.	Show me your patterns (*or* samples).

Je désire‿avoir‿un pardessus.	I want an overcoat.
Prenez mes mesures pour ‿un vêtement.	Measure me for a suit.
A la mode du jour.	In the latest fashion.
Pas trop serré.	Not too tight.
Pas trop large.	Not too wide.
Un peu plus long.	A little longer.
Pas tout‿à fait si long.	Not quite so long.
Avec une rangée. (răń-zhā').	Single breasted.
Avec deux rangées de boutons.	Double breasted.
La doublure.	The lining.
Pour quand pouvez-vous me livrer ce pardessus?	When can I have this overcoat?
Pas‿avant?	Not before?
Je ne peux pas‿attendre ‿aussi longtemps; il me le faut pour mardi.	I cannot wait so long; I must have it by Tuesday.
Envoyez-le-moi avec la note acquittée.	Send it to me C. O. D. (= with a receipted bill).
Pouvez-vous me recommander‿une maison de confection près d'ici? (kŏń-fĕk-sĕ‿ŏń').	Can you recommend me a clothier near here?
Montrez-moi un vêtement foncé (clair).	Show me a dark (light) colored garment.
Comment me va-t-il?	How does it fit?
Me va-t-il bien?	Does it fit?
Il me serre trop la taille.	It is too tight in the waist.
Il me gêne sous les bras.	It is too tight under the arms.

Les manches ne sont-elles pas trop grandes?	Are not the sleeves too large?
J'aime les pantalons collants.	I like my trousers to be close fitting.
Est-ce que vous vous chargez aussi de réparations?	Do you also undertake repairs?
Le pantalon est usé en bas; rentrez-le un peu.	The trousers are worn at the bottom; turn them in a little.
Rebordez mon paletot et changez les boutons.	Rebind my overcoat and put on new buttons.
Faites partir ces taches-là.	Remove those stains.

Une Couturière. — A Dressmaker.

Un tailleur pour dames.	A (ladies') tailor.
Je voudrais me faire faire une robe.	I wish to have a dress made.
Montrez-moi des échantillons.	Show me some patterns.
Faites-moi voir des gravures de mode. (grăvūr').	Let me see some fashion-plates.
Faites-moi la robe sur ce modèle.	Make the dress from this design.
Prenez-moi la mesure.	Take my measure.
Le devant.	The front.
Le derrière.	The back.
Le haut.	The top.
Le bas.	The bottom.
Le corps.	The body.
La jupe.	The skirt.
Je fournirai l'étoffe.	I shall supply my own materials.

Combien me faut-il de mètres?	How many yards will it take?
A combien me reviendrait la robe, tout compris?	What would this dress cost complete (inclusive of everything)?
Cette coupe est-elle toujours‿à la mode?	Is this pattern still fashionable?
Je désire la robe courte (longue).	I wish to have a short (a long) skirt.
Je ne la voudrais pas trop collante; j'aime‿à être très‿à l'aise.	It must not fit too tightly; I like to feel comfortable.
Une garniture. (gär-nē-tūr').	The trimming.
Vous mettrez‿une garniture de passementerie.	Trim the dress with passementry.
Une robe montante.	A high-necked dress.
Une robe décolletée.	A low-necked dress.
Montrez-moi des‿échantillons de rubans.	Show me some samples of ribbons.
Mettez-moi sur ce manteau des boutons d'ivoire. (dē-vō‿är').	Put ivory-buttons on this cloak.
Je voudrais‿avoir ma robe pour samedi matin.	I should like to have the dress early on Saturday.
Quand faudra-t-il venir l'essayer?	When shall I call to try it on?
Me prend-elle bien la taille?	Does it fit well in the waist?
Le corsage (kōr-säzh').	The waist.
Veuillez‿essayer le corsage.	Pray try on the waist.
Ce corsage vous va très bien.	The waist fits you very well.

Retoucher.	To change, to alter.
Retouchez ce corsage; il ne va pas.	Alter the waist; it doesn't fit.
L'épaule.	The shoulder.
La robe va mal aux épaules; veuillez la retoucher.	The dress fits badly in the shoulders; please alter it.
Les manches sont trop étroites (trop larges; trop longues; trop courtes).	The sleeves are too narrow (too wide; too long; too short).
Faire des plis (plē).	To wrinkle.
La manche fait des plis là; veuillez la retoucher.	The sleeve wrinkles right there; change it pray.
Le col est trop bas.	The collar is too low.
Le col n'est pas assez haut.	The collar is not high enough.
Quand ma robe sera-t-elle finie?	When will my dress be done?
Votre robe sera finie demain sans faute.	It will be done to-morrow without fail.

La Toilette. — Dressing.

S'habiller (sä-bē-yä'). Faire sa toilette.	To dress.
Il s'habille.	He is dressing.
N'êtes-vous pas encore habillé?	Aren't you dressed yet?
N'êtes-vous pas encore prêt?	Aren't you ready yet?
Elle change *de* robe.	She is changing her dress.
Il se déshabille.	He is undressing.
Le goût (gōō).	The taste.
Elle s'habille avec beaucoup de goût.	She dresses with a great deal of taste (of style).

Ce chapeau vous va très bien.	This bonnet is very becoming to you?
Croyez-vous que ce chapeau m'aille?	Do you think this hat is becoming to me?
Je pense qu'il vous va très bien.	I think it very becoming.
La couleur (kōō-lûr').	The color.
Cette couleur ne me va pas.	This color is not becoming to me.
La figure (fē-gūr').	The face.
Le teint (tīñ').	The complexion.
Délicat (da-lē-kä').	Delicate.
Rosé (rō-zä').	Rosy.
Elle a un teint délicat‿et rosé; elle ne peut pas porter‿une couleur aussi criarde (aussi voyante).	She has a delicate, rosy complexion; she cannot wear such a loud color.
Cette couleur‿est trop criarde; voici la bonne couleur.	This color is too loud; this is the right one.

Laver.

To Wash.

Je voudrais me laver les mains.	I should like to wash my hands.
Je voudrais faire ma toilette.	I should like a wash and brush-up.
Apportez-moi de l'eau, du savon et des serviettes.	Bring me some water, soap and towels.
Y a-t-il de l'eau dans ma chambre?	Is there any water in my room?
Il faut d'abord que je me lave.	First of all I must have a wash.

Le lavabo. La cuvette.	The wash-basin.
Le pot‿à l'eau.	The pitcher.
Un morceau de savon.	A cake of soap.
L'éponge. (lă-pŏń'-zh').	The sponge.
La serviette.	The towel.
Essuyer. (ē-sū‿ē-yā').	To dry.
Je m' essuie les mains.	I am drying my hands.
Essuyez vos mains‿avec cette serviette.	Dry your hands with this towel.
Se rincer la bouche. (rĭń-sā').	To clean one's mouth.
Je me rince la bouche.	I am cleaning my mouth.
La dent; les dents.	The tooth; the teeth.
La brosse à dents.	The tooth-brush.
Je me brosse les dents.	I am brushing my teeth.
La brosse à cheveux.	The hair-brush.
La brosse à ongles.	The nail-brush.
Il se brosse les cheveux	He is brushing his hair.
Le peigne.	The comb.
Je me peigne.	I am combing my hair.
La raie.	The parting.
La raie est droite.	The parting is straight.
La raie est de travers.	The parting is crooked
L'huile.	The oil.
La pommade.	The pomatum.
La lime. (lēm').	The file.
Je lime mes‿ongles	I am filing my nails.
La poudre.	The powder.
La poudre de toilette.	Toilet-powder.
La poudre dentifrice. (dăń tē-frēs').	Tooth-powder.
La boîte‿à poudre.	The powder-box.
La houppe‿à poudre La houpette.	The powder-puff.

Elle s'est poudré la figure.	She powdered her face.
Se baigner.	To bath.
Prendre‿un bain.	To take a bath.
Il se baigne; il prend‿un bain.	He is bathing; he takes a bath.
Se raser.	To shave.
Je me rase toujours moi-même.	I always shave myself.

Le Barbier. — The Barber.

Je voudrais me faire faire la barbe.	I wish to be shaved.
Faites-moi la barbe, s'il vous plaît.	Please shave me.
Rasez-moi toute la barbe.	Take off the whole of my beard.
Vous me laisserez seulement la moustache.	Leave the moustache only.
Les favoris.	The whiskers.
La barbe.	The beard (full beard).
Rasez-moi le menton (măń-tōń').	Shave the chin.
La peau sensible (săń-sē'-bl').	Sensitive skin.
Ma barbe est très raide; savonnez-la davantage (dă-văń-tăzh').	My beard is very stubborn; lather more it thoroughly.
Votre rasoir n'est pas‿assez tranchant (trăń-shăń').	Your razor is not sharp enough.
Nous n'avons pas de bons‿établissements de barbiers‿en‿Europe	We haven't any large barber-shops in Europe.
Les barbiers vont‿à domicile.	The barbers go to their customers' houses.

Le Coiffeur.	The Hair-dresser.
Je voudrais me faire tailler les cheveux.	I wish to have my hair cut.
Court par derrière, un peu plus long sur le devant.	Short behind, a little longer in front.
Rafraîchissez seulement, mes cheveux tombent.	Take off only a little, I am losing my hair.
Je grisonne.	I am getting grey.
Donnez-moi un coup de peigne[1], je vous prie.	Dress my hair please.
Faites-moi la raie au milieu (sur le côté).	Part my hair in the middle (on the side).
Donnez-moi un coup de fer.	Curl my hair.
Donnez-moi un coup de brosse.	Brush my hair.
Les ciseaux (sē-zō').	The scissors.
Du linge blanc (propre).	**Clean Linen.**
Du linge sale.	Soiled linen.
Faites porter ce linge chez la blanchisseuse (blăń-shē-sûz').	Send these clothes to the laundress.
La note y est.	The washing-list is there.
Pour quand pouvez-vous me le rendre?	When can I have it sent home?

[1]Veuillez-donner un coup de fer à ce chapeau, Pray iron this hat.

Le coup means literally the stroke, blow, knock, and is used almost as frequently in French as "to fix" is by Americans. Thus we say:

Un coup de peigne, s'il vous plaît,	Please comb my hair.
Un coup de brosse, s'il vous plaît,	Pray brush my hair.
Un coup de fer, s'il vous plaît,	Pray curl my hair.
Donnez un coup de balai à cette chambre,	Please, sweep the room.

Il me faut le linge pour jeudi.	I must have the washing by Thursday.
N'oubliez pas de raccommoder les chemises.	Do not forget to mend the shirts.
L'amidon (lă-mē-dŏń').	The starch.
Amidonner.	To starch.
Repasser; donner un coup de fer.	To iron.
Ne repassez pas mes cols aussi raides (raid').	Do not iron my collars so stiff.

Articles de Parure. (ăr-tē-k'l dŭ pă-rūr').	**Articles of Ornamentation.**
Des bijoux.	Jewels.
Des diamants (dē-ā-măń').	Diamonds.
La perle; les perles.	The pearl; the pearls.
La bague (bă-g').	The ring.
La bague de diamants.	The diamond ring.
Les boucles d'oreille.	The ear-rings.
Le bracelet (brā-s'leh').	The bracelet.
Le collier (kŏl-yā').	The necklace.
La montre.	The watch.
La chaîne de montre.	The watch-chain.
Les boutons de chemise.	The studs.
Les boutons de manchettes.	The cuff-buttons.
Les lunettes (lū-nĕt').	The spectacles.
Le lorgnon (lorn-yoń').	The eye-glass.
Myope.	Near-sighted.
Presbyte.	Far-sighted.
La lorgnette (de spectacle)	The opera-glass.
La canne.	The cane.
L'ombrelle. / L'en-tout-cas.	The parasol.
Le parapluie.	The umbrella.
L'eventail (la-văń-tăy').	The fan.

Le Temps	The Time.
L'heure.	The time; the hour.
La mesure (mŭ-zūr').	The time; the measure.
Battre la mesure.	To beat time.
Aller‿en mesure.	To keep time.
Perdre la mesure.	To get out of time.
Trois fois.	Three times.
Une‿autre fois.	Another time.
Alors.	At that time.
Aujourd'hui.	At the present time.
En même temps.	At the same time.
Pendant longtemps.	For a long time.
Il y a longtemps que je ne vous‿ai vu.	I have not seen you for a long time.
On peut faire cela en‿un rien de temps.	This can be done in no time.
De bonne‿heure; à temps.	In good time.
De mon temps.	In my time.
Pour quelque temps.	For some time.
De temps‿en temps.	From time to time.
Venir‿à propos.	To come at the right time.
Cela vient fort‿à propos.	That comes just at the right time.
Arriverons-nous‿à temps?	Shall we be in time?
A quelle heure le train part-il pour‿Orléans?	At what time does the train start for Orléans?
Combien de temps nous reste-t-il jusqu'au départ?	How much time have we before the train starts?
Sommes-nous‿à temps pour le train?	Are we in time for the train?
Où aurons-nous le temps de manger quelque chose?	Where shall we have time to eat something?

En‿aurons-nous le temps?	Have we (got) time for it?
Avez-vous le temps de m'accompagner?	Have you time to accompany me?
Je n'ai pas le temps.	I have no time.
Donnez-vous le temps.	Take your time.

L'heure.

The time; the hour; o'clock.

Quelle heure avons-nous? / Quelle heure est-il?	What is the time? What time is it?
Pourriez-vous me dire l'heure qu'il est?	Can you tell me the time?
Il est‿une‿heure‿et demie.	It is half-past one.
Vers les cinq‿heures.	Towards 5 o'clock.
Il n'est pas loin de quatre‿heures.	It is nearly four.
Il est quatre‿heures moins trois.	It still wants three minutes to four.
Six‿heures vont sonner. / Il va être six‿heures.	It is about to strike six o'clock.
Six‿heures viennent de sonner.	It has just struck six.
La demie sonne.	The half hour is striking.
A sept‿heures précises. / A sept‿heures sonnantes.	Punctually at seven.
De huit‿heures du matin jusqu'à trois‿heures du soir.	From 8 A. M. to 3 P. M.

La Division du Temps.

Division of Time.

Aujourd'hui.	To-day.
Demain.	To-morrow.
Après-demain.	The day after to-morrow.

Hier.	Yesterday.
Avant-hier.	Day before yesterday.
Ce matin.	This morning.
Demain matin.	To-morrow morning.
Demain‿à midi.	To-morrow noon.
Demain soir.	To-morrow night.
Hier soir.	Last night.
La veille.	The day (night) before.
Le lendemain.	The day after.
Cette semaine.	This week.
La semaine prochaine.	Next week.
La semaine passée.	Last week.
Huit jours.	Eight days.
Après huit jours.	After a week.
Pendant huit jours.	During a week.
Pour huit jours.	For a week.
Dans huit jours.	In a week.
Plus de huit jours.	More than a week.
Demain‿en huit.	To-morrow week.
Dans la huitaine.	In a week.
Il y a huit jours.	A week ago.
Il y a eu hier huit jours.	A week ago yesterday.
Quinze jours. / Une quinzaine.	A fortnight.

Les Mois.	The Months.
Janvier (zhăń-vē‿a').	January.
Février (fā-vrē‿a').	February
Mars (mărs).	March.
Avril. (ă-vrēl').	April.
Mai. (mai).	May.
Juin. (zhū‿ıń').	June.
Juillet. (zhū‿ē-yeh').	July.
Août. (œ).	August.

Septembre. (sĕp-tăń'-br')	September.
Octobre. (ŏk-tŏ'-br').	October.
Novembre. (nŏ-văń'-br').	November.
Décembre, (da-săń'-br').	December.
Le premier décembre.	On the first of December.
Le trois janvier.	On January third.
Au commencement de mai. / Les premiers jours du mois de mai.	At the beginning of May.
A la fin de mai. (fĭń).	The last of May.
Ce mois de juin-ci.	This June.
Au mois de juin prochain.	Next June.
Au mois de juin dernier.	Last June.
Ce mois-ci.	This month.
Le mois prochain.	Next month.
Le mois dernier.	Last month.
Le premier du mois courant. (kœ-răń').	The first inst.
A la fin du mois.	At the end of this month.
Trois mois. / Un trimestre.	A quarter of a year.
Six mois. / Un semestre.	Half a year.
Neuf mois.	Three quarters of a year.
Un an.	A year.
En dix-huit cent quatre-vingt-treize.	In 1893.
Le jour le plus long.	The longest day.
Le jour le plus court	The shortest day
La Toussaint.	**All Saints' Day.**
La fête des morts.	All Souls' Day.
Le mercredi des Cendres (săń'-dr').	Ash Wednesday

Noël, m.	Christmas.
Les pâques.	Easter.
Le vendredi saint.	Good Friday.
Le carême.	Lent.
La mi-carême.	Mid-Lent.
Le jour de l'an.	New year's day.
Le dimanche des rameaux.	Palm-Sunday.
La semaine sainte.	Passion-week.
Le mardi gras.	Shrove-Tuesday.
La Pentecôte.	Whitsuntide.

Le Médecin.	**The Physician.**
Je suis souffrant; faites venir‿un médecin.	I am not well, send for a doctor.
Voulez-vous que j'aille chercher‿un médecin?	Shall I go for a doctor?
Quel médecin me recommandez-vous?	What physician can you recommend me?
Y a-t-il ici un médecin‿anglais?	Does an English physician live here?
Quels sont ses‿honoraires pour‿une consultation (pour‿une visite)?	What are his charges for a consultation (for a visit)?
Quelles sont les‿heures du docteur?	What are his office-hours?
Faudra-t-il attendre longtemps?	Shall I have long to wait?
Je souffre de.....	I suffer from.....
J'ai la fièvre.	I feel feverish.
J'ai des chaleurs‿et des frissons.	I feel hot and cold.

Je ne sais pas trop ce que j'ai.	I don't exactly know what is the matter with me.
J'éprouve un malaise général.	I feel altogether uncomfortable.
J'ai mal à la tête (aux dents, à la gorge. à la poitrine, au ventre).	I have a head-ache, (tooth-ache, pain in the throat, in the chest, stomach-ache).
J'ai mal au coeur.	I feel sick. (Of nausea *only*).
Le pied me fait mal.	I have a pain in the foot.
Le bras me fait mal.	My arm pains me.
J'ai le foie malade.	I am suffering from my liver.
J'ai peine à respirer. / J'ai peine à reprendre haleine.	I experience difficulties in breathing.
Je n'ai pas dormi de la nuit.	I have not slept all night long.
Je passe bien des nuits blanches.	I pass many sleepless nights.
Je crois que j'ai un embarras gastrique.	I think my stomach is disordered.
Je n'ai point d'appétit.	I have no appetite at all.
J'ai fait une saison à Carlsbad; je m'en suis mal trouvé. (*Or:* Cela ne m'a pas profité).	I took the waters at Carlsbad; it did me no good. (=I have made a season at C.; I found myself ill for it).
Pouvez-vous me donner un remède contre...?	Can you prescribe for me for...?
Combien de fois par jour dois-je prendre ce remède?	How many times a day must I take this medicine?

Dois-je me mettre‿à la diète?	Have I to diet myself?
Que puis-je manger(boire)?	What may I eat (drink)?
Puis-je fumer?	Am I allowed to smoke?
J'ai été blessé dans‿une chute. (shût').	I have been injured through a fall.
Je me suis cassé le bras.	I broke my arm.
Je me suis foulé le pied. (fœ-la')	I have sprained my ankle.
Je me sens‿un peu mieux.	I feel a little better.
Je ne me sens pas‿encore mieux.	I don't feel any better yet.
Je suis‿enrhumé (zăñ-rû-ma').	I have a cold.
Je me suis‿enrhumé.	I took a cold.
J'ai attrapé un rhume.	I caught cold.
Vous‿allez vous‿enrhumer	You are going to take cold.
Je me suis brûlé.	I burnt myself.
J'ai la figure‿enflée.	My face is swollen.
Est-ce qu'il y a quelque chose de sérieux‿à ma maladie?	Is my sickness serious?
Je puis vous‿assurer que cela ne sera rien.	Assuredly no.
Vous prendrez ces poudres.	Take these powders.
Combien faudra-t-il en par jour?	How many have I to take a day?
Prenez‿en trois.	Three.
Dites-moi, je vous prie, de combien je vous suis redevable.	Pray tell me to what extent I am indebted to you.

X.

THE FRENCH GRAMMAR.

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY
THE INTERNATIONAL COLLEGE OF LANGUAGES.

The Verb.

1. The conjugation of verbs in French, as in English, is made up of simple and compound forms.

2. The simple forms are expressed by a single word, as: J'ai, I have; je parle, I speak; je vendais, I sold, etc.

3. Simple tenses are made up of the stem and the termination, as **parl**-er, **fin**-ir, **vend**-re, **rec**-evoir. Parl-, fin-, vend-, rec- are stems, and—in regular verbs—remain always unchanged.

Er, ir, re and evoir are endings and vary to indicate various tenses and persons. As: Parl-er, to speak; je parl-e, I speak; nous parl-ons, we speak; nous parl-ions, we spoke, we were speaking; nous parl-erons, we shall speak.

4. Compound tenses are made up of one of the auxiliaries **avoir** and **être**, coupled with the past participle of the verb conjugated, as: J'ai parlé, I have spoken; j'ai fini, I have finished; j'aurais vendu, I would have sold; il avait reçu, he had received.

5. The auxiliary is usually **avoir**, to have. Verbs which are conjugated with **être**, to be, are given below.

Complete Conjugation of Avoir, To Have.

The four forms are given: *affirmative*, *interrogative*, *negative* and *negative-interrogative*.

To have, **avoir**; having, **ayant**; had, **eu, eue, eus, eues**; to have had, **avoir eu**; having had, **ayant eu**.

NOTE.—Throughout these tables the pronouns of the third person may be changed. Instead of **Il a**, he has, and **Ils ont**, they have (m.), the pupil may recite **elle a**, she has, or **on a**, one has, and **elles ont**, they have (f.).

Indicatif Présent.

j'ai, I have.	ai-je? have I?
tu as, thou hast.	as-tu? hast thou?
il a, he has.	a-t-il? has he?
nous avons, we have.	avons-nous? have we?
vous avez, you have.	avez-vous? have you?
ils ont, they have.	ont-ils? have they?
je n'ai pas, I have not.	n'ai-je pas? have I not?
tu n'as pas etc.	n'as-tu pas? etc.
il n'a pas	n'a-t-il pas?
nous n'avons pas	n'avons-nous pas?
vous n'avez pas	n'avez-vous pas?
ils n'ont pas	n'ont-ils pas?

Imparfait.

j'avais, I had.	avais-je? had I?
tu avais etc.	avais-tu? etc.
il avait	avait-il?
nous avions	avions-nous?
vous aviez	aviez-vous?
ils avaient	avaient-ils?
je n'avais pas, I had not.	n'avais-je pas? had I not?
tu n'avais pas etc.	n'avais-tu pas? etc.
il n'avait pas	n'avait-il pas?
nous n'avions pas	n'avions-nous pas?
vous n'aviez pas	n'aviez-vous pas?
ils n'avaient pas	n'avaient-ils pas?

Prétérit.

j'eus, I had.	eus-je? had I?
tu eus, etc.	eus-tu? etc.
il eut	eut-il?
nous eûmes	eûmes-nous?
vous eûtes	eûtes-vous?
ils eurent	eurent-ils?

je n'eus pas, I had not.	n'eus-je pas? had I not?
tu n'eus pas, etc.	n'eus-tu pas? etc.
il n'eut pas	n'eut-il pas?
nous n'eûmes pas	n'eûmes-nous pas?
vous n'eûtes pas	n'eûtes-vous pas?
ils n'eurent pas	n'eurent-ils pas?

Passé Indéfini.

j'ai eu, I have had, etc.	ai-je eu? have I had? etc.
je n'ai pas eu, I have not had.	n'ai-je pas eu? have I not had?

Plus-que-parfait.

j'avais eu, I had had, etc.	avais-je eu? had I had? etc.
je n'avais pas eu, I had not had.	n'avais-je pas eu? had I not had?

Passé Antérieur.

j'eus eu, I had had, etc.	eus-je eu? had I had? etc.
je n'eus pas eu, I had not had.	n'eus-je pas eu? had I not had?

Futur.

j'aurai, I shall have.	aurai-je? shall I have?
tu auras, etc.	auras-tu? etc.
il aura	aura-t-il?
nous aurons	aurons-nous?
vous aurez	aurez vous?
ils auront	auront-ils?

je n'aurai pas, I shall not have.	n'aurai-je pas? shall I not have?
tu n'auras pas, etc.	n'auras-tu pas? etc.
il n'aura pas	n'aura-t-il pas?
nous n'aurons pas	n'aurons-nous pas?
vous n'aurez pas	n'aurez-vous pas?
ils n'auront pas	n'auront-ils pas?

Futur Antérieur.

j'aurai eu, I shall have had, etc.	aurai-je eu? shall I have had? etc.
je n'aurai pas eu, etc., I shall not [have had.	n'aurai-je pas eu? etc., Shall I not [have had?

Conditionnel Présent.

j'aurais, I should have.	aurais-je? should I have?
tu aurais etc.	aurais-tu? etc.
il aurait	aurait il?
nous aurions	aurions-nous?
vous auriez	auriez-vous?
ils auraient	auraient-ils?
je n'aurais pas, I should not have.	n'aurais-je pas? should I not have?
tu n'aurais pas, etc.	n'aurais-tu pas? etc.
il n'aurait pas	n'aurait-il pas?
nous n'aurions pas	n'aurions-nous pas?
vous n'auriez pas	n'auriez-vous pas?
ils n'auraient pas	n'auraient-ils pas?

Conditionnel Passé.

j'aurais eu, I should have had.	aurais-je eu? should I have had?
or, etc.	or, etc.
j'eusse eu	eusse-je eu?
tu eusses eu	eusses-tu eu?
il eût eu	eût-il eu?
nous eussions eu	eussions-nous eu?
vous eussiez eu	eussiez-vous eu?
ils eussent eu	eussent-ils eu?
I should not have had.	Should I not have had?
je n'aurais pas eu, etc.,	n'aurais-je pas eu? etc.,
or,	or,
je n'eusse pas eu	n'eusse-je pas eu?
tu n'eusses pas eu	n'eusses-tu pas eu?
il n'eût pas eu	n'eût-il pas eu?
nous n'eussions pas eu	n'eussions-nous pas eu?
vous n'eussiez pas eu	n'eussiez-vous pas eu?
ils n'eussent pas eu	n'eussent-ils pas eu?

Impératif.

aie, have (thou).	n'aie pas, do not have.
ayons, let us have.	n'ayons pas, do not let us have.
ayez, have (you).	n'ayez pas, do not have.

Subjonctif Présent.

que j'aie, that I may have.	que je n'aie pas, that I may not have,
que tu aies, etc.	que tu n'aies pas, etc.
qu'il ait	qu'il n'ait pas
que nous ayons	que nous n'ayons pas
que vous ayez	que vous n'ayez pas
qu'ils aient.	qu'ils n'aient pas

Imparfait.

que j'eusse, that I might have.	que je n'eusse pas, that I might not
que tu eusses etc.	que tu n'eusses pas, etc. [have.
qu'il eût	qu'il n'eût pas
que nous eussions	que nous n'eussions pas
que vous eussiez	que vous n'eussiez pas
qu'ils eussent	qu'ils n'eussent pas

Passé-Indéfini.

que j'aie eu, that I may have had, etc.

Plus-que-parfait.

que j'eusse eu, that I might have had, etc.

Remarks on Avoir.

1. Avoir is used idiomatically in the following connections:

Avoir besoin (de),	To need, to be in need of.
" chaud,	To be warm.
" froid,	" cold.
" faim,	" hungry.
" soif,	" thirsty.
" sommeil,	" sleepy.
" peur (de),	" afraid (of).
" honte "	" ashamed "
" raison "	" right (in).
" tort "	" wrong "
" cours,	" current.
" coutume (de),	" accustomed (to).
" dessein "	To intend to.
" dispute,	To have difficulties.
" envie (de),	" a desire (to).
" appétit,	" an appetite.
" lieu (de),	" cause (of).
" lieu,	To happen.
" mal,	To have a pain.
" bonne mine,	To look well.
" patience (pă-sĕ-ăn'-s'),	To have patience.
" peine (à),	To have difficulty (in).
" pitié,	To take pity.
" soin,	To take care.
" sujet (de),	To have occasion (for).

2. The following expressions relating to one's *feelings*, *age*, *stature* and to *dimensions generally* are given with **avoir.**

a. Qu'avez-vous?	What is the matter with you? / What ails you?
Avez-vous quelque chose?	Is any thing the matter with you?
Je n'ai rien.	Nothing is the matter with me.
Qu'a votre frère?	What is the matter with your brother?
Je ne sais ce qu'il a.	I don't know what ails him.

In the absence of a personal subject, the impersonal verb **il y a** is used; as:

Qu'y a-t-il?	What is the matter?
Il n'y a rien.	Nothing is the matter.
b. J'ai faim et soif.	I am hungry and thirsty.
Il a froid, chaud.	He is cold, warm.
Nous avons sommeil.	We are sleepy.
J'ai honte de le dire.	I am ashamed to say so.
Vous avez raison.	You are right.
Ils ont tort.	They are wrong.
c. Quel âge a-t-il?	How old is he?
Il a vingt ans.	He is twenty years old.
Quelle est sa taille?	What is his size?
Il a cinq pieds, six pouces.	He is five feet and six inches.

REM.—The expressions *He is twenty years old, He is five feet and six inches high*, may be rendered by the verb **être** and an adjective: Il est âgé de vingt ans, Il est haut de cinq pieds, six pouces; but the construction with **avoir** is preferable.

The verb **être** is used with an adjective in sentences like the following, expressing comparison:

Il est plus âgé que moi.	He is older than I.
Il est moins grand que moi.	He is not so tall as I.

d. When the difference between the two terms of a comparison is to be stated, either construction may be used.

With **avoir**, the term expressing the difference is the object of the verb; it is followed by the preposition **de** and a comparative adverb (**plus** or **moins**), expressing excess or deficiency.

Il a deux ans de plus que moi.	He is two years older than I.
Il a deux pouces de moins que moi.	He is two inches shorter than I.

With the verb **être** and an adjective, the adjective is in the comparative degree, and the term expressing the difference, preceded by the preposition **de**, follows the second term of the comparison:

Il est plus âgé que moi de deux ans.	He is two years older than I.
Il est moins grand que moi de deux pouces.	He is two inches shorter than I.

Dimensions.

Dimensions may be stated in various ways:

1. The verb avoir with a noun[1] is generally used; as:

Combien ce clocher a-t-il de hauteur?	How high is that steeple?
Ce clocher a deux cents pieds de hauteur (or de haut).	That steeple is two hundred feet high.

2. We may say also:

Quelle est la hauteur de ce clocher?	What is the height of that steeple?
La hauteur de ce clocher est de deux cents pieds, or	The height of that steeple is two hundred feet.
Ce clocher est haut de deux cents pieds.	That steeple is two hundred feet high.
La façade de l'église est de deux cents pieds.	The front of the church is two hundred feet long.
Quelle est la grandeur de cette chambre?	What is the size[2] of this room?
Elle a seize pieds de longueur sur quinze de largeur.	It is sixteen feet long by fifteen wide.
Quelle est l'étendue de ce parc?	What is the size[2] of that park?
Il a trois milles de circonférence.	It is three miles in circumference.

3. When the dimension of a thing is stated without a verb, either the noun or the adjective may be used

Une table longue de trois pieds; or, Une table de trois pieds de longueur, or, de long.	A table three feet long.

REM.—The noun or the adjective, either is correct; but the adjectives **épais**, thick, and **profond**, deep, are not used in this way. Thickness and depth are expressed by the nouns **épaisseur** and **profondeur.**

---

[1]Nouns expressing dimension are formed from adjectives of dimension, by adding **ur** to their feminine endings; as: **haut, haute, hauteur, long, longue, longueur,** etc. They are of the feminine gender.

[2]The word *size* is variously expressed, according to the adjective which the object requires: Une grande maison; la grandeur de la maison, the size of the house. Une grosse pierre; la grosseur de la pierre, the size of the stone. In speaking of a person, either taille or stature is used. Il est de petite taille, or de petite stature; he is of a small size. Taille means cut, shape, from tailler, to cut, to shape.

Être—To be.

To be, être; being, étant; been, été; to have been, avoir été; having been, ayant été.

Indicatif Présent.

je suis, I am.	suis-je? am I?
tu es, thou art.	es-tu? art thou?
il est, he is.	est il? is he?
nous sommes, we are.	sommes-nous? are we?
vous êtes, you are.	êtes-vous? are you?
ils sont, they are.	sont-ils? are they?
je ne suis pas, I am not.	ne suis-je pas? am I not?
tu n'es pas etc.	n'es-tu pas? etc.
il n'est pas	n'est il pas?
nous ne sommes pas	ne sommes-nous pas?
vous n'êtes pas	n'êtes-vous pas?
ils ne sont pas	ne sont-ils pas?

Imparfait.

j'étais, I was.	étais-je? was I?
tu étais etc.	étais-tu? etc.
il était	était-il?
nous étions	étions-nous?
vous étiez	étiez-vous?
ils étaient	étaient-ils?
je n'étais pas, I was not.	n'étais je pas? was I not?
tu n'étais pas etc.	n'étais-tu pas? etc.
il n'était pas	n'était-il pas?
nous n'étions pas	n'étions-nous pas?
vous n'étiez pas	n'étiez-vous pas?
ils n'étaient pas	n'étaient-ils pas?

Prétérit.

je fus, I was.	fus-je? was I?
tu fus etc.	fus-tu? etc.
il fut	fut-il?
nous fûmes	fûmes-nous?
vous fûtes	fûtes-vous?
ils furent	furent-ils?
je ne fus pas, I was not	ne fus-je pas? was I not?
tu ne fus pas etc.	ne fus-tu pas? etc.
il ne fut pas	ne fut-il pas?
nous ne fûmes pas	ne fûmes-nous pas?
vous ne fûtes pas	ne fûtes-vous pas?
ils ne furent pas	ne furent-ils pas?

Passé Indéfini.

j'ai été, I have been, etc.	ai-je été? have I been? etc.
je n'ai pas été, I have not been, etc.	n'ai-je pas été? have I not been? etc

Plus-que-parfait—Passé Antérieur.

j'avais été, I had been, etc.	avais-je été, had I been?
or,	or,
j'eus été.	eus-je été?
je n'avais pas été, I had not been,	n'avais-je pas été? had I not been?
or,	or,
je n'eus pas été.	n'eus-je pas été?

Futur.

je serai, I shall be.	serai-je? shall I be?
tu seras etc.	seras-tu etc.
il sera	sera-t-il?
nous serons	serons-nous?
vous serez	serez-vous?
ils seront	seront-ils?

je ne serai pas, I shall not be.	ne serai-je pas? shall I not be?
tu ne seras pas etc.	ne seras-tu pas? etc.
il ne sera pas	ne sera-t-il pas?
nous ne serons pas	ne serons nous pas?
vous ne serez pas	ne serez-vous pas?
ils ne seront pas	ne seront-ils pas?

Futur Antérieur.

j'aurai été, I shall have been.	aurai-je été? shall I have been?
je n'aurai pas été, I shall not have [been.	n'aurai-je pas été? shall I not have [been?

Conditionnel Présent.

je serais, I should be	serais-je? should I be?
tu serais etc.	serais-tu? etc.
il serait	serait-t-il?
nous serions	serions-nous?
vous seriez	seriez-vous?
ils seraient	seraient-ils?

je ne serais pas, I should not be.	ne serais-je pas? should I not be?
tu ne serais pas etc.	ne serais-tu pas? etc.
il ne serait pas	ne serait-il pas?
nous ne serions pas	ne serions-nous pas?
vous ne seriez pas	ne seriez-vous pas?
ils ne seraient pas	ne seraient-ils pas?

Conditionnel Passé.

j'aurais été, I should have been.	aurais-je été? should I have been?
or,	or,
j'eusse été.	eusse-je été?
je n'aurais pas été, I should not [have been.	n'aurais-je pas été? should I not [have been?
or,	or,
je n'eusse pas été.	n'eusse-je pas été?

Impératif.

sois, be (thou).	ne sois pas, do not be.
soyons, let us be.	ne soyons pas, do not let us be.
soyez, be (ye).	ne soyez pas, do not be.

Subjonctif Présent.

que je sois, that I may be.	que je ne sois pas, that I may not be.
que tu sois, etc.	que tu ne sois pas etc.
qu'il soit	qu'il ne soit pas
que nous soyons	que nous ne soyons pas
que vous soyez	que vous ne soyez pas
qu'ils soient	qu'ils ne soient pas

Imparfait.

que je fusse, that I might be.	que je ne fusse pas, that I might not be.
que tu fusses etc.	que tu ne fusses pas etc.
qu'il fût	qu'il ne fût pas
que nous fussions	que nous ne fussions pas
que vous fussiez	que vous ne fussiez pas
qu'il fussent	qu'ils ne fussent pas

Passé Indéfini.

That I may have been, etc., que j'aie été.	That I may not have been, etc. que je n'aie pas été.

Plus-que-parfait.

That I might have been, etc., que j'eusse été.	That I might not have been, etc. que je n'eusse pas été.

Use of the Auxiliary Verbs.

The verbs **avoir** and **être** are auxiliary verbs when they are used in the formation of compound tenses.

Avoir is used in the compound tenses of:

1. All active verbs;
2. Most neuter verbs; and
3. All essential impersonal verbs.

Être is used in the compound tenses of:

1. Certain neuter verbs;
2. All pronominal verbs; and
3. In the formation of the passive voice.

Neuter Verbs Conjugated with Être.

1. Neuter verbs whose past tenses express a change in the place or condition of the subject, are conjugated in the compound tenses, with the auxiliary verb **être**: Nous sommes venus, vous êtes arrivé, elle est partie, je suis né, ils sont morts.

REM.—Some neuter verbs, which come within the above definition, are conjugated with **avoir**; such as courir, marcher, paraître, périr, succéder, succomber, voyager, etc.: Nous avons couru, vous avez marché, elle a paru, ils ont péri, il a succédé, ils ont succombé à la fatigue, nous avons voyagé, etc.

2. There are a number of neuter verbs which are conjugated with **avoir** when they express action, and with **être** when they express a state resulting from the action.

The following are of this class:

Cesser, to cease.	Descendre, to go or come down.
Croître, *irr.*, to grow.	Monter, to go or come up.
Grandir, to grow tall.	Remonter, to re-ascend.
Vieillir, to grow old.	Passer, to pass.
Il a descendu à terre aussitôt que le vaisseau fut abordé.	He landed as soon as the vessel was boarded.
Les passagers sont descendus à terre depuis longtemps.	The passengers disembarked long ago.
La procession a passé par ici.	The procession passed here.
La procession est passée.	The procession has passed.
Il a monté à sa chambre sans s'arrêter.	He went up to his room without stopping.
Il est monté à sa chambre.	He has gone up to his room.
Midi a sonné comme nous sortions de la maison.	It struck twelve as we left the house.
Midi est sonné depuis longtemps.	Twelve o'clock struck some time ago.
J'ai resté six mois en Allemagne.	I staid six months in Germany.
Je suis resté interdit en le voyant.	I remained amazed when I saw him.

List of Neuter Verbs that are Conjugated with Être, to be.

Arriver, to arrive.	Être	arrivé,	to have	arrived.
Aller, to go.	"	allé,	"	gone.
Décéder, to decease.	"	décédé,	"	deceased.
Entrer, to enter; to go or come in.	"	entré,	"	entered.
Rentrer, to re-enter; to come home.	"	rentré,	"	come in.
Retourner, to return; to go back.	"	retourné,	"	returned.
Rester, to remain, to stay.	"	resté,	"	remained.
Tomber, to fall.	"	tombé,	"	fallen.
Mourir, *irr.*, to die.	"	mort,	"	died.
Naître, " to be born.	"	né,	"	been born.
Partir, " to start.	"	parti,	"	started.
Sortir, " to go out; to come out.	"	sorti,	"	gone out.
Venir, " to come.	"	venu,	"	come.
Devenir, " to become.	"	devenu,	"	become.
Parvenir, " to reach; to succeed.	"	parvenu,	"	attained.
Revenir, " to return; to come back.	"	revenu,	"	returned.

3. Some neuter verbs are occasionally used as **active** verbs, and are then conjugated with **avoir.**

Il a monté la montagne.	He ascended the mountain.
Nous avons descendu la rue.	We descended the street.
Ils ont passé la rivière.	They crossed the river.
Il a sorti le cheval.	He took the horse out.

4. Some neuter verbs are conjugated with **avoir** or **être,** according to the sense in which they are used.

Convenir, to suit, takes **avoir** and **convenir,** to agree, takes **être.**

Cette maison nous aurait convenu.	That house would have suited us.
Ils sont convenus de revenir.	They agreed to come back.

Demeurer, to live, to reside, to inhabit, to stay at, to tarry, takes **avoir;** **demeurer,** to stay, or to remain behind, takes **être.**

Nous avons demeuré deux ans à Paris.	We lived two years in Paris.
Il a demeuré longtemps à le faire.	He was a long time doing it.
Il est demeuré à Paris quand nous sommes revenus.	He remained in Paris when we returned.

Expirer, to perish, takes **avoir;** **expirer,** to expire, to run out, takes **avoir** when the time is stated, and **être** when no time is given.

Tous deux ont expiré de misère.	Both perished of misery.
Son bail a expiré à la Saint-Jean.	His lease expired at mid-summer.
Ces baux sont expirés.	Those leases have expired.

Echapper, to escape, takes **avoir** when it expresses an action, and **être** when it expresses the result of an action.

L'un des coupables a échappé à la gendarmerie.	One of the guilty ones made his escape from the gendarmery.
Le voleur est échappé de prison.	The thief has got out of prison.
Ce mot m'a échappé.	That word escaped my notice.
Ce mot m'est échappé.	That word escaped me (unintentionally).

REM.—The verb **etre** is used in all the tenses of the passive voice: it is a part of the passive verb; as: **etre aime,** to be loved. But the usual compound tenses of passivs verbs have the auxiliary verb **avoir,** because **etre** is conjugated with **avoir:** **J'ai ete aime,** I was loved.

Être or Aller.

The past tenses of **être** are used to state that we have been somewhere whence we have returned, and the past tenses of **aller** are used when the action of going is to be expressed.

J'ai été à la banque ce matin.	I went to the bank this morning.
De là je suis allé à la poste.	From there I went to the post-office.

In the first of these two sentences, it is not the action of going which we intend to express. We might say just as well, I was at the bank this morning. In the second sentence, the action of going is stated, and we could not substitute in English, I was for I went.

CONJUGATIONS.

There are four conjugations in French, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive mode. The termination is added to the root:

The first ends in **er**; as, **aimer**, to love: aim (root) er.
The second " **ir**; as, **finir**, to finish: fin (root) ir.
The third " **oir**; as, **recevoir**, to receive: rec (root) evoir.
The fourth " **re**; as, **vendre**, to sell: vend (root) re.

Terminations of every tense of all the verbs of the First Conjugation:

Indicatif Présent: :, es, e, ons, ez, ent (ent is mute).
Imparfait: ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient (ais, ait, aient are pronounced è).
Prétérit: ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent.
Futur: erai, eras. era, erons, erez, eront.
Conditionnel: erais, erais, erait, erions, eriez, eraient (rais, rait, raient [are pronounced rè).
Subjonctif Présent: e, es, e, ions, iez, ent. (ent is mute).
Imparfait: asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent. (ăs').

Aimer—To love, to like, to be fond of.

To love, aimer; loving, aimant; loved, aimé, aimée, aimés, aimées; to have loved, avoir aimé; having loved, ayant aimé.

Indicatif Présent.

j'aime, I love.	est-ce que j'aime? do I love?
tu aimes, thou lovest.	aimes-tu? doest thou love?
il aime, he loves.	aime-t-il? does he love?
nous aimons, we love.	aimons-nous? do we love?
vous aimez, you love.	aimez-vous, do you love?
ils aiment, they love.	aiment-ils, do they love?

je n'aime pas, I do not love.	est-ce que je n'aime pas? do I not [love?
tu n'aimes pas etc.	n'aimes-tu pas? etc.
il n'aime pas	n'aime-t-il pas?
nous n'aimons pas	n'aimons-nous pas?
vous n'aimez pas	n'aimez-vous pas?
ils n'aiment pas	n'aiment-ils pas?

Imparfait.

j'aimais, I was loving.	aimais-je? was I loving?
tu aimais etc.	aimais-tu? etc.
il aimait	aimait-il?
nous aimions	aimions-nous?
vous aimiez	aimiez-vous?
ils aimaient	aimaient-ils?

je n'aimais pas, I was not loving.	n'aimais-je pas? was I not loving?
tu n'aimais pas etc.	n'aimais-tu pas? etc.
il n'aimait pas	n'aimait-il pas?
nous n'aimions pas	n'aimions-nous pas?
vous n'aimiez pas	n'aimiez-vous pas?
ils n'aimaient pas	n'aimaient-ils pas?

Prétérit.

j'aimai, I loved.	aimai je? did I love?
tu aimas etc.	aimas-tu? etc.
il aima	aima-t-il?
nous aimâmes	aimâmes-nous?
vous aimâtes	aimâtes-vous?
ils aimèrent	aimèrent-ils?
je n'aimai pas, I did not love.	n'aimai-je pas? did I not love?
tu n'aimas pas etc.	n'aimas-tu pas? etc.
il n'aima pas	n'aima-t-il pas?
nous n'aimâmes pas	n'aimâmes-nous pas?
vous n'aimâtes pas	n'aimâtes-vous pas?
ils n'aimèrent pas	n'aimèrent-ils pas?

Passé Indéfini.

j'ai aimé, I have loved, etc.	ai-je aimé? have I loved? etc.
je n'ai pas aimé, I have not loved.	n'ai-je pas aimé? have I not loved?

Plus-que-parfait—Passé Antérieur.

j'avais aimé, I had loved, etc.	avais-je aimé? had I loved? etc.
or,	or,
j'eus aimé.	eus-je aimé?
je n'avais pas aimé, I had not loved.	n'avais-je pas aimé? had I not loved?
or	or,
je n'eus pas aimé.	n'eus-je pas aimé?

Futur.

j'aimerai, I shall love.	aimerai-je? shall I love?
tu aimeras etc.	aimeras-tu? etc.
il aimera	aimera-t-il?
nous aimerons	aimerons-nous?
vous aimerez	aimerez-vous?
ils aimeront	aimeront-ils?
je n'aimerai pas, I shall not love.	n'aimerai-je pas? shall I not love?
tu n'aimeras pas etc.	n'aimeras-tu pas? etc.
il n'aimera pas	n'aimera-t-il pas?
nous n'aimerons pas	n'aimerons-nous pas?
vous n'aimerez pas	n'aimerez-vous pas?
ils n'aimeront pas	n'aimeront-ils pas?

Futur Antérieur.

j'aurai aimé, I shall have loved.	aurai-je aimé? shall I have loved?
je n'aurai pas aimé, I shall not have [loved.	n'aurai-je pas aimé, shall I not [have loved?

Conditionnel.

j'aimerais, I should love.	aimerais-je? should I love?
tu aimerais etc.	aimerais-tu? etc.
il aimerait	aimerait-il?
nous aimerions	aimerions-nous?
vous aimeriez	aimeriez-vous?
ils aimeraient	aimeraient-ils?
je n'aimerais pas, I should not love.	n'aimerais je pas? should I not love?
tu n'aimerais pas etc.	n'aimerais-tu pas? etc.
il n'aimerait pas	n'aimerait-il pas?
nous n'aimerions pas	n'aimerions-nous pas?
vous n'aimeriez pas	n'aimeriez-vous pas?
ils n'aimeraient pas	n'aimeraient-ils pas?

Conditionnel Passé.

j'aurais aimé, I should have loved.	aurais-je aimé? should I have loved?
or,	or,
j'eusse aimé.	eusse-je aimé?
je n'aurais pas aimé, I should not [have loved.	n'aurais-je pas aimé, should I not [have loved?
or,	or,
je n'eusse pas aimé.	n'eusse-je pas aimé?

Impératif.

aime, love.	n'aime pas, do not love.
aimons, let us love.	n'aimons pas, do not let us love.
aimez, love	n'aimez pas, do not love.

Subjonctif Présent.

que j'aime, that I may love.
que tu aimes etc.
qu'il aime
que nous aimions
que vous aimiez
qu'ils aiment

que je n'aime pas, that I may not [love.
que tu n'aimes pas etc.
qu'il n'aime pas.
que nous n'aimions pas
que vous n'aimiez pas
qu'ils n'aiment pas

Imparfait.

que j'aimasse, that I might love.
que tu aimasses etc.
qu'il aimât
que nous aimassions
que vous aimassiez
qu'ils aimassent

que je n'aimasse pas, that I might [not love.
que tu n'aimasses pas etc.
qu'il n'aimât pas
que nous n'aimassions pas
que vous n'aimassiez pas
qu'ils n'aimassent pas

Passé Indéfini.

que j'aie aimé, that I may have [loved, etc.

que je n'aie pas aimé, that I may [not have loved, etc.

Plus-que-parfait.

que j'eusse aimé, that I might have [loved, etc.

que je n'eusse pas aimé, that I might [not have loved, etc.

N. B.—There are about *five thousand* verbs in the first conjugation, and nearly all are conjugated like aimer.

Orthographical Remarks on the Verbs of the First Conjugation (and also on the verbs in cevoir).

ger.—Verbs ending in **ger** retain **e** before **a, o**; as, mangeant, mangeons, je mangeais, etc.

ç.—Verbs in which **c** has the sound of **s** in the infinitive, as, placer, effacer, recevoir, etc., take **c** cedilla (**ç**) before **a, o, u**; as, *I placed*, je plaçai, il plaça, nous plaçâmes; *I received.* je reçus, il reçut, etc.

y.—Verbs which have **y** preceding the termination **er** of the infinitive, as, envoyer, payer, essayer, etc., change **y** into **i** before **e** mute; as, *I send*, etc., j'envoie, tu envoies, ils envoient; *I pay*, etc., je paie, tu paies, ils paient; *I shall try*, etc., j'essaierai, tu essaieras, etc.

yer, ier.—Verbs ending in **yer, ier**, as, payer, se fier (to trust), etc., require **i** after **y** and **i** in the first and second persons plural:

1st, of the **imparfait de l'indicatif.** 2d, of the **subjonctif présent.**

Nous payions, vous payiez—que nous payions, que vous payiez. Nous nous fiions, vous vous fiiez—que nous nous fiions, que vous vous fiiez.

é. e.—Verbs which have **é** or **e** in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive, require a grave accent (**è**) on that **é** or **e** before a consonant followed by an **e** mute; as:

Répéter, *to repeat*—je répète, tu répètes; je répèterai, etc. Révéler, *to reveal*—je révèle, il révèle je révèlerais, etc. Mener, *to lead*—je mène, il mène; je mènerai, etc. Peser, *to weigh*—je pèse, il pèse; je pèserais, etc.

eler, eter.—Verbs having **e** mute before the terminations **ler, ter,** double **l** and **t** when followed by **e** mute; as:

Appeler, ***to call*****—j'appelle, il appelle; j'appellerai, etc.** Jeter, *to throw*—je jette, il jette; je jetterais, etc.

Except **geler,** to freeze; **peler,** to peel: **acheter,** to buy, etc., which follow the preceding rule: il gèle, je pèle, il achète, etc.

List of Regular Verbs ending in er.

Accepter (de),	to accept	Epeler,	to spell.
Ajouter,	to add.	Epousseter,	to dust.
Allumer,	to light.	Espérer,	to hope.
Amener (à),	to bring.	Eviter (de),	to avoid.
Appeler (à),	to call.	Frapper,	to strike.
Avaler,	to swallow.	Frotter,	to rub.
Avouer,	to acknowledge.	Fumer,	to smoke.
Bâiller,	to gape.	Gagner,	to win; to earn.
Balancer,	to swing.	Glisser,	to slide.
Blesser,	to wound.	Gronder,	to scold.
Cacher,	to hide.	Jeter,	to throw.
Casser,	to break.	Jouer,	to play.
Causer,	to chat.	Manier,	to handle.
Chatouiller,	to tickle.	Manquer (de),	to fail to.
Chercher;—(à),	to look for; to try.	Manquer (de),	to lack (anything).
Chiffoner,	to ruffle.	Montrer (à),	to show.
Commander (de),	to order.	Nager,	to swim.
Compter,	to count.	Oser,	to dare.
Cracher,	to spit.	Passer,	to call; to pass.
Demander (de),	to ask.	Peser,	to weigh.
Dépenser,	to spend.	Plier,	to fold.
Dessiner,	to draw.	Plisser,	to pleat.
Eclairer,	to light.	Prêter,	to lend.
Ecouter,	to listen.	Pousser (à),	to push.
Ecraser,	to crush.	Quitter,	to leave.
Effrayer,	to frighten.	Réclamer,	to claim.
Embrasser,	to kiss.	Récompenser,	to reward.
Emmener,	to take (with one).	Refuser (de),	to refuse.
Emporter,	to take (away).	Regarder,	to look.
Emprunter,	to borrow.	Regarder (à),	to look at.
Enseigner (à),	to teach.	Renoncer (à),	to give up.

Répliquer,	to reply.	Soupirer,	to sigh.
Ressembler,	to look like.	Tousser,	to cough.
Retourner,	to return.	Traverser,	to cross.
Sécher,	to dry.	Trouver,	to find.
Siffler,	to whistle.	Verser,	to pour out.
Souffler,	to blow.	Viser,	to aim.
Soupçonner (de)	to suspect.	Voler,	to steal; to fly.

Second Conjugation.

Terminations of the Second Conjugation, added to the root (radical).

Indicatif Présent:	is, is, it, issons, issez, issent.
Imparfait:	issais, issais, issait, issions, issiez, issaient.
Prétérit:	is, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent.
Futur:	irai, iras, ira, irons, irez, iront.
Conditionnel:	irais, irais, irait, irions, iriez, iraient.
Subjonctif Présent:	isse, isses, isse, issions, issiez, issent.
Imparfait:	isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent.

Finir—To finish, to conclude.

To finish, **finir**, finishing, **finissant**; finished, **fini, finie, finis, finies**; to have finished, **avoir fini**; having finished, **ayant fini.**

Indicatif Présent.	**Imparfait.**
je finis, I finish, I am finishing.	je finissais, I was finishing.
tu finis etc.	tu finissais etc.
il finit	il finissait
nous finissons	nous finissions
vous finissez	vous finissiez
ils finissent	ils finissaient

Prétérit.

je finis, I finished.
tu finis etc.
il finit
nous finîmes
vous finîtes
ils finirent

Passé Indéfini.

j'ai fini, I have finished.
tu as fini etc.
il a fini
nous avons fini
vous avez fini
ils ont fini

Plus-que-parfait.

j'avais fini, I had finished.
tu avais fini etc.
il avait fini
nous avions fini
vous aviez fini
ils avaient fini

Passé Antérieur.

j'eus fini, I had finished.
tu eus fini etc
il eut fini
nous eûmes fini
vous eûtes fini.
ils eurent fini.

Futur.

je finirai, I shall finish.
tu finiras etc.
il finira
nous finirons.
vous finirez
ils finiront

Futur Antérieur.

j'aurai fini, I shall have finished.
tu auras fini etc.
il aura fini
nous aurons fini
vous aurez fini
ils auront fini

Conditionnel Présent.

je finirais, I should finish.
tu finirais etc.
il finirait
nous finirions
vous finiries
ils finiraient

Conditionnel Passé.

j'aurais fini, I should have finished.
tu aurais fini etc.
il aurait fini
nous aurions fini
vous auriez fini
ils auraient fini

Or this form:

j'eusse fini, I should have finished.
tu eusses fini etc.
il eût fini
nous eussions fini
vous eussiez fini
ils eussent fini

Impératif.

finis, finish (thou).
finissons, let us finish.

Subjonctif Passé.

que j'aie fini, that I may have finished.
que tu aies fini etc.

Subjonctif Présent.

que je finisse, that I may finish.
que tu finisses etc.
qu'il finisse
que nous finissions
que vous finissiez
qu'ils finissent

Plus-que-parfait.

que j'eusse fini, that I might have finished.
que tu eusses fini etc.
qu'il eût fini
que nous eussions fini
que vous eussiez fini
qu'ils eussent fini

Imparfait.

que je finisse, that I might finish.
que tu finisses etc.
qu'il finît
que nous finissions
que vous finissiez
qu'ils finissent

Every tense should be conjugated in the four usual forms.

est-ce que je finis? do I finish?
finis-tu? etc.
finit-il?
finissons-nous?
finissez-vous?
finissent-ils?

je ne finis pas, I do not finish.
tu ne finis pas etc.
il ne finit pas
nous ne finissons pas
vous ne finissez pas
ils ne finissent pas

est-ce que je ne finis pas? do I not finish?
ne finis-tu pas? etc.
ne finit-il pas?
ne finissons-nous pas?
ne finissez-vous pas?
ne finissent-ils pas?

The Second Conjugation is divided into four classes:

First class, like **finir**, about 300 verbs.
Second " " **sentir**, to feel.
Third " " **ouvrir**, to open.
Fourth " " **tenir**, to hold.

N. B.—The second, third and fourth classes may be considered as irregular verbs.

A List of some Regular Verbs of the First Class conjugated like finir.

Aboutir,	to come out.	Enlaidir,	to grow ugly.
Accomplir,	to accomplish.	Etablir,	to establish.
Adoucir,	to soften.	Fléchir,	to bend.
Affermir,	to strengthen.	Fleurir,	to bloom, to blossom.
Affranchir,	to free.	Fournir,	to supply.
Agir,	to act.	Franchir,	to leap.
Agrandir,	to enlarge.	Frémir (de),	to shudder (with).
Amoindrir,	to lessen.	Garnir,	to trim, to adorn.
Amortir	to deaden.	Gémir,	to groan.
Aplanir,	to level.	Grandir,	to grow tall.
Aplatir,	to flatten.	Grossir,	to grow larger.
Appauvrir,	to impoverish.	Haïr,	to hate.
Applaudir,	to applaud.	Hennir,	to neigh.
Approfondir,	to examine thoroughly.	Jouir (de),	to enjoy.
Asservir,	to enslave.	Munir,	to provide.
Assortir,	to match.	Noircir,	to blacken.
Avertir (de),	to inform (of).	Nourrir,	to feed.
Avilir,	to debase.	Pâlir,	to grow pale.
Bannir,	to banish.	Polir,	to polish.
Bâtir,	to build.	Pourrir,	to rot.
Bénir,	to bless.	Punir,	to punish.
Blanchir,	to whiten.	Réfléchir,	to reflect.
Bondir,	to bound, to leap.	Répartir,	to distribute.
Chérir,	to cherish.	Retentir,	to resound.
Choisir,	to choose.	Réussir à,	to succeed.
Définir,	to define.	Subir,	to undergo.
Durcir,	to harden.	Ternir,	to tarnish.
Ebloüir,	to dazzle.	Trahir,	to betray.
Elargir,	to widen.	Unir,	to unite.
Endurcir,	to harden.	Vieillir,	to grow old.

Second Class.

Comprising verbs conjugated like **sentir**, to feel, ending in **tir**, **mir**, **vir**: **Sent-ir**, **sentant**, **senti**.

I feel, etc. je sens, tu sens, il sent, nous sentons, vous sentez, ils sentent.

I felt, je sentais, etc.—je sentis, nous sentimes, etc.—j'ai senti—j'avais senti—j'eus senti.

I shall feel, je sentirai—nous sentirons.

I should feel, je sentirais—nous sentirions.

sens, sentons, sentez—que je sente—que je sentisse—qu'il sentît.

The following are conjugated like **sentir**:

Consentir,	to consent.	Redormir,	to sleep again.
Démentir,	to belie.	Repartir (être),	to set out again.
Départir,	to distribute.	Ressentir,	to resent.
Desservir,	to clear the table.	Ressortir (être),	to go out again.
Dormir,	to sleep.	S'endormir (refl.),	to fall asleep.
Endormir,	to lull asleeep.	Se rendormir,	to fall asleep again.
Mentir,	to lie.	Servir,	to serve.
Partir (être),	to depart.	Sentir,	to smell.
Pressentir,	to anticipate.	Sortir (être),	to go out.

Third Class.

Ending in **vrir** and **frir**, as **ouvrir** (**ouvr-ir**); to open; **ouvrant**, opening: **ouvert**, e, opened.

I open, etc., j'ouvre, tu ouvres, il ouvre, nous ouvrons, vous ouvrez, ils ouvrent.

I opened, j'ouvrais, etc.—j'ouvris—nous ouvrîmes—j'ai ouvert—j'avais ouvert—j'eus ouvert.

I shall open, j'ouvrirai, etc.

I should open, j'ouvrirais, etc.

ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez—que j'ouvre—que nous ouvrions—que j'ouvrisse—qu'il ouvrit.

The following verbs are conjugated like **ouvrir**:

Rouvrir,	to open again.	Recouvrir,	to cover again.
Entr'ouvrir,	to half open.	Souffrir,	to suffer.
Couvrir,	to cover.	Offrir,	to offer.

Découvrir, to discover.

Fourth Class.

Tenir (ten-ir), to hold; **tenant**, holding; **tenu, e, s, es**, held.

I hold, etc., je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent.

I held, je tenais, etc.—je tins—nous tînmes, vous tîntes, ils tinrent [—j'ai tenu, j'avais tenu, j'eus tenu.

I shall hold, je tiendrai—nous tiendrons.

I should hold, je tiendrais, etc.

tiens, tenons, tenez—que je tienne—que nous tenions, que vous teniez, qu'ils tiennent—que je tinse, que tu tinsses, qu'il tînt, que nous tinssions, etc.

Conjugate the following verbs like **tenir**:

S'abstenir, (refl.),	to abstain.	Devenir (être),	to become.
Appartenir (à),	to belong to.	Disconvenir (être),	to deny.
Contenir,	to contain.	Intervenir (être),	to intervene.
Détenir,	to detain.	Parvenir (être),	to attain.
Entretenir,	to entertain.	Prévenir,	to warn.
Maintenir,	to maintain.	Provenir (être),	to proceed from.
Obtenir,	to obtain.	Revenir (être),	to come again, [come back.
Retenir,	to retain.		
Soutenir,	to uphold.	Survenir (être),	to befall.
Venir (être),	to come.	Subvenir,	to relieve, provide.
Contrevenir,	to contravene.	Se souvenir (refl.),	to remember.
Convenir (être),	to agree.	Se ressouvenir "	to recollect.

Third Conjugation.

Terminations of the Third Conjugation.

Indicatif Présent: ois, ois, oit, evons, evez, oivent (pron. oiv').
Imparfait: evais, evais, evait, evions, eviez, evaient (vê).
Pértérit: us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent (ur).
Futur: evrai, evras, evra, evrons, evrez, evront.
Conditionnel: evrais, evrais, evrait, evrions, evriez, evraient.
Subjonctif Présent: oive, oives, oive, evions, eviez, oivent.
Imparfait: usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent.

Recevoir—To receive.

To receive, **recevoir**; receiving, **recevant**; received, **reçu**; to have received, **avoir reçu**; having received **ayant reçu.**

Indicatif Présent.

je reçois, I receive.
tu reçois etc.
il reçoit
nous recevons
vous recevez
ils reçoivent

Imparfait.

je recevais, I was receiving.
tu recevais etc.
il recevait
nous recevions
vous receviez
ils recevaient

Prétérit.

je reçus, I received.
tu reçus etc.
il reçut
nous reçûmes
vous reçûtes
ils reçurent

Passé Indéfini.

j'ai reçu, I have received.
tu as reçu etc.
il a reçu
nous avons reçu
vous avez reçu
ils ont reçu

Plus-que-parfait.

j'avais reçu, I had received.
tu avais reçu etc.
il avait reçu
nous avions reçu
vous aviez reçu
ils avaient reçu

Passé Antérieur.

j'eus reçu, I had received.
tu eus reçu etc.
il eut reçu
nous eûmes reçu
vous eûtes reçu
ils eurent reçu

Futur.

je recevrai, I shall receive.
tu recevras etc.
il recevra
nous recevrons
vous recevrez
ils recevront

Futur Antérieur.

j'aurai reçu, I shall have received.
tu auras reçu etc.
il aura reçu
nous aurons reçu
vous aurez reçu
ils auront reçu

Conditionnel.

je recevrais, I should receive.
tu recevrais etc.
il recevrait
nous recevrions
vous recevriez
ils recevraient

Conditionnel Passé.

j'aurais reçu, I should have received.
tu aurais reçu etc.
il aurait reçu
nous aurions reçu
vous auriez reçu
ils auraient reçu

Or this form:
j'eusse reçu
tu eusses reçu
il eût reçu
nous eussions reçu
vous eussiez reçu
ils eussent reçu

Impératif.

reçois, receive (thou).
recevons, let us receive.
recevez, receive.

Subjonctif Présent.

que je reçoive, that I may receive.
que tu reçoives etc.
qu'il reçoive
que nous recevions
que vous receviez
qu'ils reçoivent

Imparfait.

que je reçusse, that I might receive.
que tu reçusses etc.
qu'il reçût
que nous reçussions
que vous reçussiez
qu'ils reçussent

Subjonctif Passé.

que j'aie reçu, that I may have received.
que tu aies reçu etc.
qu'il ait reçu
que nous ayons reçu
que vous ayez reçu
qu'ils aient reçu

Plus-que-parfait.

que j'eusse reçu, that I might have received.
que tu eusses reçu etc.
qu'il eût reçu
que nous eussions reçu
que vous eussiez reçu
qu'ils eussent reçu

Infinitif présent: recevoir
passé: avoir reçu
Participe présent: recevant
passé: reçu

Do I receive?
est-ce que je reçois? etc.
Do I not receive?
est-ce que je ne reçois pas? etc.

je ne reçois pas, etc., I do not receive.

The Third Conjugation has only seven regular verbs, namely:

To perceive, apercevoir; the cedilla (ç) is used before o and u.
To conceive, concevoir (conc-evoir).
To deceive, décevoir (déc-evoir).
To owe, to have to (do something), devoir (d-evoir), participle dû (a circumflex accent is placed on û in the masculine singular).
To still owe, redevoir (red-evoir), redû.
To collect, percevoir (perc-evoir).
To receive, recevoir (rec-evoir).

For other verbs ending in oir, see irregular verbs.

Fourth Conjugation.

We may divide the Fourth Conjugation into four classes, namely:

First ending in **andre, endre, ondre erdre, ordre;** conjugated like **vendre,** to sell.

Second " **aître, oître;** " **paraître,** to appear.

Third " **uire;** " **réduire,** to reduce.

Fourth " **aindre, eindre, oindre;** conjugated like **plaindre,** to pity.

First Class.

vendre (vend-re), to sell; **vendant,** selling; **vendu, e, sold.**

Terminations to be added to the Root.

Indicatif Présent: s, s, —, ons, ez, ent.
Imparfait: ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.
Prétérit: is, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent.
Futur: rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront.
Conditionnel: rais, rais, rait, rions, riez, raient.
Subjonctif Présent: e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.
Imparfait: isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent.

Indicatif Présent.

je vends, I sell.
tu vends etc.
il vend
nous vendons
vous vendez
ils vendent

Prétérit.

je vendis, I sold.
tu vendis etc.
il vendit
nous vendîmes
vous vendîtes
ils vendirent

Imparfait.

je vendais, I was selling.
tu vendais etc.
il vendait
nous vendions
vous vendiez
ils vendaient

Passé Indéfini.

j'ai vendu, I have sold.
tu as vendu etc.
il a vendu
nous avons vendu
vous avez vendu
ils ont vendu

Plus-que-parfait.

j'avais vendu, I had sold.
tu avais vendu etc.
il avait vendu

nous avions vendu
vous aviez vendu
ils avaient vendu

Passé Antérieur.

j'eus vendu, I had sold.
tu eus vendu etc.
il eut vendu

nous eûmes vendu
vous eûtes vendu
ils eurent vendu

Futur.

je vendrai, I shall sell.
tu vendras etc.
il vendra

nous vendrons
vous vendrez
ils vendront

Futur Antérieur.

j'aurai vendu, I shall have sold.
tu auras vendu etc.
il aura vendu

nous aurons vendu
vous aurez vendu
ils auront vendu

Conditionnel.

je vendrais, I should sell.
tu vendrais etc.
il vendrait

nous vendrions
vous vendriez
ils vendraient

Conditionnel Passé.

j'aurais vendu, I should have sold
tu aurais vendu etc.
il aurait vendu

nous aurions vendu
vous auriez vendu
ils auraient vendu

Or this form:

j'eusse vendu, I should have sold.
tu eusses vendu etc.
il eût vendu

nous eussions vendu
vous eussiez vendu
ils eussent vendu

Impératif.

vends, sell (thou).
vendons, let us sell.
vendez, sell (you).

Subjonctif Présent.

que je vende, that I may sell.
que tu vendes etc.
qu'il vende

que nous vendions
que vous vendiez
qu'ils vendent

Imparfait.

que je vendisse, that I might sell.
que tu vendisses etc.
qu'il vendît

que nous vendissions
que vous vendissiez
qu'ils vendissent

Subjonctif Passé.

que j'aie vendu, that I may have
que tu aies vendu etc. [sold.
qu'il ait vendu
que nous ayons vendu
que vous ayez vendu
qu'ils aient vendu

Plus-que-parfait.

que j'eusse vendu, that I might
que tu eusses vendu [have sold.
qu'il eût vendu
que nous eussions vendu
que vous eussiez vendu
qu'ils eussent vendu

Infinitif.

Présent—vendre, to sell.
Passé—avoir vendu, to have sold.

Participe.

Présent—vendant, selling.
Passé—vendu, vendue, vendus, es
ayant vendu, having sold

Other forms:

est-ce que je vends? do I sell?
vends-tu? etc.
je ne vends pas, I do not sell.
est-ce que je ne vends pas? do I not
ne vends-tu pas? etc. [sell?
vendais-je? did I sell?
je ne vendais pas, I did not sell.
ne vendais-je pas? did I not sell?

The following verbs are conjugated like **vendre:**

Attendre, to wait for.
Confondre, to confound.
Condescendre, to comply.
Correspondre, to correspond.
Descendre, to go down.
Défendre, to forbid.
Détendre, to unbend.
Entendre, to hear.
Etendre, to stretch out.
Fendre, to split.
Fondre to melt.
Mordre, to bite.
Pendre, to hang.
Perdre, to lose.
Pondre, to lay eggs.
Prétendre, to pretend.
Refondre, to melt again.
Répondre, to answer.
Répandre, to spill.
Rendre, to render, to restore.
Suspendre, to suspend.
Tendre, to hold out.
Tondre, to shear.
Tordre, to twist.

Second Class.

Conjugated like **paraître** (par-aître), **to appear; paraissant,** appearing; **paru,** appeared.

I appear, etc. je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissons, vous paraissez, ils paraissent.
I appeared, je paraissais, tu paraissais, etc.—je parus, nous parûmes—j'ai paru, etc.
I shall appear, je paraîtrai, tu paraîtras, etc.
I should appear, je paraîtrais, etc.
parais, paraissons, paraissez—que je paraisse, etc.—que je parusse, que tu parusses, qu'il parût, que nous parussions, etc.

The usual verbs of this class are:

Apparaître, to appear.
Accroître, to increase.
Comparaître, to appear.
Connaître, to know.
Croître, to grow.
Méconnaître not to recognize.
Décroître, to decrease.
Disparaître, to disappear.
Reconnaître, to recognize.

The circumflex accent is always placed on **i** (**î**) before **t**. Moreover, in the verb **croître** and its derivatives the circumflex is also placed on **i** and **u** (**î**, **û**) before **s** ending the word; as: **je crois, je crûs, tu crûs.**

Third Class.

Conjugated like **réduire** (réd-uire), to reduce; **réduisant,** reducing; **réduit, e,** reduced.

I reduce, etc.	je réduis, tu réduis, il réduit, nous réduisons, vous réduisez, ils réduisent.
I reduced,	je réduisais, etc.—je réduisis, tu réduisis, nous réduisîmes, etc.—j'ai réduit, etc.
I shall reduce,	je réduirai, etc.
I should reduce,	je réduirais—ils réduiraient.

réduis, réduisons, réduisez—que je réduise—que je réduisisse—qu'il réduisît.

The following are conjugated like **réduire.**

Conduire, to conduct.
Construire, to construct.
Cuire, to cook, to bake.
Déduire, to deduct.
Détruire, to destroy.
Enduire, to plaster.
Instruire, to instruct.
Introduire, to introduce.
Induire, to induce.
Produire, to produce.
Recuire, to cook again.
Séduire, to seduce.
Traduire, to translate.

Fourth Class.

Conjugated like **plaindre** (pl-aindre), to pity; **plaignant,** pitying; **plaint, e,** pitied.

I pity,	je plains, tu plains, il plaint, nous plaignons, vous plaignez, ils plaignent.
I pitied,	je plaignais, etc.- je plaignis—nous plaignîmes, etc. —j'ai plaint, etc.
I shall, should pity,	je plaindrai, etc.—je plaindrais, etc.
Pity,	plains, plaignons, plaignez.

Subjonctif: que je plaigne—que je plaignisse—qu'il plaignît, etc.

The following verbs are conjugated like **plaindre:**

Adjoindre, to adjoin.	Enjoindre, to enjoin.
Astreindre, to confine to.	Enceindre, to enclose.
Atteindre, to reach.	Eteindre, to extinguish.
Ceindre, to gird.	Feindre, to feign.
Contraindre, to compel.	Joindre, to join.
Craindre, to fear.	Oindre, to anoint.
Déteindre, to take out the color.	Peindre, to paint.
Empreindre, to imprint.	Restreindre, to limit.
Enfreindre, to infringe.	Teindre, to dye.

Verbes Réfléchis.—Modèle: Se Dépêcher.

Reflexive verbs are those in which the action is reflected upon the subject, as: To flatter one's self, I wash myself, etc. Many verbs, however, are reflexive in French, which are not so in English. For instance, **Se dépêcher,** to hasten.

Se Dépêcher, to make haste.[1]

[1]Do I hasten—Est-ce que je me dépêche? Te dépêches-tu? Se dépêche-t-il? etc. I do not hasten, etc —Je ne me dépêche pas. Tu ne te dépêches pas, etc. Do I not hasten? etc. Est-ce que je ne me dépêche pas? Ne te dépêches-tu pas? etc. Would I not hurry? etc.—Ne me dépêcherais-je pas? Ne te dépêcherais-tu pas? etc.—Se dépêchant, me dépêchant, etc., making haste.

Indicatif Présent.

Je me dépêche,
Tu te dépêches,
Il se dépêche, I am hurrying etc.
Nous nous dépêchons,
Vous vous dépêchez,
Ils se dépêchent,

Conditionnel Présent

Me dépêcherais je?
Te dépêcherais-tu? Would I
Se dépêcherait-il? hurry?
Nous dépêcherions-nous? etc.
Vous dépêcheriez-vous?
Se dépêcheraient-ils?

Imparfait.

Je me dépêchais,
Tu te dépêchais,
Il se dépêchait, I was
Nous nous dépêchions, hurrying,
Vous vous dépêchiez, etc.
Ils se dépêchaient,

Impératif.

Affirm.
Dépêche-toi, Hurry (thou).
Dépêchons-nous, Let us hurry, etc.
Dépêchez-vous, Hurry (you).

Neg.
Ne te dépêche pas, Do not
Ne nous dépêchons pas, hurry,
Ne vous dépêchez pas, etc.

Prétérit.

Je me dépêchai, I hastened, etc.

Futur.

Je ne me dépêcherai pas,
Tu ne te dépêcheras pas,
Il ne se dépêchera pas,
Nous ne nous dépêcherons pas,
Vous ne vous dépêcherez pas,
Ils ne se dépêcheront pas,
I shall not hurry, etc.

Subjonctif Present.

Que je me dépêche,
Que tu te dépêches, That I
Qu'il se dépêche, (may)
Que nous nous dépêchions, hurry,
Que vous vous dépêchiez, etc.
Qu'ils se dépêchent,

Imparfait.

Que je me dépêchasse, That I (might), etc.

Temps Composés.

Passé Indéfini.

Je me suis dépêché, I hurried,
Tu t' es dépêché, have
Il s' est dépêché, hurried,
Nous nous sommes dépêchés, or did
Vous vous êtes dépêchés, hurry,
Ils se sont dépêchés, etc.

Passé Indéfini.

Me suis-je dépêché?
T' es-tu dépêché? Did I
S' est-il dépêché? hurry?
Nous sommes-nous dépêchés? etc.
Vous êtes-vous dépêchés?
Se sont-ils dépêchés?

Negative Form.

Je ne me suis pas dépêché,
Tu ne t'es pas dépêché, etc.

Negative-Interrogative.

Ne me suis-je pas dépêché?
Ne t'es-tu pas dépêché? etc

Conjugate the following three tenses in the same manner:

Plus-que parfait.

Je m'étais dépêché, I had hurried, etc. M'étais-je dépêché? etc.
Je ne m'étais pas dépêché, I had not, etc. Ne m'étais-je pas dépêché? etc.

Futur.

Je me serai dépêché, etc.

Conditionnel.

Je me serais dépêché, etc.

Subjonctif (Passé et Plus-que-parfait).

Que je me sois dépêché, That I [(may) have hurried. Que je me fusse dépêché.

NOTE.—The reflexive pronouns (**me**, myself or to myself; **te**, thyself, or to thyself; **se**, himself, herself, one's self; also, to himself, etc.; **nous**, ourselves, or to ourselves; **vous**, yourself, or to yourself; **se**, themselves, or to themselves) are really pronoun-objects, and as such always placed immediately before the verb (except with the imperative-affirmative; see above). But the pronoun-subjects (**je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles**) change their place in interrogative forms and come after the verb (see Conditionnel above, and the Passé Indéfini).

NOTE also that in the negative forms of these verbs, **ne** comes in its usual place, just before the pronoun-objects (that is, just before **me, te,** etc.)

Agreement of Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs.

Although conjugated with **être** the past participles of these verbs agree with the direct object, if that object precedes the verb

This wil appear rational, if we remember that **être** with these verbs has really the force of **avoir.** Ex.:

Elle s'est promenée, She took a walk (lit.: She herself has promenaded).
Ils se sont dépêchés, They hurried (lit.: They themselves hurried).
Elles se sont dépêchées, They hurried (lit.: They themselves hurried).

Notice, that if the past participle of reflexive verbs appears often to agree with the subject, it is only when the subject and direct object actually refer to the same person or thing. Ex.:

Elle s'est coupée, She has cut herself (lit.: She herself has cut). **But:**
Elle s'est coupé la main, She cut her hand (lit.: She to-herself has cut the hand).

Coupé is made feminine in the first, because agreeing with the direct-object herself (s'). It remains invariable in the second, because the direct-object, **la main**, does not precede it.

Reciprocal Use of Reflexive Verbs.

Sometimes, the reflexive pronouns **se**, **nous**, **vous**, have the meaning of each other, one another: Ils s'aiment, They like each other; Ils se font mal, They hurt one another.

List of Reflexive Verbs Conjugated According to their Respective Conjugations.

S'abonner à,	to subscribe to.	S'endormir,	to fall asleep.
S'accorder,	agree.	S'enfermer,	shut up.
S'adoucir,	soften.	S'enrhumer,	take cold.
S'adresser,	address one's self.	S'enrichir,	grow rich.
S'affaiblir,	become weak.	S'envoler,	fly away.
S'affermir,	strengthen.	S'étonner,	wonder.
S'aimer,	love each other.	S'évanouir,	faint away.
S'amuser,	amuse one's self.	S'éveiller,	awake.
S'appeler,	be named.	S'exprimer,	express one's self.
S'apprivoiser,	become tame.	Se fâcher,	get angry.
S'approcher,	approach.	Se fier,	trust.
S'arrêter,	stop.	Se lever,	get up, rise.
S'assoupir,	grow drowsy.	Se marier,	get married.
Se baisser,	stoop.	Se méfier,	mistrust.
Se blesser,	wound one's self.	Se mêler,	mix, meddle.
Se brouiller,	disagree.	Se moquer,	laugh at.
Se cacher,	conceal one's self.	Se noyer,	drown one's self.
Se chauffer,	warm one's self.	Se peigner,	comb one's self.
Se coucher,	go to bed.	Se pencher,	bend.
Se convenir,	suit each other.	Se plaindre,	complain.
Se défier,	distrust.	Se promener,	take a walk.
Se dépêcher,	make haste.	Se rapprocher,	to come nearer.
Se déshabiller,	undress one s self.	Se reculer,	move back.
S'endurcir,	harden.	Se rendre à,	go to.
S'empresser,	be eager.	Se retirer,	withdraw.

Passive Verbs.—Verbes Passifs.

The only passive forms in French are those made up of the past participle of any active verb (aimer; flatter; estimer; haïr; etc.), and the various tenses of the verb **être.** Thus:

Être aimé, to be loved.

Indic. Présent.

I am loved, etc.
Je suis aimé
Tu es aimé
Il est aimé
N. sommes aimés
V. êtes aimés
Ils sont aimés

Imparfait.

I was loved, etc.
J'étais aimé
Tu étais aimé
Il était aimé
N. étions aimés
V. étiez aimés
Ils étaient aimés

Prétérit.

I was loved, etc.
Je fus aimé
Tu fus aimé, etc.

Futur.

I shall be loved, etc.
Je serai aimé
Tu seras aimé, etc.

Conditionnel.

I would be loved, etc.
Je serais aimé
Tu serais aimé
Il serait aimé
N. serions aimés
V. seriez aimés
Ils seraient aimés

Impératif.

Be thou loved, etc.
Sois aimé
Soyons aimés
Soyez aimés[1]

Subjonc. Présent.

That I(may)be loved,etc.
Que je sois aimé
Que tu sois aimé
Qu'il soit aimé
Que n. soyons aimés.
Que v. soyez aimés
Qu'ils soient aimés

Imparfait du Subj.

That I(might)be loved,etc.
Que je fusse aimé, etc.

Temps Composés.

Infinitif.

To have been loved.
Avoir été aimé

Plus-que-parfait.

I had been loved, etc.
J'avais été aimé, etc.

Conditionnel Passé.

I would have been loved,etc.
J'aurais été aimé, etc.

Participe.

Having been loved.
Ayant été aimé

Passé Antérieur.

I had been loved, etc.
J'eus été aimé, etc.

Subjonctif Passé.

That I (may) h. been loved.
Que j'aie été aimé, etc.

Passé Indefini.

I was or h. been loved.
J'ai été aimé

Futur Antérieur.

I shall have been loved.
J'aurai été aimé, etc.

Plus-que-parfait.

I (might) h. been loved.
Q. j'eusse été aimé, etc.

---

[1] If vous refers to one person, the past participle takes no s.

Complement of Passive Verbs.

Passive verbs (generally) take **de** for their complement, if they express a sentiment or passion. They take **par**, if expressing an action of the body or mind. Ex.: **Cet hommé est estimé de tout le monde.** But: **Carthage fut détruite par les Romains; Ce livre a été écrit par cet auteur.**

Use of the Active and Passive Verbs contrasted.

The French omit the use of the passive voice wherever the active form (with **on** or **ils**) can as well be used. Ex.:

It is said we will have war=**On dit que nous aurons la guerre.**

The eclipse can be seen=**On pourra voir l'éclipse.**

Unipersonal Verbs—Verbes Unipersonnels.

To snow. **neiger.**

Conjugated like **aimer** in the third personal singular.

It snows,	il neige.
It was snowing,	il neigeait.
It snowed,	il neigea.
It has snowed,	il a neigé.
It had snowed.	il avait, or, il eût neigé.
It will snow,	il neigera.
It will have snowed,	il aura neigé.
It would snow,	il neigerait.
It would have snowed,	il aurait neigé, or, il eût neigé.
That it may snow,	qu'il neige.
That it might snow,	qu'il neigeât.
That it may have snowed,	qu'il ait neigé.
That it might have snowed,	qu'il eût neigé.

Does it snow? neige-t-il? it does not snow, il ne neige pas; does it not snow? ne neige-t-il pas?

Each tense should be conjugated in the usual interrogative and negative forms.

A list of unipersonal verbs conjugated like the third person singular of the model verb:

Dégeler,	to thaw.	Geler,	to freeze.
Faire des éclairs,	to lighten.	Grêler,	to hail.
Falloir (irreg.),	to be necessary.	Pleuvoir (irreg.),	to rain.

Tonner, to thunder.

Many verbs can be used unipersonally; as:

Il importe,	it matters.	Il paraît,	it appears.
Il suffit,	it is enough.	Il semble,	it seems.
Il s'agit,	it is a question of.	Il arrive,	it happens.
Il convient,	it becomes.	Il s'entend,	it is a matter of course.

Verbs conjugated with être in their Compound Tenses.

1. Reflexive verbs, in which **être** is employed for **avoir.**
2. Passive verbs.
3. Unipersonal verbs take **avoir**; but those that are accidentally unipersonal—as, il est arrivé un malheur, a misfortune has happened—take **être.**
4. Some neuter verbs, as:

Aller,	to go.	Naître,	to be born.
Arriver,	to arrive.	Parvenir,	to attain, to succeed.
Décéder,	to die.	Revenir,	to come again.
Entrer,	to enter.	Sortir(persons)	to go out.
Intervenir,	to intervene	Venir,	to come.
Mourir,	to die.	Rester,	to remain, to stay.

Also the following:

Convenir,	to agree.	Survenir,	to occur.
Devenir,	to become.	Tomber,	to fall.

Irregular Verbs of the Four Conjugations.

Abattre, to pull down (avoir); like battre.

Absoudre, to absolve; absolvant, absous, absoute (*f.*) —j'absous, tu absous, il absout, nous absolvons, vous absolvez, ils absolvent—j'absolvais, (no past definite). j'absoudrai, j'absoudrais—absous, absolvons, absolvez, que j'absolve (no imp. subj.).

Abstraire, to abstract; like traire. We prefer **faire abstraction de.**

Accourir, to run to (avoir and être); like courir.

Accroire is only used with faire; as, il s'en fait accroire, he makes one believe, etc.

Accueillir, to welcome; conjugated like cueillir.

Acquérir, to acquire (avoir), acquérant, acquis, e—j'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez. ils acquièrent—j'acquérais, j'acquis, j'acquerrai, j'acquerrais--acquiers, acquérons, acquérez—que j'acquière, que j'acquisse, qu'il acquît.

Admettre, to admit (avoir): like mettre.

Aller, to go (être); allant, allé, e—je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont—j'allais, j'allai, j'irai, j'irais—va, allons, allez—que j'aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent—que j'allasse, qu'il allât.

S'en aller, to go away; s'en allant, allé, e—je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va, nous nous en allons, vous vous en allez, ils s'en vont—je m'en allais, je m'en allai, je m'en suis allé, je m'en étais allé, je m'en fus allé, je m'en irai, je m'en serai allé, je m'en irais, je m'en serais allé—va-t'en, allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en—que je m'en aille, que je m'en allasse.

Apprendre, to learn (avoir); like prendre.

Assaillir, to assault (avoir), assaillant, assailli, e—j'assaille, nous assaillons, ils assaillent—j'assaillais, j'as-

saillis, j'assaillisse, j'assaillirai. j'assaillirais—assaille, que j'assaille, que j'assaillisse.

S'asseoir, to sit down; s'asseyant, assis, e—je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied, nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient—je m'asseyais, je m'assis, je me suis assis, je m'étais assis, je me fus assis, je m'assiérai, je me serai assis, je m'assiérais, je me serais *or* fusse assis—assieds-toi, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous—que je m'asseie, que nous nous asseyions, que vous vous asseyiez, qu'ils s'asseient—que je m'assisse, que je me sois assis, que je me fusse assis.

Battre, to beat; battant, battu, e (avoir) je bats, tu bats, il bat, nous battons, vous battez, ils battent—je battais, je battis, je battrai, je battrais—bats—que je batte, que je battisse.

Bénir, to bless, is regular, except the past participle béni, e, which is written bénit, e, when speaking of things consecrated by the church, as, pain bénit, eau bénite.

Boire, to drink; buvant, bu, e (avoir)—je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent—je buvais, je bus, je boirai, je boirais—bois, buvons, buvez—que je boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent, que je busse, qu'il bût.

Bouillir, to boil; bouillant, bouilli, e (avoir)—je bous, tu bous, il bout, nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils bouillent—je bouillais, je bouillis, je bouillirai—bous, bouillons, bouillez—que je bouille, que je bouillisse.

Taken in an active sense, it is used with faire, faire bouillir; as a neuter verb, it is used figuratively; as, je bous d'impatience, etc.

Braire, to bray (asses); generally used in the following expressions only: il brait, ils braient—il braira, ils brairont—il brairait, ils brairaient—qu'il braie, qu'ils braient.

Bruire (a defective verb), to roar, to rustle; bruyant —ils bruissent, il bruyait, ils bruyaient, ils bruissaient —qu'il bruisse.

Choir, to fall; used only in the infinitive; as, il s'est laissé choir.

Circoncire, to circumcise; circoncisant, circoncis—je circoncis, je circoncisais, je circoncis, je circoncirai, je circoncirais—circoncis—que je circoncise, que je circoncisse.

Circonscrire, to circumscribe; like écrire.

Clore, to close; closant, clos, e (avoir)—je clos, tu clos, il clôt—(no plural, no imperfect, no past definite)—je clorai, je clorais—clos (no plural)—que je close—(no imperfect).

Combattre, to fight; combattant, etc.. like battre.

Commettre, to commit; like mettre.

Complaire, to please; like plaire.

Comprendre, to comprehend, to understand; like prendre.

Compromettre, to compromise; like mettre.

Conclure, to conclude; concluant, conclu—je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons, vous concluez, ils concluent—je concluais, nous concluions, vous concluiez—je conclus, je conclurai, je conclurais —conclus—que je conclue, que nous concluions, que vous concluiez, qu'ils concluent—que je conclusse.

Concourir, to concur; like courir.

Confire, to preserve (fruit, etc.); confisant, confit, e —je confis, nous confisons—je confisais, je confis. je confirai, je confirais—confis—que je confise, que nous confisions, que je confisse.

Conquérir, to conquer; like acquérir, but it is used only in the following tenses: infinitive, participle, past definite, imperfect subjunctive, and compound tenses.

Contredire, to contradict; like dire, *except* in the second person plural of the present indicative and imperative—vous contredisez, contredisez.

Contrefaire, to counterfeit; like faire.

Convaincre, to convince; like vaincre.

Corrompre, to corrupt; like rompre.

Coudre, to sew; cousant, cousu, e (avoir)—je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent, —je cousais, je cousis, je coudrai, je coudrais—couds, cousons, cousez—que je couse, que je cousisse, qu'il cousît.

Courir, to run; courant, couru (avoir)—je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent—je courais, je courus, je courrai, je courrais—cours, courons, courez—que je coure, que je courusse.

Croire, to believe; croyant, cru, e (avoir)—je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient—je croyais, nous croyions, vous croiyiez—je crus, je croirai, je croirais—crois—que je croie, que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, que je crusse.

Cueillir, to gather; cueillant, cueilli, e—je cueille, nous cueillons—je cueillais, je cueillis, je cueillerai, je cueillerais—cueille—que je cueille, que je cueillisse, qu'il cueillît.

Débattre, to debate; like battre.

Déchoir, to decay; (no present participle), déchu, e je déchois, tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient—(no imperfect)—je déchus, je décherrai, je décherrais—que je déchoie, que nous déchoyions—que je déchusse.

Découdre, to unsew; like coudre.

Décrire, to describe; like écrire.

Dédire, to disown; like dire, *except* vous dédisez.

Défaire, to undo; like faire.

Se défaire, to get rid of; like faire.

Démettre, to remove; like mettre.

Se démettre, to resign; like mettre.

Déplaire, to displease; like plaire.

Déprouvoir, to take away what is wanted or necessary; used in the infinitive and compound tenses.

Désapprendre, to forget; like prendre.

Dire, to say, to tell; disant, dit, e—je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent—je disais, je dis, nous dîmes, je dirai, je dirais—dis, disons, dites—que je dise, que je disse, qu'il dît.

Discourir, to discourse; like courir.

Dissoudre, to dissolve; like absoudre.

Distraire, te divert; like traire.

S'ébattre, to sport, to be merry; like battre.

Echoir, to be due, to expire; échéant, échu, e—il échoit, ils échoient—(no imperfect)—il échut, ils échurent, il écherra, ils écherront, il écherrait, ils écherraient—(no imperfect, no present subjunctive)—qu'il échût, qu'ils échussent.

Eclore, to blow, to hatch; used only in the following cases: éclos, e—il éclôt, ils éclosent, il éclôra, ils éclôront, il éclôrait, ils éclôraient—qu'il éclose, qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent—il est éclos, etc.

Ecrire, to write; écrivant, écrit, e—j'écris, tu écrit, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent—j'écrivais j'écrivis, j'écrirai, j'écrirais—écris, écrivons, écrivez—que j'écrive, que j'écrivisse, qu'il écrivît.

Elire, to elect; like lire.

Emouvoir, to stir: like mouvoir.

Enclore, to enclose; like clore.

Encourir, to incur; like courir.

S'enfuir, to fly, to flee, to run away; like fuir.

S'enquérir, to inquire; like acquérir.

S'ensuivre, to follow (unipersonal); s'ensuivant, ensuivi—il s'ensuit, il s'ensuivait, il s'ensuivit, il s'ensuivra, il s'ensuivrait—qu'il s'ensuive, qu'il s'ensuivît.

S'entremettre, to mediate; like mettre.

S'entre-nuire, to injure one another; like nuire.

Entreprendre, to undertake; like prendre.

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of; like voir.

Envoyer, to send; envoyant, envoyé, e (avoir)—j'envoie, tu envoies, il envoie, nous envoyons, vous envoyez, ils envoient—j'envoyais, tu envoyais, il envoyait, nous envoyions, vous envoyiez, ils envoyaient—j'envoyai, j'enverrai, j'enverrais—envoie, envoyons, envoyez—que j'envoie, que nous envoyions, qne vous envoyiez, qu'ils envoient, que j'envoyasse, qu'il envoyât.

S'éprendre, to be smitten; like prendre.

Equivaloir, to be equivalent; like valoir.

Exclure, to exclude; excluant, exclu; like conclure.

Extraire, to extract; like traire.

Faillir, to fail; faillant, failli, used only in the past definite and compound tenses of the indicative mode; je faillis, nous faillîmes, j'ai failli, j'avais failli.

Faire, to do, to make; faisant, fait, e—je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font—je faisais, je fis, nous fîmes, je ferai, je ferais—fais, faisons, faites—que je fasse, que je fisse, qu'il fît.

Falloir (a unipersonal verb), to be necessary, must; fallu, been necessary; il faut, il fallait, il fallut, il faudra, il faudrait—qu'il faille, qu'il fallût.

Férir, to strike; used only in sans coup férir, without striking a blow.

Fleurir, to blossom, regular except in speaking of the arts, sciences and empires Its part. pres. is florissant, flourishing; and the third persons of the imperf. indic. are florissait, florissaient.

Forfaire, to forfeit· like faire.

Frire, to fry; (no part. pres.)—frit—je fris, tu fris, il frit, nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire—je faisais frire, je fis frire, je frirai, je frirais—fais frire—que je fasse frire, que je fisse frire.

Fuire, to fly, to flee; fuyant, fui—je fuis, nous fuyons—je fuyais, nous fuyions—je fuis, je fuirai, je fuirais—fuis—que je fuie, que nous fuyions, que je fuisse.

Gésir, to lie; gisant—il git, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent—je gisais, etc.—ci-git, here lies; ci-gisent, here lie.

Haïr, to hate; haïssant, haï, e—je hais, tu hais, il hait, nous haïssons, vous haïssez, ils haïssent—je haïssais, je haïs, nous haïmes, vous haïtes, ils haïrent—je haïrai, je haïrais—hais, haïssons, haïssez—que je haïsse, que je haïsse, qu'il haït.

Honnir, to dishonor; past part., honni. Motto of the order of the Garter: honni soit qui mal y pense.

Importer, to be of consequence (a unipersonal verb); il importe, il importait; and also to import, conjugated like aimer.

Inscrire, to inscribe; like écrire.

Interdire, to forbid; like dire.

Interrompre, to interrupt; like rompre.

Lire, to read; lisant, lu, e—je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent—je lisais, je lus, je lirai, je lirais—lis—que je lise, que je lusse, qu'il lût.

Luire, to shine, luisant, lui—je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous luisez, ils luisent—je luisais—(no past definite)—je luirai, je luirais—luis—que je luise—(no imperfect).

Malfaire, to do wrong; used only in the infinitive.

Maudire, to curse; maudissant, maudit, e—je maudis, nous maudissons—je maudissais, je maudis, je mau-

dirai, je maudirais—maudis—que je maudisse, que je maudisse.

Médire, to slander; like dire, *except* vous médisez—médisez.

Se méprendre, to mistake; like prendre.

Mettre, to put; mettant, mis, e—je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent—je mettais, je mis, je mettrai, je mettrais—mets—que je mette, que je misse, qu'il mît.

Moudre, to grind; moulant moulu, e—je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent—je moulais, je moulus, je moudrai, je moudrais—que je moule, que je moulusse, qu'il moulût.

Mourir, to die; mourant, mort, e (être)—je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent—je mourais, je mourus, je mourrai, je mourrais—meurs, mourons, mourez—que je meure, que je mourusse.

Naître, to be born; naissant, né, e (être)—je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons—je naissais, je naquis, je naîtrai, je naîtrais—nais, naissons, naissez—que je naisse, que je naquisse, qu'il naquît.

Nuire, to hurt; past part., nui. The rest like réduire.

Omettre, to omit; like mettre.

Ouïr, to hear; ouï—j'ouïs, I heard—ils ouïrent—j'ai ouï; etc.—que j'ouïsse, qu'il ouît.

Paître, tu graze; paissant, etc.—say: je fais paître, je faisais paître, je fis paître, je ferai paître, etc.

Parcourir, to run over; like courir.

Parfaire, to complete; like faire (obsolete).

Permettre, to permit; like mettre.

Plaire, to please; plaisant, plu—je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent—je plaisais, je plus, je plairai, je plairais—plais, plaisons, plaisez—que je plaise, que je plusse.

Pleuvoir, to rain (unipersonal); plu—il pleut, il pleuvait, il plut, il pleuvra, il pleuvrait—qu'il pleuve, qu'il plût.

Poindre, to dawn; only used in, il poindra.

Poursuivre, to pursue; like suivre.

Pourvoir, to provide; pourvoyant, pourvu, e—je pourvois, tu pourvois, il pourvoit, nous pourvoyons, vous pourvoyez, ils pourvoient—je pourvoyais, tu pourvoyais, il pourvoyait. nous pourvoyions, vous pourvoyiez, ils pourvoyaient—je pourvus, je pourvoirai, je pourvoirais—pourvois, pourvoyons, pourvoyez—que je pourvoie, que tu pourvoies, qu'il pourvoie, que nous pourvoyions, que vous pourvoyiez, qu'ils pourvoient—que je pourvusse, qu'il pourvût.

Pouvoir, to be able; pouvant, pu—je puis or je peux, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent—je pouvais—je pus, tu pus, il put, nous pûmes, vous pûtes, ils purent—je pourrai, je pourrais—(no imperative)—que je puisse, que je pusse, qu'il pût.

Prédire, to foretell; like dire, *except* vous prédisez—prédisez, impératif.

Prendre, to take; prenant, pris, e—je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils prennent—je prenais, je pris, je prendrai, je prendrais—prends, prenons, prenez—que je prenne, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent—que je prisse.

Prescrire, to prescribe; like écrire.

Prévaloir, to prevail; like valoir, except the pres subj. que je prévale, que tu prévales, qu'il prévale, que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent.

Prévoir, to foresee; like voir, except the future and conditional; je prévoirai, tu prévoiras, il prévoira, nous prévoirons, vous prévoirez, ils prévoiront—je prévoirais tu prévoirais. il prévoirait, nous prévoirions, vous prévoiriez, ils prévoiraient.

Promettre, to promise; like mettre.

Proscrire, to proscribe; like écrire.

Quérir, to fetch; used (seldom) in the infinitive, after aller, envoyer, venir; as: allez me quérir M. C.; envoyez quérir cet homme; il m'est venu quérir, etc.

Rabattre, to abate; like battre.

Rapprendre, to learn again; like prendre.

Se rasseoir, to sit down again; like s'asseoir.

Ravoir, to have again; used only in the infinitive.

Rebattre, to beat again; like battre.

Reboire, to drink again; like boire.

Reclure, to shut up; only in the infinitive and compound tenses.

Reconquérir, to conquer again; like acquérir.

Recoudre, to sew again; like coudre.

Recourir, to have recourse, to run again; like courir.

Récrire, to write again; like écrire.

Recueillir, to gather; like cueillir.

Redéfaire, to undo again; like faire.

Relire, to read again; like lire.

Reluire, to shine; like luire.

Remettre, to put again, to deliver; like mettre.

Remoudre, to grind again; like moudre.

Renaître, to be born again, to spring up again, to revive; like naître. No past part., no compound tenses.

Renvoyer, to send back; like envoyer.

Reprendre, to take again; like prendre.

Requérir, to require; like acquérir

Résoudre, to resolve; résolvant, résolu, e—je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils résolvent—je résolvais je résolus, je résoudrai, je résoudrais—résous, résolvons, résolvez—que je résolve, que je résolusse, qu'il résolût.

Revaloir, to return like for like; like valoir.

Revêtir, to invest; like vêtir.

Revivre, to revive; like vivre.

Revoir, to review, to see again; like voir.

Rire, to laugh; riant, ri—je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient—je riais, tu riais, il riait, nous riions, vous riiez, ils riaient—je ris, nous rîmes—je rirai, je rirais—ris, rions, riez—que je rie, que tu ries, qu'il rie, que nous riions. que vous riiez, qu'ils rient—que je risse, qu'il rît.

Rompre, to break; rompant, rompu, e—je romps, tu romps, il rompt, nous rompons, vous rompez, ils rompent—je rompais, je rompis, je romprai, je romprais—romps, rompons, rompez—que je rompe, que je rompisse.

Saillir, to gush out (is regular, and conjugated like finir), to project; saillant, sailli—il saille, ils saillent, il saillait, ils saillaient—(no past definite)—il saillera, ils sailleront, il saillerait, ils sailleraient—qu'il saille, qu'ils saillent, qu'il saillît, qu'ils saillisent.

Satisfaire, to satisfy; like faire.

Savoir, to know; sachant, su, e—je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent—je savais, je sus, nous sûmes—je saurai, je saurais—sache, sachons, sachez—que je sache, que je susse.

Secourir, to help; like courir.

Seoir, to become, to fit; seyant—il sied, ils siéent—il seyait, ils seyaient—il siéra, ils siéront—il siérait, ils siéraient—only are in use. To sit, only in séant; sis, e, situated.

Soumettre, to submit; like mettre.

Sourire, to smile; like rire.

Souscrire, to subscribe; like écrire.

Soustraire, to substract; like traire.

Suffire, to suffice; suffisant, suffi—je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffisons, vous suffisez, ils suffisent—je

suffisais, je suffis, nous suffîmes, je suffirai, je suffirais suffis, suffisons, suffisez—que je suffise, que je suffisse.

Suivre, to follow; suivant, suivi, e—je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous suivez. ils suivent—je suivais, je suivis, je suivrai, je suivrais—suis, suivons, suivez—que je suive, que je suivisse.

Surfaire, to exact, to overcharge; like faire.

Surgir, to issue, to rise; used figuratively; as, il surgira des difficultés, difficulties will arise, etc.

Surprendre, to surprise; like prendre.

Surseoir, to put off (a law term); sursoyant, sursis—je sursois, tu sursois, il sursoit, nous sursoyons, vous sursoyez, ils sursoient—je sursoyais, tu sursoyais, il sursoyait, nous sursoyions, vous sursoyiez, ils sursoyaient—je sursis, je sursoirai, je sursoirai—sursois—que je sursoie, que tu sursoies, qu'il sursoie, que nous sursoyions, que vous sursoyiez, qu'ils sursoient—que je sursisse.

Survivre, to outlive; like vivre.

Taire, to conceal; taisant, tu—je tais, tu tais, il tait, nous taisons, vous taisez, ils taisent—je taisais, je tus, je tairai, je tairais—tais, taisons, taisez—que je taise, que je tusse, qu'il tût—avoir tu, ayant tu.

Se taire, to be silent; like taire.

Traire, to milk; trayant, trait, e—je trais, tu trais, il trait, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient—je trayais, tu trayais, il trayait, nous trayions, vous trayiez, ils trayaient—(no past definite)—je trairai, tu trairas, etc.—je trairais—trais, trayons, trayez—que je traie, que tu traies, qu'il traie, que nous trayions, que vous trayiez, qu'ils traient—(no imperfect subjunctive).

Transcrire, to transcribe; like écrire.

Transmettre, to convey; like mettre.

Tressaillir, to start; tressaillant, tressailli—je tres-

saille, je tressaillais, je tressaillis, je tressaillirai, je tressaillirais—tressaille—que je tressaille, que je tressaillisse.

Vaincre, to vanquish; vainqant, vaincu, e—je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent—je vainquais, je vainquis, je vaincrai, je vaincrais—vaincs, vainquons, vainquez—que je vainque, que je vainquisse.

Valoir, to be worth; valant, valu, e—je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent—je valais, je valus, je vaudrai, je vaudrais—(no imperative)—que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils vaillent, que je valusse, qu'il valût.

Vêtir, to dress; vêtant, vêtu, e—je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt, nous vêtons, vous vêtez, ils vêtent—je vêtais, je vêtis, je vêtirai, je vêtirais—vêts, vêtons, vêtez—que je vête, que je vêtisse, etc.

Vivre, to live; vivant, vécu—je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vivons, vous vivez. ils vivent—je vivais, je vécus, je vivrai, je vivrais—vis, vivons, vivez—que je vive, que je vécusse.

Voir, to see; voyant, vu, e—je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient—je voyais, tu voyais, il voyait, nous voyions, vous voyiez, ils voyaient—je vis, nous vîmes—je verrai, je verrais—vois, voyons, voyez—que je voie, que tu voies, qu'il voie, que nous voyions, que vous voyiez, qu'ils voient—que je visse, etc.

Vouloir, to be willing; voulant, voulu—je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent—je voulais, je voulus, je voudrai, je voudrais—veuille, veuillez—que je veu lle, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent, que je voulusse, etc.

Objective Case after Verbs.

Some verbs have two objects, a direct and an indirect; as:

I gave a watch to my son,	J'ai donné une montre à mon fils.
I gave it to him.	Je la lui ai donnée.
I bought it for him.	Je l'ai achetée pour lui.
I paid the watch-maker for it.	Je l'ai payée à l'horloger.

The objective case after passive verbs is preceded by **de** or **par**. By **de**, when we express a *feeling*, a *passion* —an operation of the *soul;* by **par**, when we have to express an action in which the *body* or the *mind* alone is concerned.

Examples.

We are loved by our children.	Nous sommes aimés de nos enfants.
That girl is beloved by her aunt.	Cette fille est chérie de sa tante.
Wicked persons are detested by every body.	Les méchants sont détestés de tout le monde.
This novel was written by Alexander Dumas.	Ce roman a été écrit par Alexandre Dumas.
That boy has been corrected by his father.	Ce garçon a été corrigé par son père.
This parcel has been brought by John.	Ce paquet a été apporté par Jean.

The following verbs have for their object another verb in the infinitive:

Aimer mieux,	to like better.	Laisser,	to let.
Compter,	to intend.	Oser,	to dare.
Croire,	to believe.	Penser,	to think.
Daigner,	to deign.	Pouvoir,	to be able.
Devoir,	ought.	Prétendre,	to pretend.
Entendre,	to hear.	Savoir,	to know.
Espérer,	to hope.	Sembler,	to seem.
Faire,	to make.	Valoir mieux,	to be better.
Falloir,	must, to be necessary.	Venir,	to come.
S'imaginer,	to imagine.	Voir,	to see.

Vouloir, to be willing.

Examples.

She prefers to stay in rather than to go out.	Elle aime mieux rester que de sortir.
I intend to buy a new hat.	Je compte acheter un chapeau neuf.
I believe I can remember that.	Je crois pouvoir me rappeler cela.
Deign to listen to what I tell you.	Daignez écouter ce que je vous dis.
We are to dine out.	Nous devons dîner en ville.
I have had my trousers mended.	J'ai fait raccommoder mon pantalon.
I must give him forty francs.	Il me faut lui donner quarante francs.
He imagines he is learned.	Il s'imagine être savant.
I dare not say that.	Je n'ose pas dire cela.
We can not explain that to you.	Nous ne pouvons pas vous expliquer cela.
He pretends to learn that easily.	Il prétend apprendre cela facilement.
I know how to skate.	Je sais patiner.
It is better not to play at all.	Il vaut mieux ne pas jouer du tout.
Come and dine with us.	Venez dîner avec nous.

The following verbs require the preposition **à** before another verb in the infinitive:

S'abaisser,	to humble one's self.	S'avilir,	demean one's self.
S'abandonner,	yield one's self.	Avoir	have to.
Aboutir,	come out.	Balancer,	hesitate.
S'accoutumer,	accustom one's self.	Se borner,	limit one's self.
S'acharner,	be excited.	Chercher,	seek, look for.
Aider,	help.	Se complaire,	take delight in.
Aimer,	like to.	Concourir,	co-operate.
S'animer,	get animated.	Condamner,	condemn.
S'appliquer,	apply to.	Consentir,	consent.
Apprendre,	learn to.	Consister,	consist.
S'apprêter,	prepare one's self.	Conspirer,	conspire.
Aspirer,	aspire to.	Se consumer,	be consumed.
S'assujétir,	subject one's self.	Contribuer,	contribute.
S'attacher,	attach to.	Convier,	invite.
S'attendre,	expect a thing.	Coûter,	cost.
Autoriser,	authorize.	Décider,	determine to.

Désapprendre,	to unlearn.	Inviter,	to invite.
Se déterminer,	resolve to.	Se mettre,	begin to
Dévouer,	devote.	Montrer,	show to.
Disposer,	dispose.	S'offrir,	offer.
Donner,	give.	Parvenir,	succeed in.
Dresser,	train to.	Pencher,	incline to.
Tarder,	delay, to tarry.	Penser,	think of.
Tendre,	tend.	Persévérer,	persevere.
Employer,	employ in.	Persister,	persist.
Encourager,	encourage.	Se plaire,	be pleased.
Engager,	engage.	Se plier,	be folded.
S'enhardir,	make bold	Porter,	induce.
Enseigner,	teach.	Se préparer,	get ready.
S'entendre,	understand.	Provoquer,	provoke.
S'étudier,	make it one's	Réduire,	reduce.
Exceller (à faire)	excel in. [study.	Renoncer,	renounce.
Exciter,	excite to.	Répugner,	be repugnant to.
Exhorter,	exhort to.	Se résigner,	submit one's self.
Se fatiguer,	fatigue one's self.	Se résoudre,	resolve.
Former,	form to.	Réussir	succeed in.
Habituer,	accustom to.	Servir,	be of use to.
Hésiter,	hesitate.	Songer,	think of.
Inciter,	incite to.	Travailler,	work, to labor.
Instruire,	teach.	Viser,	aim at.

Vouer, to vow.

The following verbs take the preposition **de** before another verb in the infinitive:

S'abstenir,	to abstain from.	Cesser,	to cease.
Achever,	complete.	Charger (se),	charge.
Accuser,	charge.	Commander,	order.
Affecter,	affect.	Conjurer,	entreat.
S'affliger,	afflict one's self.	Conseiller,	advise to.
S'agir, (*impers.*)	be questioned.	Convenir,	agree.
Ambitionner,	to aspire.	Craindre,	fear.
S'applaudir,	praise one's self.	Dédaigner,	disdain to.
Appréhender,	apprehend.	Défendre,	forbid.
Avertir,	warn.	Défier,	defy.
S'aviser,	think of.	Délibérer,	deliberate.
Blâmer,	blame.	Désespérer,	despair.
Brûler,	burn with.	Détester,	detest.

Différer,	to defer; to delay.	Oublier,	to forget.
Dire,	say, to tell.	Parler,	speak of.
Disconvenir,	disown, to deny.	Permettre,	allow.
Dispenser,	exempt from.	Persuader,	persuade.
Eluder,	evade.	Avoir peur,	be afraid.
Empêcher,	prevent from.	Préférer,	prefer.
Enjoindre,	enjoin.	Prendre garde,	take care not to.
S'enorgueillir,	get proud of.	Préserver,	preserve.
Entreprendre,	undertake.	Prier,	beseech.
S'étonner,	be astonished at.	Projeter,	form projects.
Eviter,	avoid.	Promettre,	promise.
S'excuser,	excuse one's self	Se proposer,	propose.
Feindre,	feign. [for.	Protester,	protest.
Féliciter,	congratulate.	Punir,	punish.
Se flatter,	flatter one's self.	Recommander,	recommend.
Frémir,	shudder.	Refuser,	refuse.
Gagner,	gain, to have ad-	Regretter,	regret.
Gémir,	groan. [vantage.	Se Rejouir,	rejoice at.
Se glorifier,	glory in.	Se repentir,	repent.
Hâter,	hasten.	Reprocher,	reproach.
S'indigner,	be indignant.	Retarder,	delay.
Inspirer,	inspire.	Rire,	laugh.
Interdire,	forbid.	Risquer,	risk.
Jurer,	swear.	Rougir,	blush.
Languir,	languish.	Sommer,	summon.
Mander,	inform.	Souffrir,	suffer.
Manquer,	miss, to fail.	Souhaiter,	wish.
Méditer,	meditate.	Soupçonner,	suspect.
Menacer,	threaten.	Suggérer,	suggest.
Mériter,	deserve.	Supplier,	beseech.
Négliger,	neglect.	Tenter,	be tempted.
Obtenir,	obtain.	Trembler,	tremble.
Offrir,	offer.	S'approcher,	approach.
Ordonner,	give order.	Se vanter,	boast.

Se fâcher, to grow angry at something.

Tenses of the Verb.

The Present.

1. The present tense in French has no variety of expression corresponding to the English *I give, I do give*

I am giving, etc.; all alike are rendered by the simple present **je donne**, etc.

2. As in English, the Present is often used instead of the Past in lively narration.

Thus, La nuit approche, l'instant arrive; César se présente. Night draws nigh, the moment comes; Cæsar presents himself.

And in French, much more often than would be regarded as good style in English, present and past are mixed and interchanged in the same sentence.

3. The Present not infrequently stands where the Future would be more logically correct.

Thus, Dès que je pourrai, je reviens. As soon as I shall be able, I (shall) come back. Je pars demain. I set out to-morrow.

4. The Present is regularly used (instead of the Perfect, as in English) for past action continued into the present, or for what has been and still is.

Thus, Il est ici depuis une semaine. He has been here for a week. Je l'ai déjà deux ans. I have had it two years already.

We similarly use the Imperfect for the English Pluperfect.

The Imperfect.

1. The Imperfect expresses past action viewed as *continuous*, as a lasting condition or quality, or as a habitual and repeated action.

The distinction, when the Imperfect is to be employed in French can be easily made. Whenever we might say in English *I was giving*, or *I kept giving*, or *I used to give*, or *I gave repeatedly*, or the like, the Imperfect must be used in French.

2. The Imperfect is used either in conversation or narration to express:

a. A past action which was already going on, when the one expressed by either the Past Indefinite or Preterit takes place. Ex.:

When I came in, he was writing—
Quand je suis entré, il écrivait;
or, Quand j'entrai (preterit; narrative style) il écrivait.
I saw her yesterday. She was walking about—
Je l'ai vue hier. Elle se promenait.

b. A continued action:

While I spoke, he wrote—Tandis que je parlais, il écrivait.
Where were you yesterday?—Où étiez-vous hier?

c. A repeated or habitual action:

1. Every time I spoke, he interrupted me—
Chaque fois que je parlais, il m'interrompait.
2. Last summer I took a walk every morning—
L'été passé, je faisais une promenade tous les matins.
I used to read a good deal, then—Je lisais beaucoup, alors.

The Preterit and Past Perfect Tense.

The Past Indefinite and Preterit represent a past action as single or momentary.

Practically, the Past Indefinite or Conversational Tense alone of these two, is used in conversation:

I saw him yesterday—Je l'ai vu hier.

While the Preterit or Historical Tense fills in narration the same office as the Past Indefinite in conversation:

Cæsar saw him and said ..., César le vit, et dit ...

The Pluperfect and the Past Anterior.

The Pluperfect and the Past Anterior both answer to the English Pluperfect, but the French Pluperfect is its ordinary equivalent, and much the commoner of the two tense-forms.

a. In general, the Past Anterior is used only after certain particles, which give a special definiteness to the action expressed, in its relation to another past action. These particles are quand and lorsque, when; après que, after; dès que and aussitôt que, as soon as; à peine, hardly; and the like: thus, Lorsqu'il eut fini, je sortis. When he had finished, I went out.

b. Only the Pluperfect can be used after si, if.

The Future.

The Future corresponds to the English Future.

a. The French, however, often use the Future in compound sentences where it is logically more correct, but where the English has the present instead: thus, Vous direz ce qu'il vous plaira. You will say what you (shall) please. Tant qu'il vivra. As long as he lives (or shall live).

b. The Future is used after si only in the sense of whether: thus, Je ne sais s'il viendra. I know not whether he will come.

c. As in English, the Future is sometimes used in an imperative sense: thus, Tu ne tueras pas. Thou shalt not kill; or to express a probability: thus, Ce sera quelque grand homme. He is doubtless some great man.

The Future Perfect.

The Future Perfect is used like the corresponding tense in English.

a. Its peculiarities of use are closely analogous to those of the simple Future: thus, Tu recueilleras ce que tu auras semé. Thou wilt reap what thou hast (shalt have) sown. Personne ne saura s'il sera venu. No one will know whether he has come. Il aura rendu quelques services. He has doubtless rendered some services.

The Conditional.

The Conditional agrees in its general use with the English Conditional, or verb-phrase made with the auxiliaries would and should.

a. The Conditional answers to a past tense as a future to a present: thus, J'espère qu'il viendra, j'espérais qu'il viendrait. I hope he will come, I hoped he would come. Qui l'aura, sera mort; qui l'aurait, serait mort. Whoever has it will be a dead man; whoever had it would be a dead man. Je ne sais s'il viendra; je ne savais s'il viendrait. I don't know whether he will come; I did not know whether he would come, and so on.

b. In a hypothetical sentence, the Conditional is used in the conclusion: thus, Si je l'avais, je serais content, If I had it, I should be satisfied. But instead of it, the Past Subjunctive may be used: see below. If quand is used instead of si, the Conditional may stand also in the other clause: thus, quand je l'aurais, if I had it; also after que, in an idiomatically inverted sentence: thus, Je l'aurais, que je n'en serais pas content. I might have it, and yet not be satisfied.

c. As in English, the Conditional is used to soften a request or statement: thus, auriez-vous la bonté.... would you have the kindness....je voudrais que....I should like to have ...Saurais (conditional of **savoir**, to know), is idiomatically used in the sense of the present *can*.

The Conditional Perfect.

The Conditional Perfect corresponds to the same tense in English, and is related to the simple conditional precisely as the future perfect to the future.

Syntax of the Verb.

1. The verb agrees in number and person with its *nominative*, or *subject*, whether that subject precedes or follows, as:

They run too fast,	Ils courent trop vite.
The women and children came [afterward.	Vinrent ensuite les femmes et les [enfants.

2. A verb is put in the plural when it has two or more singular subjects, as:

My father and mother are out,	Mon père et ma mère sont sortis.
Liberty, Equality, Fraternity, are [vain words.	Liberté, Egalité, Fraternité, sont [de vains mots.

3. When the subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in the plural, and agrees with the person having the priority: the first rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as:

Henry and I will go to Europe.	Henri et moi nous irons en Europe.
You and your sister are late.	Vous et votre sœur êtes, or vous [êtes, en retard.
Peter, you and I are friends.	Pierre, vous et moi sommes, or [nous sommes, amis

The Subjunctive Mode.

The Subjunctive mode is so called because it always depends upon another verb, to which it is united by a conjunction; or, rather upon a preposition expressing *doubt*, *wish*, *fear*, *command*, *necessity*, *indecision*, *supposition*, *surprise*, etc.; in one word, all that which is not positive.

RULE I.—The Subjunctive is used after impersonal and other verbs, expressing *doubt*, *wish*, etc.

I desire that he should write.	Je désire	qu'il écrive.
It is important that he should write.	Il est important	
I intend that he shall write.	Je prétends	
It is necessary for him to write.	Il est nécessaire	
It will be necessary for us to leave.	Il faudra	que nous partions.
It will be best that we should leave.	Il sera utile	

RULE II.—The Subjunctine is used after most interrogative and negative propositions, unless we have a positive act to express.

Do you believe—think, suspect, imagine—that there are robbers here?	Croyez-vous — pensez-vous, soupçonnez-vous, vous imaginez-vous—qu'il y ait des voleurs ici?
I will never believe—I do not suppose—that there can be any.	Je ne croirai jamais—je ne suppose pas—qu'il puisse y en avoir.

But with a positive fact, the indicative mode is used:

Does that man believe there is a God?	Cet homme croit-il qu'il y a un Dieu?
He does not believe that there is a God.	Il ne croit pas qu'il y a un Dieu.

RULE III.—The following compound conjunctions require the Subjunctive after them:

Afin que, in order that.	Pour que, in order that.
A moins que (ne), unless.	Pourvu que, provided.
Au cas que, in case that.	Non pas que, not that.
Avant que, before.	Pour peu que, however little.
Bien que, though.	Quoique, though.
De crainte que, / De peur que, — for fear that.	Sans que, without.
	Si tant est que, if it is true that.
En cas que, in case that.	Soit que, whether.
Encore que, although.	Jusqu'à ce que, till.
Loin que, far from.	Non que, not that.
Malgré que, notwithstanding.	De ce que requires the indicative.

Afin que vous sachiez.	In order that you may know.
En cas que vous restiez ici.	In case you remain here.
A moins que vous ne lui écriviez.	Unless you write to her.

NOTE.—The negative **ne** is used after the following without implying negation: à moins que, de peur que, de crainte que; and after the verbs craindre, avoir peur, trembler, appréhender, empêcher. Still, after craindre, avoir peur, trembler, we use **pas** after **ne** when we wish for the accomplishment of the action expressed by the second verb, which is in the subjunctive.

J'ai peur que Madame S. ne vienne pas,	I wish her to come.
J'ai peur que Madame S. ne vienne,	I do not wish her to come.
Je crains qu'il n'écrive pas,	I wish him to write.
Je crains qu'il n'écrive,	I don't wish him to write.

RULE IV.—Use the Subjunctive after the following expressions:

Quel que, quoi que, whatever.
Quelque, quelque...que, si...que, however.
Qui que, qui que ce soit, whoever.

Whatever may be your opinion.	Quelle que soit votre opinion.
Whatever may be his feelings.	Quels que soient ses sentiments.
Whatever you may say.	Quoi que vous disiez.
However rich you may be.	Quelque riche que vous soyez.
However tall he may be.	Si grand qu'il soit.
Whoever says so is in the wrong.	Qui que ce soit qui le dise, a tort.

Tout...que, though, requires the Indicative; as:

Though you are learned, you may be mistaken.	Tout savant que vous êtes, vous pouvez vous tromper.

RULE V.—The Subjunctive generally comes after il n'y a, il n'y a pas, il n'y a que, il n'est, il n'est pas, il n'est que, followed by a noun or a pronoun.

There is nobody who knows that.	Il n'y a personne qui sache cela.
There are none who know that.	Il n'y a pas d'hommes qui sachent cela.
There are but few / There are few } who know that.	Il n'en est guère / Il en est peu } qui sachent cela.

Rule VI.—Unless we intend to affirm the thing positively, the Subjunctive is used after relative pronouns, when they are preceded by a superlative or by an equivalent; as, le seul, the only one; l'unique, the sole; le premier, le dernier, etc.; as:

That is the finest house I know.	Voilà la plus belle maison que je connaisse.
You are the last who came.	Vous êtes le dernier qui soit venu.
It is, perhaps, the only book I can lend you.	C'est peut-être le seul livre que je puisse vous prêter.
Do you know the last who came?	Connaissez-vous le dernier qui est venu?
He lent me the only book he had.	Il m'a prêté le seul livre qu'il avait.

Sometimes not only the verb which requires the Subjunctive is understood, but even the **que** which precedes that verb is not expressed. This takes place in certain exclamations; as:

May heaven! Would to God!	Fasse le ciel! Plût à Dieu!
Whatsoever may happen!	Advienne que pourra!
France for ever!	Vive la France!

The subjunctive must be used in some particular expressions; as:

Who goes there?	Qui vive?
He has taken nothing, so far as I know.	Il n'a rien pris, que je sache.
We said nothing bad, to my knowledge.	Nous n'avons rien dit de mal, que je sache.

The Concord of the Tenses in the Subjunctive, with reference to the Verb in the first Proposition of the Sentence.

TWO IMPORTANT RULES.—I. After the présent de l'indicatif and the futur, come the présent or the prétérit of the subjunctive.

You must come immediately.	Il faut que vous veniez tout de suite.
You will be obliged to come tomorrow.	Il faudra que vous veniez demain.
It is sufficient for you to have neglected nothing.	Il suffit que vous n'ayez rien négligé.
It will be sufficient for you to be back before Sunday.	Il suffira que vous soyez de retour avant dimanche.

II. After the imparfait, prétérit, passé indéfini, plus-que-parfait, passé antérieur, and conditionnels, come the imparfait or the plus-que-parfait of the subjunctive.

It was necessary that you should come.	Il fallait que vous vinssiez.
It has been necessary, etc.	Il fallut, " " Il a fallu, " "
It had been necessary, etc.	Il avait fallu, " " Il eut fallu, " "
It would be necessary, etc.	Il faudrait, " "
It would have been necessary, etc.	Il aurait fallu, " "

Examples.

I do not believe that he will succeed.	Je ne crois pas qu'il réussisse.
It will be necessary for you to buy it.	Il faudra que vous l'achetiez.
What shall I say?	Que voulez-vous que je dise?
Is it not a pity that your son has torn his coat?	N'est-ce pas dommage que votre fils ait déchiré son habit?
Is it certain that you have lost your purse?	Est-il certain que vous ayez perdu votre porte-monnaie?
Do you think he has sold his house?	Pensez-vous qu'il ait vendu sa maison?
Where would it be necessary for me to go?	Où faudrait-il que j'allasse?
What would you have me do?	Que voudriez-vous que je fisse?
What did you wish me to say?	Que vouliez-vous que je disse?
I wished you to write to me.	Je désirais que vous m'écrivissiez.
You ought to have come earlier.	Il aurait fallu que vous fussiez venu plus tôt.

REMARKS.—1. Sometimes, though the first verb is in the present or future, the second is in the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive; this takes place when the second verb depends on a conditional expression which is itself in the imperfect or pluperfect of the indicative, as:

I doubt whether you would do that if I told you to do it.	Je doute que vous fissiez cela si je vous disais de le faire.
I doubt whether he would have succeeded if....	Je doute qu'il eût réussi, si....

2. Sometimes, also, though the first verb is in one of the past tenses, the second is in the present or preterit of the subjunctive—

a. When we speak of a thing which is true at the moment we are speaking, as:

It was the will of God that we should be mortal.	Dieu a voulu que nous soyons mortels.

b. When we wish to express a future after afin que, bien que, de crainte que, etc., as:

You have been so careless, that I can not believe you capable of doing much.	Vous avez été trop insouciant pour que je vous croie capable de grand'chose.

The Participle.

There are two Participles, the present and the past. The Present Participle ends in ant, and is always invariable.

It must not be confounded with the verbal adjective ending in ant, which is variable, and expresses a state. The Present Participle generally has an objective case; the verbal adjective has none, and may be placed before the noun.

Present Participles.

Children obeying their parents.	Des enfants obéissant à leurs parents.
A mother loving her daughter.	Une mère aimant sa fille.
Children caressing their mother.	Des enfants caressant leur mère.
A rain fertilizing the soil.	Une pluie fécondant le sol.
Words offending decency.	Des paroles offensant la pudeur.

Verbal Adjectives.

They have obedient children.	Ils ont des enfants obéissants.
I have a loving mother.	J'ai une mère aimante.
We have caressing children.	Nous avons des enfants caressants
It is a fertilizing rain.	C'est une pluie fécondante.
Those are offensive words.	Ce sont des paroles offensantes.

The following verbal adjectives end in ent, instead of ant: adhérent, affluent, coïncident, différent, divergent, équivalent, excellent, expédient, négligent, précédent, président, résident, violent

There are three principal rules for the past participle.

RULE I.—Employed *without an auxiliary*, the past participle is a qualifier which takes the gender and number of the noun which it qualifies.

Except attendu, considering; excepté, except; ouï, heard; supposé, supposing; vu, considering; non compris, not including; y compris, including, etc., which are invariable when they are placed before the nouns, because they take the place of prepositions; as, attendu *for* en considération de, etc.

RULE II.—The past participle conjugated with être, or any other verb but avoir, is a true adjective, and agrees with the subject in gender and number.

The nominative or subject stands sometimes before, sometimes after the verb, as:

Noble souls gain by being known.	Les âmes nobles gagnent à être connues.
Blessed be those charitable ladies.	Bénies soient ces dames charitables.
Mr and Mrs. B. are going to Rouen.	M. et Mme. B. sont partis pour, or sont allés à Rouen.
The letters are all written.	Les lettres sont toutes écrites.
Your lesson is not known.	Votre leçon n'est pas sue.
She appeared afflicted.	Elles paraissait affligée.

RULE III.—The past participle of an active verb, conjugated with avoir, is variable, if it is preceded by the direct object of the verb; then it agrees in gender and number with that object. An adjective cannot be an accusative.

Invariable.—1st. If there is no direct object; 2nd. If the direct object is after the participle.

NOTE.—This third rule is the most important and the principal one.

The letters I have written.	Les lettres que j'ai écrites.
I have sent them (f.) to the post-office.	Je les ai envoyées à la poste.
Here are the books she gave me.	Voici les livres qu'elle m'a donnés.
She sent them to me yesterday.	Elle me les a envoyés hier.
I have written my two letters.	J'ai écrit mes deux lettres.
She has written nothing.	Elle n'a rien écrit.

Remarks on the Past Participle.

I. *Participle followed by an Infinitive.*—The past participle of an active verb, preceded by a pronoun in the accusative, and followed by an infinitive with or without a preposition before it, is *variable*, if the preceding pronoun is the direct object of the principal verb; as:

The ladies I heard singing.	Les dames que j'ai entendues chanter.
The children I saw playing.	Les enfants que j'ai vus jouer.

The participle is *invariable*, if the preceding pronoun is the object of the infinitive; as:

The robbers I saw condemned.	Les voleurs que j'ai vu condamner.
The children I saw punished.	Les enfants que j'ai vu punir.

NOTE.—The participle **fait**, done, made, is always invariable before an infinitive; as:

I have had them mended.	Je les ai fait raccommoder.

II. *Past Participle of Reflective Verbs.*—In reflective verbs, the auxiliary **être** always takes the place of **avoir**; as, je me suis habillé, for j'ai habillé moi-même, etc.; the participle of these verbs follows the third rule.

1. If the verb is essentially reflective, the participle agrees always with the second pronoun, which is the direct object of the verb; as:

They laughed at your threats.	Ils se sont moqués de vos menaces.
They (f.) did not remember your promises.	Elles ne se sont pas souvenues de vos promesses.

2. If the verb is accidentally reflective, the participle is variable, and follows the third rule, when the reflective is derived from an active verb; and invariable, if the verb by itself is a neuter verb; as, se plaire, se rire, se parler, se succéder, se nuire, etc.

What hard words they said to each other.	Quelles dures paroles ils se sont dites (object, paroles, *f.*).
They said hard words to each other.	Ils se sont dit de dures paroles (object after, third rule).
They were pleased with each other.	Ils se sont plu (a neuter verb).
They spoke to each other this morning.	Ils se sont parlé ce matin (a neuter verb).
They (f.) applied to me.	Elles se sont adressées à moi (se for elles-mêmes).
She gave herself much trouble.	Elle s'est donné beaucoup de peine (object after).

Essentially reflective verbs are: s'emparer, s'abstenir, se moquer, se souvenir, etc. See list of reflective verbs.

III.—1. The past participle of an impersonal verb is always invariable; as:

Great misfortunes have happened.	Il est arrivé de grands malheurs.
The snow we have had this winter.	La neige qu'il y a eu cet hiver.

2. The participle preceded and followed by que is invariable; as:

The persons I thought you knew.	Les personnes que j'ai cru que vous connaissiez.

3. The participle is invariable when it has for an object l' representing a proposition; as:

The news is better than we had believed.	La nouvelle est meilleure que nous ne l'avions cru.

4. The participle preceded by **le peu de** is variable when **le peu** is taken in a positive sense, and means a little quantity, amount; as:

He robbed me of the few francs I had won.	Il m'a volé le peu de francs que j'avais gagnés.

The participle is invariable, when **le peu** is taken in a negative sense, and means the *want*; as:

The little security I felt, discouraged me.	Le peu de sécurité que je sentais, m'a decouragé.

When variable, the participle agrees with the direct object which precedes it; when invariable, the participle agrees with **le peu**, which is masculine singular.

5. The participle preceded by an adverb of quantity agrees with the noun following the adverb; as:

Was there ever so much beauty crowned?	Jamais tant de beauté fut-elle couronnée?

6. The participle preceded by **en** is variable only when **en** is preceded by a direct object of the verb; as:

We got out of it.	Nous nous en sommes tirés.
They boasted of it.	Ils s'en sont vantés.
You received some.	Vous en avez reçu.

7. The participle preceded by **en** and an adverb of quantity is variable, when **en** refers to a preceding plural noun, and represents distinct objects—objects which can be added the one to the other; as:

The more Englishmen I have known, the more I have appreciated them.	Des Anglais, plus j'en ai connus, plus j'en ai appréciés.

The participle is invariable, when **en** represents a part of a whole whose elements can not be counted; as:

You made more progress than I did myself.	Vous avez fait plus de progrès que j'en ai fait moi-même.

Negation.

1. A verb is made negative in a simple tense by putting **ne** before and **pas** after it—in a compound tense, before and after the auxiliary.

a. It must always be borne in mind that in any compound form the auxiliary is the real verb, the added participle being only a verbal adjective. All rules, therefore, as to the place of negative words, subject and object pronouns, and so on, given with reference to the verb, apply to the auxiliary, and not to the participle in compound forms.

b. The **ne** comes after the subject, but precedes a pronoun object. It is abbreviated always to **n'** before a vowel or **h** mute.

2. Examples of tenses inflected negatively are:

je ne suis pas, I am not.	je n'avais pas eu, I had not had
tu n'es pas, thou art not.	tu n'avais pas eu, thou hadst not had.
il n'est pas, he is not.	il n'avait pas eu, he had not had.
nous ne sommes pas, we are not.	nous n'avions pas eu, we had not had
vous n'êtes pas. you are not.	vous n'aviez pas eu, you had not had.
il nes sont pas, they are not.	ils n'avaient pas eu, they had not had.

Point is sometimes used instead of **pas**, which makes a stronger or more emphatic negative; thus:

il n'est point, he is not (at all).	je n'avais point eu, I (certainly) had not had.

3. For never, nobody, and nothing, the French say ne...jamais (literally: not ever), ne...personne (literally: not a person), and ne...rien (literally: not a thing), respectively, the two words being separated, and the **ne** put always before the verb (or auxiliary); thus:

je ne suis jamais malade,	I am never ill.
il n'avait jamais été chez nous,	he had never been at our house.
je n'ai vu personne,	I have seen nobody.
personne n'a eu mon livre,	no one has had my book.
n'avez-vous rien?	have you nothing?
rien ne serait plus cruel,	nothing would be more cruel.

4. With the verbs **savoir, pouvoir, oser,** and **cesser, pas** or **point** is usually omitted, especially when an infinitive follows, and when the negation is not emphatic.

Thus, je ne sais ce que c'est, I don't know what it is, il ne peut tarder, he cannot delay, elle n'oserait revenir, she would not dare to come back, vous ne cessez de rire, you do not stop laughing. Saurais in the sense of *can* has **ne** only; thus, je ne saurais le dire, I cannot say; also usually **puis**: thus, je ne puis, I cannot (but je ne peux pas).

5. **Ne** is often used alone after **si,** after rhetorical questions introduced by **qui,** after **que** in the sense of *why?* or *unless,* with a perfect, after **depuis que** and **il y a...que,** and in a negative clause depending on one that is negative or impliedly so; thus, Si ce n'est vous? if it is not you? Qui de nous n'a ses défauts? who of us has not his faults? Que ne se corrige-t-il? why does he

not correct himself? Il y a trois mois que je ne l'ai vu, I have not seen him these three months. Vous n'avez pas un ami qui ne soit aussi le mien, you have not a friend who is not also mine, and Avez-vous un ami qui ne soit aussi le mien, have you (*i. e.* surely you have not) a friend who is not also mine?

6. **Ne** is used without **pas** or **point** in certain special phrases; thus, n'importe, no matter, n'avoir garde de, take care not to, n'avoir que faire, not have anything to do, ne plaise or ne déplaise, may it not please or displease, and a few others; thus, à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid, je n'ai garde de désavouer ma faute, I take care not to disavow my fault.

7. Of **ne...que**, meaning *only*, the **que** stands here *than* would stand if the expression were filled out; thus, je ne verrai qu'elle, I shall see only her, je ne la verrai que demain, I shall see her only to-morrow, je ne la verrai demain qu'après le dîner, I shall see her only after the dinner to-morrow. If the *only* qualifies the verb itself, a paraphrase is made with **faire**, thus, elle ne fait que pleurer, she merely cries, *or* elle ne fait autre chose que pleurer, she does nothing else than cry. **Autre**, *other*, is not seldom used with **ne** alone; thus, le droit n'est autre chose que la raison même, right is nothing but reason itself.

8. The negative **ne** belongs strictly to the verb, and can never be used except with a verb expressed. If the verb, then, is omitted (for example, in answers), he **ne** is also omitted, and the other word has by itself a negative sense, thus:

avez-vous des livres,	have you books?	pas un,	not one.
qu'avez-vous,	what have you?	rien,	nothing.
qui est ici,	who is here?	personne,	nobody.

9. After a negative verb, the partitive sense of a noun is expressed by **de** alone, without the article, thus:

je n'ai pas de pain,	I have no bread.
nous n'avions guère de vin,	we had scarcely any wine.
vous n'aurez plus de patience,	you will no longer have patience.

a. After **ni...ni**, both preposition and article are omitted and the partitive sense is left unexpressed as in English; thus:

je n'ai ni pain ni beurre,	I have neither bread nor butter.

b. On the other hand, after **ne...que**, *only*, both preposition and article are used; thus:

nous ne voyons que des ennemis,	we see only enemies.

10. The negative word **non**, is especially used as direct answer to a question, meaning *no;* thus: voulez-vous le faire? non, will you do it? no.

a. It also stands in incomplete expressions, for an omitted negative verb or clause; thus: je gage que non, I wager that it is not so, si l'on souffre ou non, whether one suffers or not, non que je le croie, not that I believe it.

b. It is used to negative a particular member of a sentence which is not a verb; thus: il demeure à la campagne, non loin d'ici, he lives in the country, not far from here, il périt, non sans gloire, he perished, not without glory. Especially, with a negative alternative opposed to a positive; thus: nous voulons un maître et non (*or* non pas) une maîtresse, we want a master, and not a mistress, je le ferai non seulement pour lui, mais aussi pour ses enfants, I shall do it not only for him, but also for his children.

c. **Non plus,** *not any more, not any sooner,* standing after a negative verb or after **ni,** *nor,* is often best rendered by *either;* thus: je ne le ferai pas non plus, I shall not do it either (literally- any more than he *or* than you, or the like); ni moi non plus, nor I either.

11. In dependent clauses, **ne** is often used with a verb expletively, or where no negation is really implied:—

a. After verbs of fear or apprehension, of hindering of doubt or denial; also, after nouns and adjectives of like meaning; thus: je crains qu'il ne vienne, I fear he may come; empêchez qu'il ne vienne, prevent his coming; évitez qu'il ne vous parle, avoid his speaking to you; je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, I do not doubt that he is coming; de peur qu'il ne vienne, for fear that he is coming; point de doute que cela ne soit, no doubt that is so; il est dangereux que la vanité n'étouffe la reconnaissance, it is to be feared that vanity might stifle gratitude.

In such cases, the verb of the dependent clause is always subjunctive; and the **que** with following **ne** may often be best rendered in English by *lest:* Je crains qu'il ne vienne, I fear lest he may come, and so on.

But there are also many exceptions; thus: **ne** is not inserted after an expression of fear or apprehension that is negative or implies a negation; nor, in modern style, after **défendre,** *forbid;* nor unless the expresssion of doubt or denial is negative or implies negation; nor, generally, before an infinitive—and other more irregular cases occur. This illogical intrusion of the negative is coming to be more and more neglected.

b. After the expressions of time **il y a...que, depuis que,** and **avant que,** a superfluous **ne** is sometimes inserted; thus: depuis que je ne vous ai vu, since I saw you; je serai sorti avant qu'il n'entre, I shall have gone

out before he comes in. Also after il s'en faut, there is lacking, with negative implication; thus: il ne s'en faut pas beaucoup qu'il n'ait perdu la raison, he came very near losing his reason.

c. A **ne** is inserted before a verb following and depending on a comparative; thus: c'est plus vrai que vous ne le croyez, it is truer than you think. So also after **autre** (and **autrement**); thus: cela est autrement que vous ne croyez, that is not as you suppose.

d. A **ne** is inserted before the subjunctive after **à moins que**, *unless;* thus: à moins que vous ne veniez, unless you come; also often after **sans que**, *without;* thus: sans que cela ne paraisse, without its appearing.

The Definite Article.

There are but two genders in the French language, viz.: the masculine and feminine.

This distinction applies not only to persons, but also to inanimate objects.

In order to indicate this distinction of gender, the definite article is prefixed to substantives.

There are two forms for the definite article—viz. **le** for the masculine, and **la** for the feminine form

Examples.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
le père,	the father.	la mère,	the mother.
le fils,	the son.	la fille,	the daughter.
le frère,	the brother.	la sœur,	the sister.
le cousin,	the cousin.	la cousine,	the cousin.
le beau-frère,	the brother-in-law.	la belle-sœur,	the sister-in-law.
le beau-père,	the father-in-law.	la belle-mère,	the mother-in-law.
le neveu,	the nephew.	la nièce,	the niece.
le grand-père,	the grandfather.	la grand'mère,	the grand-mother
le petit-fils,	the grand-child.	la petite-fille,	the grand-child.

Rule.—Before nouns beginning with a vowel or an unaspirated (*i e.*, mute) **h**, **le** and **la** are changed into **l'**, thus forming but one word with the noun.

Examples.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
l'oncle,	the uncle.	l'amie,	the friend.
l'ami,	the friend.	l'assiette,	the plate.
l'homme,	the man.	l'habitude,	the custom, habit.
l'état,	the state.		

The article must be used in French not only before nouns used in a *definite* sense, but also before nouns employed in a *general* sense; as:

Men are subject to error.	Les hommes sont sujets à l'erreur.
Children like games.	Les enfants aiment le jeu.
Little girls like dolls.	Les petites filles aiment les poupées.
Virtue is the reverse of vice.	La vertu est l'opposé du vice.
Wine is common in France.	Le vin est commun en France.

Before the names of countries, provinces, rivers, winds, mountains, etc, the definite article is used; as:

I have visited France, Italy and Germany.	J'ai visité la France, l'Italie, et l'Allemagne.
The Pyrenees, the ocean, the north, the south, the east, the west.	Les Pyrénées, l'océan, le nord, le sud, l'est, l'ouest.

Before titles prefixed to names, before the names of dignities, of systems of doctrine, of certain bodies, of seasons, etc., we use the definite article; as:

Marshall Ney.	Le Maréchal Ney.
General Sherman.	Le général Sherman.
President Cleveland.	Le président Cleveland.
Christianity; at school.	Le Christianisme; à l'école,
Spring, summer, autumn, winter.	Le printemps, l'été, l'automne, l'hiver.

The Article is *not used* in *French*:

1. Before nouns taken adjectively; as;

I am an American by birth.	Je suis Américain de naissance.
He is a merchant.	Il est marchand, *or*, négociant.
His father is a physician.	Son père est médecin.

2. When there is a relation of qualification between the two nouns by means of **de**; as:

The Queen of England.	La reine d'Angleterre.
The King of Greece.	Le roi de Grèce.

3. When **en** is employed; as:

I will go to France.	J'irai en France.
He lives in Belgium.	Il demeure en Belgique.

4. In proverbs; as:

Poverty is not a vice.	Pauvreté n'est pas vice.

5. Before nouns preceded by **sans, avec, ni, entre,** etc.; as:

A man without merit.	Un homme sans mérite.
I have neither pens nor paper.	Je n'ai ni plumes ni papier.

6. The article is frequently omitted in rapid narration; as.

Men, women, children, all perished!	Hommes, femmes, enfants, tout périt!
Glory, honor, fortune, all is lost.	Gloire, honneur, fortune, tout est perdu!

7. Before a substantive employed to particularize another which precedes; as:

Mary, the daughter of Mrs. B.	Marie, fille de Mme. B.

Repetition of the Article and other Determinatives.

When the article is used, it must be repeated before all the substantives, subjects, or objects. **Ce, cet, cette, ces, mon, ton, son, ma, leur, de,** etc., must also be repeated before every substantive; as:

Painting, poetry and music are sisters.	La peinture, la poésie, et la musique sont sœurs.
My father, mother and sisters.	Mon père, ma mère, et mes sœurs.
These large and these small rooms.	Ces petites et ces grandes chambres.

However, if several adjectives qualify the same noun, we do not repeat the determinative; as:

The young and kind Mrs. S.	La jeune et bonne Madame S.

Usage allows the article to be omitted in several forms, as in the following:

Fathers and mothers.	Les pères et mères.
The officers and soldiers.	Les officiers et soldats.
Ancient and modern history.	L'histoire ancienne et moderne.

Table of Declension.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	With the apostrophe.	
Nom.	le	la	l'	the
Gen.	du	de la	de l'	of the
Dat.	au	à la	à l'	to the
Acc.	le	la	l'	the

Plural.

Nom.	les	the	Only one form both for the masculine, feminine and apostrophe.
Gen.	des	of the	
Dat.	aux	to the	
Acc.	les	the	

The Partitive Article.

Such expressions as: "Give me some wine." "Have you any books?" 'Bring me some eggs," etc., are rendered in French by the so-called partitive article. "Donnez-moi du vin." "Avez-vous des livres?" "Apportez-moi des oeufs."

The partitive article is really the genitive of the definite article, as for instance: du vin, some wine; de l'eau, some water; de la bière, some beer; des magasins, some stores (*or* simply stores).[1]

In questions, the English use any instead of some, but in French this must always be rendered by the partitive article, as: Have you any bread? Avez-vous du pain? Has he bought any handkerchiefs? A-t-il acheté des mouchoirs? Has he made any purchases? A-t-il fait des emplettes?

Use of the Partitive Article.

1. Sometimes (but not often) the adjective precedes the French noun. In such cases the partitive article is expressed simply by **de**; as:

Gôod bread (*or* some [any] good bread) de bon pain.[2]
Bad coffee (*or* some [any] bad coffee), de mauvais café.
Beautiful flowers (*or* some [any] fine flowers), de belles fleurs.

[1] *Some* is not always used in English, but in French we must employ the partive article, whenever we imp y that we mean some part or parts of a totality.

[2] We have already seen that in French the adjective is usually placed after the noun so that the above rule holds good in a few cases only.

2. In the same manner **de** is used when a negative occurs in a French sentence.

I do not drink wine,	Je ne bois pas de vin.
I drink no water,	Je ne bois pas d'eau.
I have no change,	Je n'ai pas de monnaie.
I have no money,	Je n'ai pas d'argent.

3. **De** is used after nouns expressing measure, weight, quantity or number where *of* is used in English.

Examples.

une bouteille de vin,	a bottle of wine.
une tasse de café,	a cup of coffee.
une paire de bas,	a pair of stockings.

4. **De** must be employed after the following adverbs of quantity:

Assez, enough.
beaucoup, much, many, a great many, a great deal.
combien, how much, how many.
peu, little, few.
plus, more.
moins, less.
rien, nothing.
quelque chose, something.
trop, too much, too many.
trop peu, too little, too few.
tant, so much, so many.
autant, as much, as many.

Examples.

Je n'ai pas assez d'argent sur moi,	I have not money enough with me.
J'ai vu beaucoup de personnes,	I have seen a great many persons.
Combien d'échantillons avez vous reçu?	How many patterns have you received?
Il a lu peu de livres,	He has read few books.
Vous avez fait trop de fautes	You have made too many mistakes
Apportez-moi plus d'eau chaude, garçon,	Waiter, bring me more hot water

5. **De** is used in the place of our English adjective describing a material. as:

Une bague d'or,	a gold ring.
Une cuiller d'argent	a silver spoon.
Une robe de soie,	a silk dress.
Un chapeau de velours,	a velvet bonnet.
Une table de bois,	a wooden table.

The Indefinite Article.

Besides the definite article, there is also an indefinite one for the singular, answering to the English *a* or *an*, viz.: **un** for the masculine, and **une** for the feminine. Ex.: un oncle, an uncle; un gilet, a waistcoat; une lettre, a letter.

The indefinite article is declined:

Singular.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Nom. un.	une, a.
Gen. d'un.	d'une, of a.
Dat. à un.	à une, to a.
Acc. un.	une, a.

The indefinite article is omitted in exclamations; also before names of nationality:

What a beautiful landscape!	Quel beau paysage!
He is a Frenchman.	Il est Français.

The indefinite article is not used before nouns of weight or measure; but **le, la, l'** instead; as:

Ten francs a pound.	Dix francs la livre.
How much a yard?	Combien le mètre?

The Noun.

No Adjective use of Nouns.

A noun is the name of a living creature or thing. The French cannot say, a gold pen, a dining room, the water pitcher, the steam-engine, (thus using one noun as an adjective to the other) but, only, a pen of gold, a room for[1] dining, the pitcher for[1] (the) water, the engine with[1] steam.

Une plume d'or; une salle à manger.
Le pot à l'eau; la machine à vapeur.

No Possessive Case in French.

The French cannot say, my father's coat, my brother's clerk, but must say:

The coat of my father.	L'habit de mon père.
The clerk of my brother.	Le commis de mon frère.

Plural of Nouns.

The plural of nouns is formed by adding a silent **s** to the singular:

L'homme, les hommes; l'ami, les amis.

Nouns ending in **s**, **x** or **z**, in the singular, remain unchanged in the plural.

Le bras,	the arm.	Les bras,	the arms.
La voix,	the voice.	Les voix,	the voices.
Le nez,	the nose.	Les nez,	the noses.

Nouns in **au** or **eu** add **x** to the singular:

Le couteau, les couteaux; un cheveu, des cheveux.

---

[1]For and with in this connection, are both rendered by **à**.

Nouns in **al**[1], and a few nouns in **ail**, change **al** and **ail** into **aux**:

Le cheval, les chevaux; le corail, les coraux[2]

Seven nouns in **ou** take **x** in the plural. They are:

Bijou, jewel; caillou, pebble; chou, cabbage; genou, knee; hibou, owl; joujou, plaything, toy; pou, louse.

Plural: Bijoux, cailloux, etc.

Irregular Plurals.

Le ciel, the sky.	Les cieux, the skies.
L'œil, the eye.	Les yeux, the eyes.
L'aïeul, the ancestor.	*Plur.:* Les aïeux.
Le bétail, cattle.	*Plur.:* Les bestiaux.

The Feminine of Nouns.

Nouns which are susceptible of having both a masculine and a feminine form generally add **e** to the masculine form:

Le marchand, storekeeper.	La marchande, storekeeper.

Substantives Derived from Verbs.

Several nouns are derived from verbs; as, **fin**, end, from **finir**; **don**, gift, from **donner**, etc. They are formed as follows:

1. By removing the termination of the verb; as:

Finir, fin, an end.	Aviser, avis, a counsel.
Bondir, bond, a bound.	Chanter, chant, a song.
Sauter, saut, a jump.	Refuser, refus, a refusal.
Dessiner, dessin a drawing.	Appeler, appel, an appeal.

---

[1]The following nouns in **al** take **s**: Bal, ball; carnaval, carnival; chacal, jackal; régal, a treat; pal, a pale.

[2]But, éventail, a fan, éventails; and so, most nouns in **ail**.

2. By removing, together with the termination of the verb, the second of the double consonants preceding the termination; as:

Donner, don, a gift.
Conseiller, conseil, advice.
Amasser, amas, a heap.
Bourdonner, bourdon, a drone-fly, a great bell.
Travailler, travail, work.
Fusiller, fusil, a gun.
Réveiller, réveil, the awakening.
Rançonner. rançon, a ransom.
Bannir, ban, exile.
Recueillir, recueil, a selection.
Babiller, babil, a prattle.
Pardonner, pardon, a pardon.
Fracasser, fracas, a noise.

3. In the verbs ending in **yer** in the infinitive, **y** being equal to **ii**, the noun is formed by removing **ier**: as:

Employer, emploi, a place.
Envoyer, envoi, a message.
Ennuyer, ennui, a trouble.
Appuyer, appui, a support.
Balayer, balai, a broom.
Renvoyer, renvoi, a discharge.
Essayer, essai, a trial.
Remblayer, remblai, an embankment.

Some nouns are derived more indirectly from verbs: sometimes by removing only the last letter of the infinitive; sometimes three or more letters; as:

Disputer, dispute, a dispute.
Ruiner, ruine, ruin.
Caresser, caresse, a caress.
Forcer, force, strength.
Congédier, congé, a license.
Retourner, retour, the return.
Contourner, contour, outline.
Sommeiller, somme, a nap.

The Adjective.

All adjectives agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun they relate to, as: Le bon enfant, the good child; la bonne femme, the good woman; elle est heureuse, she is happy.

Adjectives are divided into two classes, viz.: *Qualifying* and *determining adjectives*.

Qualifying Adjectives.

Formation of the Feminine Form.

The feminine of adjectives and participles is generally formed by the addition of the letter e.

MASC.	FEM.	
vrai,	vraie,	true.
joli,	jolie,	pretty.
connu,	connue,	known.
général,	générale,	general.
charmant,	charmante,	charming.

Exceptions.

Adjectives ending in e mute remain unchanged in the feminine; as:

MASC.	FEM.	
sage,	sage,	wise.
aimable,	aimable,	amiable.

Adjectives ending in f, change f into ve in the feminine; as:

MASC.	FEM.	
actif,	active,	active.
bref,	brève,	short.
neuf,	neuve,	new.
vif,	vive,	quick.

Adjectives ending in l, double it in the feminine; as:

MASC.	FEM.	
cruel,	cruelle,	cruel.
pareil,	pareille,	similar.
nul,	nulle,	no, none.
éternel,	éte nelle,	eternal.
gentil,	gentille,	pretty.
tel,	telle,	such.
vermeil,	vermeille,	vermillion.

In the same manner monosyllables in **s**, **n** and **t** are formed; viz., doubling **s**, **n** and **t** in the feminine; as:

MASC.	FEM.	
bon,	bonne,	good.
gros,	grosse,	big.
sot,	sotte,	stupid.

To these belong also the following:

épais,	fem.	épaisse,	thick.
exprès,	fem.	expresse,	express.
muet,	fem.	muette,	dumb.
sujet,	fem.	sujette,	subject.

Adjectives ending in **x**, change the same into **se**:

MASC.	FEM.	
heureux,	heureuse,	happy.
jaloux,	jalouse,	jealous.
paresseux,	paresseuse,	lazy.

But **faux**, false, makes its feminine **fausse**.

Adjectives ending in **er** and **et** take in the feminine the *grave accent:*

MASC.	FEM.	
léger,	légère,	light.
complet,	complète,	complete.

Of the adjectives ending in **c** the following three change this **c** into **che**:

MASC.	FEM.	
blanc,	blanche,	white.
franc,	franche,	frank.
sec,	sèche,	dry.

The others ending in **c** take **que**:

MASC.	FEM.	
public,	publique,	public.
turc,	turque,	Turkish.
caduc,	caduque,	decrepit.
grec,	grecque,	Greek.

The following adjectives do not follow any of the above rules:

MASC.	FEM.	
long,	longue,	long.
aigu,	aiguë,	acute.
frais,	fraîche,	fresh.
doux,	douce,	sweet, soft.
malin,	maligne,	wicked.
bénin,	bénigne,	benign.

The following are more irregular in the formation of their feminine:

MASC.	FEM.	
Beau (bel),	belle,	beautiful.
nouveau (nouvel)	nouvelle,	new.
mou (mol),	molle,	soft.
fou (fol),	folle,	foolish.
vieux (vieil),	vieille,	old.

N. B. The above words in parentheses, **bel, nouvel,** etc., are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or h mute, as: un bel arbre, a fine tree; un nouvel ordre, a new order; un fol espoir, a foolish hope, etc.

The Plural of Adjectives.

The rules given for the plural of substantives apply also to adjectives. Ex.:

	PLURAL.
Grand, f. grande; great.	grands, f. grandes.
gras, f. grasse; fat.	gras, f. grasses.
royal, f. royale; royal.	royaux, f. royales.
beau, f. belle; beautiful	beaux, f. belles.
vieux, f. vieille; old.	vieux, f. vieilles.

Fou, mou and **bleu** (blue) make in the plural **fous, mous** and **bleus.**

Position of Adjectives in a Sentence.

Adjectives are generally placed after the nouns which they qualify; as, for instance:

le tailleur français,	the French tailor
l'homme heureux,	the happy man.
de l'eau fraîche,	some fresh water.

But the following, in their common acceptation, are generally placed before their nouns:

autre,	other.	demi,	half.
beau,	fine.	grand,	great.
bon,	good.	gros,	large.
brave,	brave.	jeune,	young.
cher,	dear.	joli,	pretty.
méchant,	wicked.	petit,	small.
mauvais,	bad.	saint,	holy.
meilleur,	better.	tout,	all.
moindre,	less.	vieux,	old.
nouveau,	new.	vrai,	true.

Many of these, however, may be constantly found in French books placed *after*, and many of the others may be found *before* their nouns. The safe rule is to place the adjective *after* its noun.

The following adjectives have a different meaning, according as they stand before or after their noun:

Un bon homme, a simple man.	Un homme bon, a kind man.
Un brave homme, an honest man.	Un homme brave, a brave man.
Mon cher ami, my dear friend.	Une robe chère, a costly dress,
Un certain conte, a certain story.	Une nouvelle certaine, sure news.
Un cruel enfant, a teasing child.	Un enfant cruel, a cruel child.
Différentes / Diverses } choses, sundry things.	Des objets { différents, / divers, } different or dissimilar objects

La dernière année, the last year (of a series).	L'année dernière, last year (the preceding year).
Un furieux menteur, an excessive liar.	Un animal furieux, a furious animal.
Une fausse clef, a skeleton key.	Une clef fausse, a wrong key (in music).
Un galant homme, a gentleman.	Un homme galant, a courteous man.
Un grand homme, a great man.	Un homme grand, a tall man.
Une grande dame, a great lady.	Une dame grande, a tall lady.
Un honnête homme, an honest man.	Un homme honnête, a civil man.
Un malhonnête homme, a dishonest man.	Un homme malhonnête, a rude man.
Un maigre dîner, a poor dinner.	Un dîner maigre, a fish dinner.
Un pauvre homme, a man of little merit.	Un homme pauvre, a poor man.
Un plaisant conte, an absurd tale.	Un conte plaisant, a pleasant tale.
Un petit homme, a small man.	Un homme petit, a mean man.
Ma propre main, my own hands.	Les mains propres, clean hands.
Une sage femme, a midwife.	Une femme sage, a wise woman.
Un seul enfant, an only child.	Un enfant seul, a child alone.
Un simple soldat, a common soldier.	Un soldat simple, a silly soldier.
Un unique tableau, a single picture.	Un tableau unique, a matchless picture.
Un vrai conte, a downright story.	Un conte vrai, a true story.
Un vilain homme, an ugly man.	Un homme vilain, a sordid man.

Degrees of Comparison.

The Comparative is formed by placing the adverb **plus**, more, before the adjective, while **le plus** or **la plus** (fem.) is prefixed to denote the Superlative.

Positive.		Comparative.	
haut, (m.) haute, (f.)	high.	plus haut, plus haute,	higher.
beau, (m.) belle, (f.)	beautiful.	plus beau, plus belle,	beautiful.

Superlative.

le plus haut, la plus haute,	the highest.
le plus beau, la plus belle,	the most beautiful.

There is in French also a lower and lowest degree which is formed by the words **moins**, less, for the Comparative, and **le** (la) **moins**, the least, for the Superlative.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.
cher, (m.) / chère, (f.) } dear	moins cher, / moins chère, } less dear, *i. e.*, cheaper.

SUPERLATIVE.

le moins cher, / la moins chère, } the least dear, *i. e.*, the cheapest.

The following three adjectives have an irregular comparison:

Bon, f. bonne, good; meilleur, e, better; le meilleur, la meilleure, the best.

Mauvais, e, in the meaning wicked; pire, worse; le pire, f. la pire, the worst.

Petit, e, small; moindre, less; le moindre, f. la moindre, the least.

Remarks.

As before an adjective is rendered by **aussi**, **as** after **it** and **than**, are both translated by **que**. Ex.:

Il est aussi bon que moi, he is as good as I am.

Elle est plus belle que sa cousine, she is handsomer than her cousin.

Complement of Adjectives.

The complement of an adjective is either a noun or a verb preceded by a preposition, **de**, **à**, **en**, etc.

Adjectives expressive of our feelings, those denoting plenty, scarcity, or want, and those generally which are followed, in English, by *of*, *with*, or *from*, require the preposition **de** before the dependent noun or infinitive.

Je suis content de ce travail.	I am satisfied with this work.
Je suis heureux de vous le dire.	I am happy to tell you so.
Êtes-vous fâché de l'apprendre?	Are you sorry to hear it?
Il est court d'argent.	He is short of money.
La vie est pleine de misère.	Life is full of misery.
Comblé de faveurs; libre de blâme.	Loaded with favors; free from blame.

Adjectives which denote fitness, disposition, inclination, advantage, likeness and the opposite qualities, require the preposition **à** before the dependent noun, and also before the dependent infinitive, provided they are not construed with the impersonal verb **il est**, it is.

Il est propre à tout.	He is fit for anything.
Il est disposé à vous rendre service.	He is disposed to oblige you.
Ces circonstances sont favorables à notre projet.	These circumstances are favorable to our project.
C'est une chose difficile à faire.	That is a difficult thing to do.
La religion est nécessaire à l'homme.	Religion is necessary to man.

But these, and all other adjectives, when they are construed with the impersonal verb **il est**, it is, require the preposition **de** before the dependent infinitive.

Il est utile de savoir cela.	It is useful to know that.
Il est difficile de contenter tout le monde.	It is difficult to please everybody.
Il est nécessaire de lui en parler.	It is necessary to speak to him about it.

REM.—A few adjectives are followed by **à** in French and by *of* in English; as:

Je suis sensible à votre bonté.	I am sensible of your kindness.

A few others are followed in French by **à**, and in English by *in;* as:

Il est exact à remplir ses devoirs.	He is punctual in fulfilling his duties.

Government of Adjectives.

The following is a list of adjectives with the prepositions which they require:

Adroit à, dexterous in.
Affable à, envers, affable to.
Alarmant pour, alarming to.
Antérieur à, prior to.
Apre à, eager for.
Ardent à, ardent for.
Assidu à, auprès de, assiduous in, to.
Attentif à, attentive to, mindful of.
Aveugle sur, blind to.
Avide de, eager for, greedy of.
Capable de, capable of.
Célèbre par, pour, famous for.
Chéri de, cherished by.
Civil envers, à l'égard de, civil to.
Commun à, avec, common to.
Comparable à, avec, comparable to.
Complice de, accessory to.
Connu de, known to.
Consolant pour, consolatory to.
Constant dans, en, constant to.
Cruel à, envers, cruel to.
Dangereux pour, à, dangerous to.
Endurci à, contre, dans, hardened, inured to.
Esclave de, slave to.
Fâché de, contre, sorry for, angry with.
Faible de, en, deficient in.
Fameux par, dans, en, famous for, renowned in.
Fort en, de, strong by.
— en, sur, à, skilled in, on.
Fou de, mad after, doting on.
Furieux de, enraged at.
Gros de, big with.
Habile à, dans, en, skilful, clever in.
Heureux à, dans, en, lucky in.
— de, happy to.
Ignorant en, sur, de, ignorant of, in.
Impatient de, impatient for, at.
Incapable de, incapable of, unable to.
Indulgent à, pour, envers, indulgent to.
Inébranlable à, contre, dans, steadfast in.
Ingrat envers, ungrateful to.
Inquiet de, sur, uneasy for, about.
Insolent avec, insolent to.
Invisible à, pour, invisible to.
Ivre de, intoxicated with.
Justiciable de, amenable to.
Las de, weary of, to.
Lent dans, à, slow in, to.
Libre de, free from, at liberty to.
Libéral de, envers, liberal of, towards.
Nécessaire à, pour, necessary to.
Offensé de, offended at.
Officieux envers, officious to.
Patient à, dans, à l'égard de, patient to.
Prêt à, ready to.
Prodigue de, en, envers, prodigal of, to.
Reconnaissant de, grateful, thankful for.
Responsable de, envers, accountable for, to.
Sensible à, sensible of.
Sévère pour, envers, à l'égard de, severe to.
Voisin de, neighboring to.

The Determining Adjectives.

I. Possessive.

Sing. Masc.	Sing. Fem.	Plural.
Mon,	Ma,	Mes —My.
Ton,	Ta,	Tes —Thy.
Son,	Sa,	Ses —His *or* Her.
Notre,	Notre,	Nos —Our.
Votre,	Votre,	Vos —Your.
Leur,	Leur,	Leurs —Their.

N. B.—The possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the possessed object; not with the possessor, as in English.

Thus, a man and a woman will say alike:

Ma mère; mon père; mon livre; ma lettre.

1. The possessive adjectives are not used with parts of the body, but **le, la, les** instead, whenever there is no danger of confusion of meaning, thereby. Thus:

J'ai les yeux fatigués,	My eyes are tired.
Vous avez les mains enflées.	Your hands are swollen.

2. The possessive adjectives, however, are used:

a. When we wish to emphasize the part spoken of, as:

Il arrêta ses yeux sur l'inconnu, et dit: C'est lui.	He fixed his eyes upon the stranger, and said: It is he.

b. To express something that is habitual and special, as:

J'ai ma migraine.	I have my (usual) sick headache.
Je souffre à ma jambe.	I have pain in my limb (the particular one).

c. When the use of the article would render the sense ambiguous; as:

Je vois que ma main s'enfle.	I see that my hand is swelling.

If **la** were substituted for **ma**, the sense would be ambiguous, for it would not be clear whose hand was meant.

3. The noun preceded by the possessive adjective **leur**, is put in the singular when it is applied in a general sense, and in the plural when it has an individual or distributive application; as:

Bien des hommes passent leur vie à amasser des richesses dont ils ne jouissent pas.	Many men spend their lives in amassing wealth which they do not enjoy.
Ils ont sacrifié leurs vies á la patrie.	They sacrificed their lives to their country.

4. **Mon, ton, son** are used instead of ma, ta, sa, before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or silent **h**:

Mon encre—My ink (instead of ma encre).
Mon amie—My friend (instead of ma amie).

5. With **mal, froid,** and **chaud** the article is used instead of the possessive adjective:

J'ai mal au bras; *not*, à mon bras.
J'ai froid aux mains; *not*, à mes mains.

6. The possessive adjectives are repeated before each noun; as:

Son père, sa mère et ses sœurs ont quitté la ville hier.	His father, mother and sisters left the city yesterday.

Demonstrative Adjectives.

The Demonstrative Adjective, sometimes called a demonstrative pronoun, is rendered:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. ce, ces *Fem.* cette	this *or* that.	*Masc.* *Fem.*	ces, these *or* those.

The demonstrative adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number; as:

ce cheval,	this horse.
cette maison,	this house.
ces enfants,	these children

The form cet is employed for the masculine instead of ce, when preceding a noun beginning with a vowel or mute h; as:

cet homme,	this man.
cet arbre,	this tree.
cet agent,	this agent.

The demonstrative adjective, **ce, cet, cette, ces,** does not point out persons or things by their relative position, as *this* and *that* do in English. The adverbs **ci** and **là** are used for that purpose. The use of these adverbial adjuncts is, however, only resorted to when this distinction is necessary, or when we wish to lay stress on the demonstrative.

We say, without emphasis:

Ce livre ne m'appartient pas.	This book does not belong to me.
Cette fleur sent bon.	That flower smells good.

But we say, with emphasis:

Cette année-ci finira bientôt.	The year will soon end.
Ce jour-là sera à jamais mémorable. dans l'histoire de notre pays.	That day will forever be memorable in the history of our country.

The demonstrative adjective is repeated before each noun; as:

Ces messieurs et ces dames.	These gentlemen and ladies.

Numeral Adjectives.

1. The numeral adjectives are given in Books I and II.

2. The numeral adjective **un, une,** is used in French when no equivalent is used for it in English, in cases like the following: Il a un grand talent pour la musique, he has great talent for music. We say: Il a du talent pour la musique, with the noun in the partitive sense. But the partitive sense is changed into the indefinite sense by the use of the adjunct **grand,** which gives individuality to the noun. The following are examples:

Il m'a reçu avec bonté.	He received me with kindness.
Il m'a reçu avec une bonté marquée.	He received me with marked kindness.
Il a montré du courage.	He showed courage.
Il a montré un courage étonnant.	He showed astonishing courage.
Ils sont animés d'ardeur.	They are animated with ardor.
Ils sont animés d'une ardeur extraordinaire.	They are animated with extraordinary ardor.

3. The numeral adjectives **un, vingt** and **cent,** are the only cardinal numbers which can take the plural form.

Rem.—But **vingt** and **cent** are invariable when they are used for the ordinal numbers **vingtième** and **centième**; as: page quatre-vingt, page eightieth; l'an mil huit cent, in the year one thousand eight hundred.

4. The adjective **mille** is written **mil,** only when used to express the Christian era; as: mil huit cent soixante-dix-sept. In all other cases the form **mille** is used; as: l'an deux mille de la création.

5. **Cent** and **mille,** as limiting adjectives, are not preceded by the numeral **un.** But limiting adjectives,

when used as nouns, may be preceded by a limiting word; as:

Un cent d'huitres.	One hundred oysters.
Un mille de briques.	One thousand bricks.

6. The ordinal numeral adjectives take the gender and number of the noun which they limit; as:

Les premiers livres.	The first books.
Les premières leçons.	The first lessons.

REM.—The ordinal number **unième**, *first*, and not **premier**, is used in connection with other numbers; as: vingt et unième, cent-unième, etc. **Unième** is never used alone.

7. **Second** and **deuxième** should not be used indiscriminately. **Second** indicates order, **deuxième** denotes one of a series, and is correctly used only when a third, a fourth, etc., are supposed to exist: Le second tome, the second volume; la deuxième leçon, the second lesson.

8. The cardinal numbers are used instead of the ordinal:

a. For the days of the month, except the first.

Le premier (de) janvier.	The first of January.
Le deux février.	The second of February.
Le trois mars.	The third of March.
Nous partirons le quinze avril.	We shall start on the 15th of April.

REM.—The preposition **de** before the names of the months is generally omitted, and no preposition is used before the date.

5. After the names of sovereigns, and in quoting chapters, paragraphs and pages of books, except for the first of the series. **Second** may be used instead of **deux.**

François premier.	Francis the First.
Henri quatre.	Henry the Fourth.
Chapitre deux, page huit.	Chapter the second, page eight.

Of the Pronoun.—Du Pronom.

General Remarks.

A pronoun stands in the place of a noun, with which it agrees in gender and number. But all pronouns do not represent nouns.

Some pronouns are used absolutely, that is, they do not refer to an antecedent noun; such are the interrogative pronouns, **qui, que, quoi,** and the indefinite pronouns, **un, chacun, quelqu'un,** etc.

Pronouns used absolutely are of the masculine gender and singular number.

1. The invariable pronoun **le** represents an adjective, a sentence, or a verb; as:

Etes-vous malade? Je le suis.[1]	Are you sick? I am (so).
Vous ne travaillez pas comme vous le faisiez autrefois.	You do not work as you used to.

2. The pronouns **en** and **y** sometimes represent sentences; as:

Vous ne m'en avez pas parlé.	You did not speak to me about it.
Je n'y ai pas pensé.	I did not think of it.

[1]When the attribute is a noun, the personal pronoun representing it agrees with the noun in gender and number: Etes-vous la malade? Je la suis. Ces dames sont-elles mariées? (*adj*). Elles le sont (le invariable). Sont-ce les dames dont vous avez parlé? Ce les sont, *or* ce sont elles.

3. The demonstrative pronouns **ce, ceci, cela,** may also represent sentences.

Ce que je dis est vrai.	What I say is true.
C'est étonnant.	That is astonishing.
Qui vous a dit cela?	Who told you that?

Personal Pronouns—Conjunctive.

The personal conjunctive pronouns have been explained. See pages 312 to 320.

1. The pronoun **vous** may represent the second person singular or plural. The verb agrees with it in the plural.

Vous (sing.) n'êtes pas capable de faire cela vous-même.	You are not able to do that yourself.
Vous (plur.) n'êtes pas capables de faire cela vous-mêmes.	You are not able to do that yourselves.

2. The ellipsis of a part of a sentence, so common in English, particularly in answering questions, when the subject and the verb, often only an auxiliary verb, are given, and the remaining part of the predicate is understood, is not admissible in French. All the parts of the sentence must be represented in French.

Il est studieux; vous ne l'êtes pas.	He is studious; you are not (so).
Il a de la patience; vous n'en avez pas.	He has patience; you have not(any).
Nous étions amis autrefois; nous ne le sommes plus.	We used to be friends; we are not now (so).
Avez-vous dit cela? Oui, je l ai dit.	Have you said so? Yes, I have (said so). Did you say so? Yes, I did (say so).

3. **En** and **y**. The pronouns **en** and **y** are always indirect objects; **en** represents the relation af the preposition **de**, and **y** the relation of the preposition **à**. They are used with reference to things, for both genders and both numbers.

Laissez ce livre; j'en ai besoin.	Leave the book; I need it.
Voilà du papier; prenez-en.	There is paper; take some.
Allez; j'y consens.	Go; I consent to it.

4. **En** is used with reference to persons when the sense is indeterminate; as;

Vous avez un frère; je n'en ai pas.	You have a brother; I have not (any).

5. **Y** is used with reference to persons when the sense of the noun is not precise and definite; as:

Plus on connaît le peuple, plus on s'y attache.	The better we know the common people, the more we become attached to them.

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

The disjunctive personal pronouns are:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Moi, I, *or* me.	Nous, we, *or* us.
Toi, thou, *or* thee.	Vous, you.
Lui, he, *or* him.	Eux, they *or* them (m.).
Elle, she, *or* her.	Elles, they, *or* them (f.).

Soi, himself, herself, itself, themselves, one's self.

The disjunctive personal pronouns are used:

1. When the verb is not expressed; as:

Qui m'appelle? Moi.	Who calls me? I.
Qui appelle-t-il? Moi.	Whom does he call? Me.
Vous êtes plus grand que moi.	You are taller than I.

2. In apposition with other pronouns, for the sake of emphasis, also to state separately the persons forming a compound subject or object:

Toi, tu es l'homme.	Thou art the man.
Lui et moi (nous) sommes amis.	He and I are friends.

3. After the verb **être**, to be, when it is preceded by **ce**.

C'est moi. C'est lui.	It is I. It is he.

4. After the prepositions:

Il parle de moi.	He speaks of me.
Je vais chez[1] lui.	I am going to his house.

Compound Personal Pronouns,

The adjective **même**, self, added, with a hyphen to the disjunctive personal pronouns, forms a class of pronouns called compound personal pronouns; as:

Moi-même, myself.	Nous-mêmes, ourselves.
Toi-même, thyself.	Vous-mêmes, yourselves.
Vous-même. yourself.	Eux-mêmes, themselves.
Lui-même himself	Elles-mêmes, themselves.
Elle-même herself	Soi-même, one's self.

These pronouns are used for the sake of emphasis; as:

Je l'ai vu moi-même.	I have seen it myself.
Elle se blâme elle-même.	She blames herself.

[1]The preposition **chez**, before the name of a person, and before a pronoun, is equivalent to the English expressions, *at the house of*, *to the house of*. It is the French equivalent for *home*.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

These are:

Masc.	Fem.
Celui,	celle, that.
Pl. ceux,	celles, those.
celui-ci,	celle-ci, this or the latter.
Pl. ceux-ci,	celles-ci, these.
celui-là,	celle-là, that (one) or the former.
Pl. ceux-là,	celles-là, those.

Neuter.

ce and cela (abridged ça), that; ceci, this.

1. **Ce** has only one form for both genders and numbers, Ex.: Ce fut mon ami; ce fut mon amie; ce furent mes amis; ce furent mes amies.

2. **Ce** is frequently used before the third person singular or plural with the auxiliary verb **être**, and means either this or that. C'est quelque chose que je ne connais pas. That is something (which) I do not know.—Est-ce là votre malle? Oui, c'est ma malle. Is that your trunk? Yes, that is my trunk.—Sont-ce là vos bas? Oui, ce sont mes bas. Are these your stockings? Yes, these are my stockings.

3. Celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci, are translated this, these, or this one, etc. These pronouns are used in speaking either of persons or things, when it is necessary to indicate clearly which person or thing is spoken of: This is my hat, celui-ci est mon chapeau.

Celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là, are used in the same manner, and must be translated by that, those, that one, etc.

4. Celui-ci, celle-ci, ceci, point out objects nearest to the speaker, while celui-là, celle-là, cela signify those farthest from him, as: Voici deux livres; prenez celui-ci, Charles gardera celui-là, here are two books; you take this one and Charles will keep that one.

5. Celui, celle, etc., must be used instead of celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, etc., before a relative pronoun or preposition. They are then translated very frequently by the one who, or he who, she who, they who.

It is my father's (that of my father),	c'est celui de mon père.
This horse is the one of which I spoke to you,	ce cheval est celui dont je vous ai parlé.

Of Possessive Pronouns.

1. The possessive pronouns are formed from the possessive adjectives **mon, ton, son,** etc. They are:

Le mien	la mienne, mine (my own).
le tien,	la tienne, thine.
le sien,	la sienne, his, hers, its own.
le nôtre,	la nôtre, ours.
le vôtre,	la vôtre, yours.
le leur,	la leur, theirs.

Pl. les miens, f. les miennes;—les nôtres, les vôtres, etc.

2. They agree in gender and number with the object possessed: Avez-vous votre billet? Oui, j'ai le mien. Have you your ticket? Yes, I have mine. Votre sœur est plus âgée que la mienne. Your sister is older than mine. Mon intention est aussi bonne que la vôtre. My intention is as good as yours.

Remark:—The article (**le, la, les,**) of these pronouns combines with the prepositions **de** and **à** in the usual way:

Du mien, de la mienne, des miens, des miennes=of mine.
Du sien, de la sienne, des siens, des siennes=of his, etc. And:
Au mien, à la mienne, aux miens, aux miennes—to mine.
Au leur, à la leur, aux leurs, aux leurs—to theirs.

3. Mine, his, hers, etc., are also rendered by à moi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles. For instance, in answer to the question: Whose book is this? à qui est ce livre? It's mine; or, it's his; or, it's hers, the answer may be either:

Ce livre est le mien; *or*, Ce livre est à moi.
" " " le sien; " " " " lui.
" " " le sien; " " " " elle.

Interrogative Pronouns.

Lequel? Laquelle?

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & Acc.	lequel?	laquelle?	lesquels?	lesquelles?
Gen.	duquel?	de laquelle?	desquels?	desquelles?
Dat.	auquel?	à laquelle?	auxquels?	auxquelles?

This pronoun is used either without a noun, or is separated from it by **de**; but it agrees with the noun it refers to in gender and number. When the pronoun which (of) is used interrogatively, it is always expressed by **lequel, laquelle,** etc., as:

Lequel de ses fils est malade?	Which of his sons is ill?
Laquelle de vos sœurs est mariée?	Which of your sisters is married?
Voici plusieurs appartements. Le quel choisirez-vous?	Here are several apartments. Which will you choose?
Auquel de ces messieurs avez-vous donné ma lettre?	To which of these gentlemen have you given my letter?

Qui? Quoi? Quel

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	Qui, who?	Que, quoi, what?
Gen.	de qui, whose, of whom? from whom?	de quoi, of what? from what?
Dat.	à qui, to whom, whom?	à quoi, to what, at what?
Acc.	qui, whom?	que, quoi, what?

Remarks.

1. The interrogative pronoun **qui?** is only used of persons. Ex.:

Qui est arrivé?	Who has arrived?
Qui est là?	Who is there?
De qui parlez-vous?	Of whom are you speaking?
A qui est cette malle?	To whom does this trunk belong?
Qui cherchez-vous?	Whom are you looking for?

2. Whose, when used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by **à qui.** Ex.:

Whose book is this?	À qui est livre?
Whose trunk is this?	À qui est cette malle?

3. **Quoi,** what, is disjunctive, and is used either by itself, or after a preposition, as:

De quoi parlez-vous?	Of what are you speaking?
Quoi! vous êtes marié!	What! you are married!
Quoi! il ne veut pas le faire?	What! he will not do it?

4. **Que!** what! is conjunctive, and is only used before verbs, as:

Que voulez-vous?	What do you want?
Que demandez-vous?	What do you desire?
Qu'avez-vous vu?	What have you seen?
Qu'avez-vous?	What is the matter with you?

Que as an interrogative, means what, *never* whom.

5. Instead of the simple form **qui?** the form **qui est-ce qui,** who? is very frequently used for the nominative, and **qui est-ce que,** whom? for the accusative (*i. e.*, objective case).

Qui est-ce qui rit?	Who is laughing?
Qui est-ce que vous cherchez?	Whom are you looking for?
Qui est-ce qui l'a fait?	Who has done it?
Qui est-ce que vous avez vu?	Whom have you seen?

6. Instead of the simple form **que?** what? the form **qu'est-ce que?** or even **qu'est-ce que c'est que?** is frequently used, but only for the accusative (objective case).

Qu'est-ce que vous voulez?	What do you want?
Qu'est-ce que vous faites là?	What are you doing there?

7. What—when nominative—may be given by **qu'est-ce qui?** It must, however, be always the subject of the sentence and the pupil must be careful not to confound **qui est-ce qui?** who? with **qu'est-ce qui?** what?

Qu'est-ce qui vous afflige?	What afflicts you?
Qu'est-ce qui vous étonne?	What astonishes you?
Qu'est-ce qui vous manque?	What are you missing?

8. Observe the following idiomatic phrases:

Qu'est-ce que cela? Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?	what is that?
Qu'est-ce que la vie? Qu'est-ce que c'est que la vie?	what is life?
Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau? Qu'est-ce qu'il y a de nouveau?	what is the news?

NOTE.—The interrogative adjective *what*, joined to a noun, is always expressed by **quel,** fem. **quelle.**—Ex : Quelle est la difficulté qui vous arrête, what is the difficulty that detains you?

Relative Pronouns.

The interrogative pronouns **qui, quoi, and lequel** serve also as relative pronouns. The declension of quoi and lequel has been given. That of qui, when relative, differs from the interrogative qui.

SINGULAR and PLURAL.	MASCULINE and FEMININE.
Nom.	**qui,** who, which, that.
Gen.	**de qui** and **dont,** whose, of (from) whom, of which.
Dat.	**à qui,** to whom.
Acc.	**que,** whom, which, that.

1. Who, which, and that are rendered by **qui,** when they are in the Nominative case, whether they refer to persons or things, both for the singular and plural.

L'employé qui a écrit cette lettre, n'est pas ici.	The clerk who wrote this letter is not here.
Passez-moi le plat qui est sur la table.	Hand me the dish which is on the table.
Les hommes qui l'ont dit, sont partis hier soir.	The men who said it left last night.

2. The same pronouns—when in the Accusative—whom, which, that, are rendered by **que.**

Est-ce là le chapeau neuf que vous avez acheté?	Is that the new hat which you have bought?
La leçon que vous m'avez donnée, est très difficile.	The task which you have given me is very difficult.

Observe that the French must always express the relative pronoun, though we frequently omit it.

3. **Dont,** *whose, of which,* is used for persons and things of both genders and numbers.

Voici la dame dont je vous ai parlé.	Here is the lady of whom I spoke to you.
C'est le monsieur dont il a acheté le cheval.	That is the gentleman whose horse he bought.
C'est une maladie dont on ne connaît point la cause.	That is an illness the cause of which is unknown.
Est ce là le jardin dont vous m'avez parlé?	Is that the garden of which you spoke to me?

4. The Genitive de qui (both singular and plural) and the Dative à qui, to whom, are used only when referring to persons.[1]

Le négociant de qui j'ai reçu ces échantillons, vient de faire banqueroute.	The merchant from whom I received these patterns has just become bankrupt.
Voilà le monsieur à qui j'ai donné votre lettre.	There is the gentleman to whom I gave your letter.

When, however, animals or inanimate objects are spoken of, auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, or auxquelles, must be used.

Tel est le bonheur auquel j'aspire.	Such is the fortune to which I aspire.
C'est le chien auquel j'ai donné à manger.	That is the dog which I fed (—to which I gave to eat).
C'est une occasion à laquelle je ne pensais pas.	That is an occasion I did not think of.

5. Difference between **dont, de qui,** and the genitives of **lequel.**

---

[1]**Qui** is mostly used after prepositions when persons are referred to; but after **entre,** between, and **parmi,** among, we must always write **lesquels** or **lesquelles,** whether persons or things are spoken of.

Dont is used when it is governed by a noun which stands either in the nominative or accusative case; as:

Voici le monsieur dont je vous ai parlé.	There is the gentleman of whom I spoke to you.
Voilà une fleur dont la forme est très curieuse.	There is a flower whose form is very strange.
La dame dont vous voyez le portrait est à présent à Berlin.	The lady whose portrait you see is at present in Berlin.
Les messieurs dont j'instruis les enfants, est très riche	The gentlemen whose children I instruct is very rich.

Du de qui, or **duquel, de laquelle,** etc., must be employed when the noun which follows whose is in any other case than the Nominative or Accusative or is governed by a preposition (De qui refers only to persons, while duquel, de laquelle, etc., may be used both for persons and for things); as:

Les amis sur qui vous comptez, vous abandonneront.	The friends on whom you count will forsake you.
C'est un homme à la discrétion de qui vous pouvez vous fier.	He is a man to whose discretion you may trust.
J'honore cet homme aux bontés duquel (or de qui) je dois ma fortune.	I honor this man, to whose kindness I owe my fortune.
C'est un régiment à la valeur duquel l'ennemi n'a pu résister.	That's a regiment whose valor the enemy has been unable to resist.
C'est un jeune homme sur la parole de qui (or duquel) on ne peut pas compter	That is a young man upon whose word one cannot rely.

6. **Lequel, laquelle,** etc., are used after prepositions when reference is made to things, while **qui** must be employed when persons are referred to; as:

Voilà le banc sur lequel je me suis assis.	Here is the bench on which I sat.
C'est une condition sans laquelle il ne veut rien faire.	That is a condition without which he will do nothing.

But:

Le marchand avec qui[1] j'ai voyagé, est mort.	The merchant with whom I travelled is dead.

7. **Lequel, laquelle,** etc., must be used instead of **qui** or **que,** when by the use of the latter pronouns an ambiguity might arise; as:

La tante de mon ami laquelle demeure à Londres.	My friend's aunt who lives in London.

(**qui** demeure à Londres, would mean: The aunt of my friend who is living in London, and would signify that the friend lives in London).

J'ai vu le cocher de votre cousine, lequel viendra vous voir.	I have seen your cousin's coachman, who will call on you.

8. Such expressions as he who, she who, they who, those who, must be rendered by celui qui, celle **qui** (fem.); ceux qui (pl. m.); celles qui (pl. f.); as:

Celui qui est content, est riche.	He who is contented is rich.
Je l'enverrai à celle que j'aime le mieux.	I will send it to her whom I love best.
Je parle de celui que nous avons vu chez le médecin allemand.	I speak of the one we saw at the German physician's.
J'ai donné le livre à celle qui a trouvé la clef avec laquelle votre sœur a ouvert la porte.	I gave the book to that one who found the key with which your sister opened the door.

9. That which *or* what, meaning really "that thing which," is rendered by **ce qui** for the Nominative, and

[1] **Qui** always remains unchanged, even before a vowel or h voyelle, as: L'homme qui arrive;—à qui il parle—à qui elle pense;—de qui on se plaint.

ce que for the Accusative. All that is rendered by **tout ce qui** for the Nominative, and **tout ce que** for the Accusative; as:

Aimez tout ce qui est bon et beau.	Love all that (or everything which) is good and beautiful.
Faites ce que je vous dis.	Do what I tell you.
Ce qui est beau n'est pas toujours bon.	What is beautiful is not always good.

10. Proverbs and general statements usually commence with **qui**, whoever; as:

Qui sert les malheureux sert la divinité.	Whoever helps unhappy persons helps Providence.
Qui casse les verres, les paie.	Who breaks (the glasses), pays (for them).

11. **Quoi**, *what*, is only used after prepositions referring to a whole sentence, or to voilà, voici, ce, rien.

Voilà de quoi il m'a entretenu.	That is what he entertained me with.
Je sais à quois vous pensez.	I know what you are thinking of.
C'est à quoi je pense le moins.	This is a thing of which I think least.
De quoi s'agit-il là?	What is the matter there?
À quoi s'occupe-t-il?	What is he occupied with?
Il faut qu'il signe le contrat; sans quoi il sera nul.	He must sign this contract; otherwise it will be void.
Avez-vous de quoi payer ces factures?	Have you enough to pay for these bills?
Il n'a pas de quoi vivre.	He has not wherewith to live.

Indefinite Pronouns.

The indefinite pronouns are:

Autrui, others.	On, one, some one, people, they.
Chacun, everyone; each.	Personne (ne), nobody.
L'un l'autre, each other.	Quelqu'un, somebody.
L'un et l'autre, both.	Quelques-uns, some; a few.
L'un ou l'autre, either.	Quiconque, whoever.
Ni l'un ni l'autre (ne), neither.	Un de, one of.

The following indefinite adjectives are also used as pronouns:

Aucun (ne,) Nul (ne), Pas un (ne), } no one; none.	Plusieurs, several; many.
	Tel, such a one.
	Tout, all; everything.

1. **Autrui,** *others,* is used with reference to persons only, as an indirect object.

Ne riez pas des défauts d'autrui.	Do not laugh at other people's faults.

2. **Chacun,** *every one,* used absolutely, is invariable and applies to persons only.

Chacun pense à soi.	Every one thinks of himself.

3 **Chacun,** limited by a complement, may refer to either persons or things, and agrees with the noun in gender.

Chacun de ces messieurs.	Each of those gentlemen.
Chacune de ces maisons.	Each of those houses.

4. **L'un l'autre,** *each other, the one the other,* is used with pronominal verbs to distinguish recipocral from reflective action; as:

Ils aiment l'un autre.	They love each other.

5. **When l'un l'autre** refers to several **persons, it is** put in the plural; **as:**

Les hommes se trompent les uns les autres.	Men deceive each other.

6. **L'un** is subject, and **l'autre** is object; the latter only can be preceded by a preposition; **as:**

Ils sont contents l'un de l'autre.	They are pleased with one another.

7. **L'un—l'autre,** used separately, mean *the former—the latter, some—some, some—others.*

L'un instruit. l'autre amuse.	The former instructs, the latter amuses.
Les uns rient, les autres pleurent.	Some laugh, some weep.
Les uns chantent, d'autres dansent.	Some sing, others dance.

8. **L'un et l'autre,** *both;* **l'un ou l'autre,** *either;* **ni l'un ni l'autre,** *neither;* refer to antecedent nouns, with which they agree in gender and number.

L'un et l'autre, à mon sens, ont le cerveau troublé.	Both, in my opinion, are unsettled in their minds.

When **l'un et l'autre** is the object of a verb, a personal pronoun is used to represent the object before the verb.

Je les ai vus l'un et l'autre.	I saw them both.
Je veux leur parler à l'un et à l'autre.	I wish to speak to both.

9. **L'un ou l'autre,** *either the one or the other.* The verb agrees with the latter of the two.

L'un ou l'autre viendra.	Either the one or the other will come.

10. **On.** This pronoun represents indefinitely the subject of the verb: we, you, they, one, people, some one, any one.

On is often used in French with the active form of the verb, when in English the passive form is used; as:

On a apporté ce paquet pour vous.	This packet was brought for you.
On peut le voir à son bureau.	He may be seen at his office.
On le fait tous les jours.	It is done every day.

11. **On** is repeated before each verb that refers to the same subject which the first **on** represents.

On n'est pas heureux quand on est malade.	One is not happy when sick.
On vient et l'on va.	People come and go.

12. **Quelqu'un.** This pronoun used absolutely is masculine. When it is followed by a complement, it takes the gender of the limiting noun.

Il y a quelqu'un qui vous demande.	There is somebody inquiring for you.
Si quelqu'une de ces dames vous prie de chanter, faites-le.	If any one of these ladies should ask you to sing, do it.

Rem.—**Quelqu'un** requires **de** before the past participle which refers to it.

Est-il quelqu'un de blessé?	Is there anybody hurt?

13. **Personne**, *nobody*, an indefinite pronoun, is masculine. **Personne**, *a person*, is a feminine noun.

Personne n'a été oublié.	No one has been forgotten.
Une personne a été oubliée.	One person has been forgotten.

When **personne** is modified by an attribute which refers to a particular person, the attribute agrees in gender with the person; as:

Personne n'est plus votre servante qu'elle.	No one is more your servant than she.

REM.—**Personne,** *nobody,* like **quelqu'un,** requires **de** before the past participle which refers to it; as:

Il n'y a personne de blessé.	There is nobody hurt.

14. **Personne,** and not **quelqu'un,** is used in sentences implying doubt, or containing some other negative word; also after a comparative adverb.

Y a-t-il personne qui en doute?	Is there any one who doubts it?
Il est parti sans payer personne.	He left without paying anybody.
Tu sais cela mieux que personne.	Thou knowest that better than any one.

15. **Quelques-uns,** *a few,* agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Prenez quelques-unes de ces poires.	Take a few of these pears.
J'en prendrai quelques-unes.	I shall take a few of them.

16. **Quiconque,** *whoever,* used absolutely, is masculine.

Quiconque est capable de mentir est indigne d'être compté au nombre des hommes.	Whoever is capable of telling a falsehood is nnworthy of being considered a man.

17. Some of the indefinite adjectives are also used as indefinite pronouns: pas un, aucun, nul, autre, plusieurs, tel, and tout; as:

Pas une de ces demoiselles n'a su répondre à mes questions.	Not one of these young ladies was able to answer my questions.
Aucune ne mérite une récompense.	No one deserves a reward.
Nul ne sait cela mieux que lui.	No one knows it better than he.
Si tu veux qu'on t'épargne, épargne aussi les autres.	If you wish to be spared, spare also others.
Plusieurs ont traité ce sujet différemment.	Several have treated that subject differently.
Il a tout appris.	He has heard everything.
Tel rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain.	Many a one laughs to-day who will weep to-morrow.

Of the Adverb.—De l'Adverbe.

Adverbs may express manner, place, time, order, quantity, comparison, negation, doubt, etc.

List of Simple Adverbs.

Ailleurs, elsewhere.
Ainsi, thus; so.
Alentour, around.
Alors, then; at that time.
Assez, enough.
Aucunement, by no means.
Aujourd'hui, to-day.
Auparavant, before.
Aussi, also; as.
Aussitôt, immediately.
Autant, as much.
Autrefois, formerly.
Autrement, otherwise.
Beaucoup, much.
Bien, well.
Bientôt, soon.
Certes, certainly.
Céans, within; here within.
Cependant, meanwhile.
Ci, here.
Combien, how much.
Comme, as, like.
Comment, how.
Davantage, more.
Dedans, within.
Dehors, outside.
Déjà, already.
Demain, to-morrow.
Derrière, behind.
Désormais, henceforth.
Dessous, under; below.
Dessus, over above.
Devant, before.
Dorénavant, henceforth.
Encore, still.
Enfin, in short; in fine.
Ensemble, together.
Ensuite, then; afterwards.
Environ, about.
Exprès, purposely.
Fort, very; very much.
Gratis, gratuitously.
Guère, but little.
Hier, yesterday.
Ici, here.
Incessamment, incessantly.
Jadis, once; in former times.
Jamais, ever; never.
Jusque, till; until.
Là, there.
Loin, far.
Longtemps, long.
Lors, then.
Maintenant, now.
Mal, badly.
Même, even; also.
Mieux, better.
Moins, less.
Naguère, not long since.
Ne, not.
Néanmoins, notwithstanding.
Non, no.
Notamment, specially.
Nuitamment, by night.
Nullement, by no means.
Où, where.
Oui, yes.
Parfois, at times.
Partout, everywhere.
Pas, not.

Peu, little.
Pis, worse.
Plus, more.
Plutôt, rather.
Pourtant, however.
Près, close; nearly.
Presque, almost.
Puis, then.
Quand, when.
Quant à, with regard to; as to.
Quasi, almost.
Que (for Combien), how.
Quelquefois, sometimes.
Sciemment, knowingly.
Si, so.
Si, yes.
Soudain, suddenly.
Souvent, often.
Surtout, especially.
Tant, so much.
Tantôt, by and by; a little while ago.
Tard, late.
Tôt, soon,
Toujours, always.
Toutefois, however.
Très, very.
Trop, too; too much.
Vite, quickly.
Volontiers, willingly.
Y (là), there.

List of Compound Adverbs.

À jamais, forever.
À la fois, at a time; at once.
À l'envi, in emulation of.
À part, aside.
Après-demain, the day after tomorrow.
À présent, at present.
À regret, with regret.
Au moins, at least.
Au reste, besides.
Avant-hier, the day before yesterday.
Çà et là, here and there.
Ci-après, hereafter.
Ci-contre, on the other side.
Ci-inclus, inclosed.
Ci-joint, annexed.
D'abord, at first.
D'accord, agreed.
D'ailleurs, moreover.
De là, hence.
De même, likewise.
De plus, besides.
De suite, in succession.
Dès lors, since then.
D'ici, from here.
D'ordinaire, usually.
D'où, whence.
Du moins, at least.
Du reste, however.
En avant, forward.
En sus, over and above.
Jusque là, so far.
Là-dessus, upon that; thereupon.
Ni plus ni moins, neither more nor less.
Non plus, not either.
Nulle part, nowhere.
Par hasard, by chance.
Pêle-mêle, pell-mell.
Peut-être, perhaps.
Plus tôt, sooner.
Quelque part, somewhere.
Sans doute, undoubtedly.
Tôt ou tard, sooner or later.
Tour à tour, in turn.
Tout à l'heure, presently; just now.
Tout de suite, immediately.
Une fois, once.
Tout à coup, suddenly.
Tout d'un coup, in one stroke.

Formation of Adverbs in ment.

1. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives by the addition of the syllable **ment**. When the adjective ends with a vowel, **ment** is added to the masculine form; when it ends with a consonant, to the feminine form, as:

Poli, polite.	*adv.*, poliment, politely.
Ordinaire, usual.	" ordinairement, usually.
Seul, f., seule, alone.	" seulement, only.
Doux, f., douce, soft.	" doucement, softly; gently.

REMARK.—**Beau**, beautiful; **nouveau**, new; **fou**, foolish; **mou**, soft, though ending in a vowel, add **ment** to the feminine forms: **bellement**, finely; **nouvellement**, newly; **follement**, foolishly; **mollement**, softly.

2. Adjectives ending in **nt**, change **nt** into **mment**, as:

Prudent, prudent,	*adv.*, prudemment, prudently.
Except,	
Lent, slow,	*adv.*, lentement, slowly.
Présent, present,	présentement, presently.

Adjectives used as Adverbs.

Many adjectives are used as adverbs, in which case they are invariable, as:

	ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.		ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
Cher,	dear,	dearly.	Bas,	low,	in a low voice.
Faux,	false,	out of tune.	Juste,	just,	correctly.
Haut,	high,	loudly.	Fort,	strong,	very; very much.

Il vend cher.	He sells dear.
Elle chante faux.	She sings out of tune.
Vous parlez trop haut.	You speak too loud.
Parlez bas.	Speak in a low voice.
Elle joue juste.	She plays correctly.
Il gèle fort.	It freezes hard.

Comparison of Adverbs.

1. Adverbs are compared in the same manner as adjectives:

Tard, late;	plus tard, later;	le plus tard, latest.
Souvent, often;	aussi souvent, as often;	moins souvent, less often.

2. The following are irregularly compared:

Bien, well;	mieux, better;	le mieux, best.
Beaucoup, much;	plus, more;	le plus, most.
Mal, badly;	pis, worse;	le pis, worst.
Peu, little;	moins, less;	le moins, least.

Adverbs Modifying Adverbs and Adjectives.

Certain adverbs, when used to modify adjectives or other adverbs, assume in this connection a different meaning.

Bien fort, *or* très-fort.	Very strong.
Fort bien, *or* très-bien.	Very well.
Assez bien.	Pretty well.
Assez joli.	Rather pretty.
Un peu tard.	Rather late.
Trop tard.	Too late.
Si aimable.	So amiable.
Tout doucement.	Quite gently.

Adverbs of Negation.

1. The adverbs of negation are:

Ne, not.	Aucunement (ne), by no means.
Pas (ne), not.	Nullement (ne), by no means.
Point (ne), not (with emphasis).	Que (ne), only, but; nothing but.
Plus (ne), no longer.	Guère (ne), but little; but few.
Jamais (ne), never.	Non, no.

REM. 1.—Adverbs of negation accompanying a verb, require ne before the verb.

Rem. 2.—The negative **pas** is generally omitted in the negative conjugation of the verbs **cesser,** to cease; **oser,** to dare; **pouvoir,** to be able; **savoir,** to know.

Elle ne cesse de pleurer.	She does not cease weeping.
Je n'ose parler de cela.	I dare not speak of that.
Je ne puis le faire.	I cannot do it.
Je ne le puis.	I cannot.
Je ne sais où il est.	I don't know where he is.

2. The adverbial phrase **du tout,** at all, is often added to negative adverbs to strengthen their sense, as, **pas du tout, point du tout.** **Du tout** is also used alone with the force of a negative.

Adverbs with a Regimen.

The adverb, being equivalent to a preposition and its object, can have no regimen; its sense is complete without it. A few adverbs, however, retain the regimen of the adjectives from which they are formed; as, **conformément,** conformably; **antérieurement,** previously, etc.

Conformément à la loi.	Conformably to law.
Antérieurement au déluge.	Previously to the deluge.

Adverbs of Quantity.

Adverbs of quantity are used with verbs and with nouns. When they are used with nouns, they require the preposition **de** before the noun, and when the noun is not expressed, it is represented in the sentence by the pronoun **en**; as:

J'ai peu d'amis et vous en avez trop.	I have few friends, and you have too many.

The adverbs of quantity are:

Assez, enough.
Autant, as much; as many.
Beaucoup, bien, much; many.
Combien, how much; how many.
Davantage, more.
Guère (ne), but little; but few.
Moins, less; plus, more.
Peu, little; few.
Tant, so much; so many.
Trop, too much; too many.

Of the Preposition.—De la Préposition.

Simple Prepositions.

Après, after.
A travers, through; across.
Avant, before.
Avec, with.
Chez, at.
Contre, against.
Dans, in.
Depuis, since.
Derrière, behind.
Dès, from.
Devant, before.
Durant, during.
En, in.
Entre, between.
Envers, towards.
Environ, about.
Excepté, except.
Hormis, except; but.
Jusque, till; until.
Malgré, in spite of.
Moyennant, by means of.
Nonobstant, notwithstanding.
Outre, besides.
Par, by.
Parmi, among.
Pendant, during.
Pour, for.
Proche, near.
Sans, without.
Sauf, safe.
Selon, according to.
Sous, under.
Suivant, according to.
Sur, on; upon.
Touchant, concerning.
Vers, towards.

Compound Prepositions.

À cause de, on account of.
À côté de, by; next to.
À couvert de, secure from.
Avant de, before.
À force de, by dint of.
À l'abri de, sheltered from.
À la faveur de, by means of
À la manière de, after the fashion
À la réserve de, excepting that.
À l'égard de, with regard to.
À l'exception de, excepted.
À l'exclusion de, excepting.
De peur de, for fear of.
À moins de, unless.

À raison de, at the rate of	Au risque de, at the risk of.
Au-dedans de, within.	Au travers de, through; across.
Au dehors de, without.	Aux dépense de, at the expense of.
Au delà de, on that side.	En deçà de, on this side.
Au-dessous de, under.	En dépit de, in spite of.
Au-dessus de, upon.	En présence de, in presence of.
Au-devant de, before.	Ensuite de, after.
Autour de, around.	Faute de, for want of.
Au lieu de, instead of.	Hors de, out of.
Au milieu de, in the middle of.	Le long de, along.
Au moyen de, by means of.	Loin de, far from.
Au niveau de, even with.	Près de, near.
Au péril de, at the peril of.	Quant à, as for; as to.
Auprès de, near; by.	Vis-à-vis de, opposite to.
Au prix de, at the expense of.	

On the Use of Certain Prepositions.

À, *at, in, to,* is used with reference to place and time.

À Boston comme à Paris.	In Boston as in Paris.
D'ici à Rome.	From here to Rome.
D'ici à quelques jours.	A few days hence.
Remettons cela à demain.	Let us put that off until to-morrow.
À temps. À l'heure.	In time (not too late). On time (right time).

The preposition à expresses many relations; it denotes:

1. direction towards an object; as:

Face à face. Vis à vis.	Face to face. Opposite.
Exposé au soleil.	Exposed to the sun.

2. Tendency in action; as:

Une disposition à se plaindre.	A disposition to complain.
La promptitude à faire.	The readiness to act.
Je commence à vous comprendre.	I begin to understand you.
Il aime à se faire valoir.	He likes to put himself forward.

3. That something is to be, or should be, done; as:

C'est une chose à faire.	It is a thing to be done.
L'avis n'est pas à mépriser.	The advice is not to be despised.
Terre à vendre ou à louer.	An estate for sale or to let.

4. That an action is in progress; as:

Ils sont à discuter l'affaire.	They are discussing the business.

5. Possession, and succession in turn;

Ce mouchoir est à moi.	This handkerchief belongs to me.
À qui est-ce à faire?	Whose deal is it?

6. À is used before the noun expressing the measure by which a thing is sold, and the manner in which, or the instrument by which a thing is accomplished; as:

Cela se vend au poids.	That is sold by weight.
Travailler à la journée, à l'aiguille.	To work by the day, with the needle.
À la main.	By hand.

7. It is likewise used before the names of games after **jouer**, *to play*.

Jouer au trictrac, au billard.	To play backgammon, billiards.

See **à** between two nouns, and **à** between two verbs.

Avant, devant, *before.* **Avant** denotes priority; **devant,** position; as:

Il est venu avant moi.	He came before I did.
Il s'est placé devant moi.	He placed himself before me.

Before the infinitive, **avant de** is used instead of **avant**.

Je vous verrai avant de sortir.	I shall see you before I go out.

Chez, *with, among, at the house of.* **Chez** may refer to one's home or to one's country.

Chez nous, c'est bien différent.	With us, it is very different.
Chez les Romains, c'était la coutume.	Among the Romans, it was the custom.
Chacun est maître chez soi.	Every one is master in his own house.
J'ai dîné chez lui; il était absent.	I dined at his house; he was absent.

De, *of, from*, is used with reference to place, time, cause, manner, etc.

De loin et de près.	Far and near.
De ce côté-ci et de ce côté-là.	On this side and on that side.
De tous côtés.	From all sides.
De porte en porte.	From door to door.
De temps en temps.	From time to time.
De tout temps.	At all times.
De ma vie.	In my life.
De jour et de nuit.	By day and by night.
De toute la nuit.	All night long.
De quelle manière?	In what manner?
De cette manière-ci.	In this manner.
De soi-même.	Of one's own accord.
De ma part.	On my part; from me.
Il est blâmé de sa négligence.	He is blamed for his carelessness.
De quoi s'agit-il?	What is it about?
De quoi se mêle-t-il?	What does he meddle with?

De expresses a variety of relations. It is used:

1. Before a past participle which refers to a preceding numeral adjective, a collective noun, or to the words **quelqu'un** and **personne**.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un de tué?	Is there anybody killed?
Il n'y a personne de tué.	There is nobody killed.
Combien y en a-t-il de blessés?	How many are wounded?
Il y en a un grand nombre de blessés.	There are a great many wounded.

2. Before an adjective which refers to quelque chose, rien, que (interrogative), quoi; as.

Y a-t-il quelque chose de nouveau?	Is there any thing new?
Il n'y a rien de nouveau.	There is nothing new.
Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau?	What is the news?
Quoi de plus beau!	What is more beautiful!

3. Before the name of a musical instrument, after the verb **jouer**.

Jouer du violon, de la harpe.	To play on the violin, on the harp.

4. To denote, cause, means, manner, result; as:

Frapper la terre du pied.	To strike the earth with the foot.
Se couvrir de gloire.	To cover one's self with glory.
Trembler de froid.	To tremble with cold.
Mourir de faim.	To starve.
Se mêler de quelque chose.	To meddle with something.
Que voulez-vous faire de cette lettre?	What will you do with that letter?

5. Between two nouns.
6. Before nouns taken in the partitive sense.
7. With adverbs of quantity.
8. Before the infinitive, after impersonal verbs, and after verbs expressing result.
9. Before the complement of certain adjectives.
10. After **plus** and **moins** before numeral adjectives
11. Before the agent of a passive verb.

En, à, dans, *in.* À directs the mind to the locality; **dans** points to the inside of a place; **en** has a vague sense, and often forms with the noun which it precedes a kind of adverbial phrase:

Il est au magasin.	He is in (at) the store.
Il est dans le magasin.	He is in the store.
Le café est en magasin.	The coffee is stored.
À la campagne.	In the country (not in town).
En campagne.	In the field (military phrase).
Dans la dernière guerre.	In the last war.
En temps de guerre.	In times of war.

En is seldom used before a noun which is taken in the definite sense; the exceptions occur chiefly before nouns begining with a vowel; as:

En l'honneur des dieux.	In honor of the gods.
En ce cas, *or* dans ce cas.	In that case.
En ce moment, *or* dans ce moment.	At this moment.

À la ville, en ville, dans la ville, *in town.* **À la ville** is used in opposition to **à la campagne**; **en ville**, *in town*, not at home; **dans la ville**, in the city. **À la campagne** comme **à la ville**, je ne couche toujours tard. Mon père dine **en ville** aujourd'hui. **Il n'y** a pas un homme **dans la ville** qui le sache.

En is used before the names of countries of the feminine gender, **à** and the articles before the names of countries of the masculine gender.

En France. En Angleterre.	In *or* to France. In *or* to England.
Au Mexique. Au Canada.	In *or* to Mexico. In *or* to Canada.
La France, l'Angleterre, *feminine;*	le Mexique, le Canada, *masculine.*

En is used before the names of three of the seasons: **en été**, in summer; **en automne**, in autumn; **en hiver**, in winter. **À** and the article are used before printemps: **au printemps**, in spring. We may also use **dans** and the article, and always do so when the names of the seasons are taken in a definite sense: **Dans l'hiver de 1893**, in the winter of 1893.

En, dans. When used with reference to time, **dans** precedes the epoch *at which*, and **en** the period *in which* any thing has been, is to be, or can be done.

Je pars dans deux heures.	I leave in two hours (from now).
J'ai fait le trajet en deux heures.	I crossed over in two hours.

Par, *by, through.* **Par la ville**, through the city; **par où**, which way; **par ici**, this way; **par là**, that way; **par amitié**, through friendship.

Par is used before the unit of time by which anything is counted: **par jour**, a day; **par mois**, a month; **par an**, a year.

Six pour cent par an est l'intérêt légal dans l'État de New York.	Six per cent a year is the legal interest in the State of New York.

Par is used before the agent of a passive verb when the verb expresses action; but before **Dieu**, the preposition **de** is used.

Par is used after the verbs **commencer** and **finir** before the noun or verb which expresses the action with which we begin or finish.

Pour, afin de, *in order to.* **Pour** is used when the accomplishment of our purpose is within our reach; **afin de,** when the success of our effort is not sure.

Je suis venu pour vous dire cela.	I have come to tell you that.
Je lui ai montré la lettre afin de le décider à partir.	I showed him the letter in order to persuade him to leave.

Of the Conjunction.—De la Conjonction.

List of Conjunctions.

Afin que,[1] in order that.
Ainsi, thus.
Ainsi que, / Aussi bien que, } as well as.
A moins que,[1] unless.
Aussitôt que, as soon as.
Avant que,[1] before.
Bien que,[1] although.
Car, for.
Cependant, however.
Depuis que, since (temporal).
Dès que, as soon as.
Donc, then; therefore.
Et, and.
Jusqu'à ce que,[1] until.
Lorsque, when.
Mais, but.
Néanmoins, nevertheless.
Ni, neither; nor.
Ou, or.
Parce que, because.
Pendant que, while.
Pourquoi, why.
Pourtant, however.
Pour que,[1] in order that.
Pourvu que,[1] provided.
Puisque, since (causal).
Quand, when.
Que, that.
Quoique,[1] although.
Sans que,[1] unless; without.
Si, if; whether.
Tant que, as soon as.
Tandis que, while.

[1] These conjunctions require the verb in the subjunctive mode.

Remarks on certain Conjunctions.

Et, *and*, may, for emphasis, be repeated, but is generally used only between the last two of a succession of words.

Et le riche et le pauvre, etc.	Both the rich and the poor, etc.
Les plaintes, les regrets et les pleurs sont superflus.	Complaints, regrets and tears are superfluous.

Ni, *nor*, is used to join similar parts of a negative proposition, or different propositions that express negation, as:

Il ne cultive ni les lettres ni les sciences.	He neither cultivates letters nor the sciences.
Il ne ressemble pas à son frère, ni de visage ni de caractère.	He does not resemble his brother, either in face or disposition.

Ni requires **ne** before a verb in a finite mode, but not before the infinitive, nor when it precedes **que** introducing a subordinate proposition.

Je ne vous loue ni ne vous blâme.	I neither praise nor blame you.
Je ne veux ni le louer ni le blâmer.	I will neither praise nor blame him.
Je ne veux ni qu'il lise ni qu'il écrive.	I will not allow him either to read or write.

Non plus is used with **ni** in the sense of either; as:

Ni moi non plus, ni mon frère non plus.	Nor I either, nor my brother either.

Parce que, because; **car**, for. **Car** is used when the speaker alleges his own reason for what precedes; **parce que**, when the cause lies in the thing itself; as:

Je n'achète pas de ce papier, car j'en ai assez.	I do not buy any of that paper, for I have enough.
Je n'achète pas de ce papier, parce qu'il boit.	I do not buy any of that paper, because it blots.

Parce que, par ce que. The first means because; the second, from what, by that which.

Je le veux, parce que cela est juste.	I will have it, because it is right.
Je le sais par ce qu'il m'a dit.	I know it from what he told me.

Parce que, because; **puisque,** since. The first introduces the cause for the action which precedes, the second refers to it as a consequence.

Je le veux, parce que cela est juste.	I will have it, because it is right.
Je le veux, puisque cela est juste.	I will have it, since it is right.

Quoique, although; **quoi que,** anything that, whatever.

Quoiqu'il soit riche, il n'est pas heureux.	Though he is rich, he is not happy.
Quoi que vous fassiez, faites le bien.	Whatever you may do, do it well.

Que used for other Conjunctions.

The conjunction **que** may take the place of many other conjunctions. It is used:

1. For **comme** after an adjective and after adverbs of time, in sentences like the following:

Malade qu'il est, il veut sortir.	Sick as he is, he wants to go out.

2. For **combien,** in exclamatory sentences; as:

Que vous êtes bon!	How good you are!
Que de bonté vous avez pour moi!	How much kindness you show me.
Que de peine vous vous donnez!	How much trouble you take!

3. For **depuis,** after **il y a**; as:

Combien y a-t-il que votre frère est parti?	How long is it since your brother started?

4. For **lorsque,** or **quand,** after **à peine,** and after adverbial expressions denoting time; as:

À peine fus-je arrivé qu'il vint me voir.	Scarcely had I arrived when he called on me.

It would be incorrect to use **lorsque** or **quand** in these sentences.

5. For **parce que**, after **c'est**; as:

S'il ne vient pas, c'est qu'il est malade.	If he does not come, it is because he is sick.

6. For **pourquoi**, at the head of an interrogative negative sentence; and then **pas** is suppressed; as:

Que ne puis-je vous aider?	Why can I not assist you?
Que ne vient-il?	Why does he not come?

This mode of questioning denotes regret or impatience.

7. For the conjunctions afin que, jusqu'à ce que, à moins que, sans que, etc.

8. To avoid the repetition of other conjunctions.

Que used Redundantly.

Que is used redundantly:

1. Before the noun-subject, when the attribute introduced by **c'est** precedes the subject; as:

C'est un beau séjour que Paris.	Paris is a fine place to live in.
C'est une belle chose que la discrétion.	Discretion is a good thing.

When the subject is an infinitive, it is preceded by **que de**.

C'est un acte de charité que de dire la vérité.	It is an act of charity to tell the truth.

In such cases as the last, que may be omitted.

2. In exclamatory sentences, when the exclamative attribute precedes the subject; the verb is then omitted.

Quelle abnégation que la sienne!	What a self-denial his is *or* was.
Quel beau pays que la France!	What a beautiful country France is!
Quel homme que César!	What a man Cæsar was!

3. After **c'est-à-dire**, to introduce an explanatory sentence.

Nous sommes quittes maintenant, c'est-à-dire que je ne vous dois plus rien.	We are even now, that is to say, I do not owe you anything.

4, In connection with oui, si, non: oh que oui; oh que non; oh que si; je dis que oui; je crois que non, etc.

5. In elliptical expressions like the following:

Si j'étais que de vous.	If I were in your place.

Which means: Si j'étais (en la même place) que (la personne) de vous.

Il aurait tout l'or du monde qu'il ne serait pas content.	He might have all the gold in the world, yet he would not be satisfied.

Which means: Il aurait tout l'or du monde (son caractère est tel) qu'il ne serait pas content.

Si, *if; whether.* **Si** elides the vowel only before **il** and **ils**; as. s'il, s'ils.

Si, *if*, is never followed by the future tense or the conditional mood. **Si** may be replaced by que. **Si** may be followed by the pluperfect tense of the subjunctive mood.

INDEX.

The references are to pages.

a, pronunciation of 43.
à, see prepositions; verbs followed by à, 489; adjectives followed by à, 528.
Accent, 41.
Adjectives, 521; formation of the feminine form, 522; plural, 524; position, 525; difference of meaning depending on difference of place 525; comparison, 188, 526; irregular comparison, 527; complement of adjectives, 527; government of adjectives (list), 529; possessive adjectives, 530; demonstrative adjectives, 531; numeral adjectives, 84, 85, 533; adjectives followed by de, 527; adjectives followed by à, 528.
Adverbs, simple, 553; compound adverbs, 554; formation of adverbs, 555; adjectives used as adverbs, 555; comparison, 556; adverbs of negation, 556; adverbs of quantity, 557.
Age, mode of expression of, 291, 439.
ai, pronunciation of, 46.
aim, ain, nasal sounds, 47.
Alphabet, 52.
am, an, nasal sounds, 47.
Apostrophe, use of, 62, 1.
Article, the definite and its use, 512; declension, 515; partitive article, 516; indefinite article, 518; definite article used in place of our possessive adjective, 531.
au, pronunciation of, 46.
Auxiliary verbs, 434-439.
e, pronunciation of, 47, 51.
Cardinal numerals, 89, 85, 533.
Carrying on of a final consonant to following vowel (liaison), 58.
Cedilla, 47.
ch, pronunciation of, 47.
Chez, at home, 236.
c'est, 300.
Clauses, subordinate or dependent, see subjunctive.
Comparative of adjectives, 188, 526; of adverbs, 556.
Compound forms of the verbs with auxiliaries, see auxiliary verbs.
Conditional, 495.
Conditional perfect tense, 495.

Conjugation of verbs, 434; of avoir, 238, 439; of être, 442, of first conjugation, 450; of second conjugation, 456; of third conjugation, 461; of fourth conjugation, 464; of reflexive verbs, 468; of passive verbs, 472; of unipersonal verbs, 473; of irregular verbs, 475.
Conjunctions, 563; et, 564; ni, 564; non plus, 564; parce que, par ce que, puisque, quoique, quoi que, 565; que used for other conjunctions, 565; si, 568.
Conjunctive pronouns, see pronouns.
Consonants, pronunciation of, 47.
Countries, the article used with names of, 513; article not used, 514, 3.
Date, expression of, 534.
Days of week, 278.
Declension, see nouns.
Definite article, see article.
Demonstratives, see adjectives.
Dependent or subordinate clauses, see subjunctive.
Disjunctive pronouns, see pronouns.
Division of words into syllables, 51.
Double consonants, 52.
e, é, è, ê, pronunciation of, 43.
eau, pronunciation of, 46.
ei, pronunciation of, 46.
ein, nasal sound, 47.
em, nasal sound, 47.
emment, pronunciation of, 44.
en and its use, 321.
eu, pronunciation of, 47.
eun, nasal sound, 47.
Exclamations, use of quel, 543; of que and quoi, 642, 4.
Expletive ne in dependent clauses, 508.
Faire, 226.
Feminine of nouns, 520; of adjectives, 523
First conjugation, 450.
Fourth conjugation, 464.
Future tense and its use, 494.
Future perfect tense, 249; 494.
g, pronunciation of, 48.
Gender of articles, 512; of nouns, 518; of adjectives, 521; of pro 536.
Genitive case, see nouns.
gn, pronunciation of, 48.

h, pronunciation of, 48.
i, pronunciation of, 45.
Il y a, 298.
im, nasal sound, 47.
Imperfect tense, 238, 1; 492.
Impersonal verbs, 473.
in, nasal sound, 47.
Indefinite article, 518.
Indefinite pronouns, 549.
Indicative mode, 491.
Infinitive with à 489; with de 490.
Intransitive verbs see verbs.
Inverted order of sentence, 274.
Irregular verbs, 475.
j, pronunciation of, 48.
l, pronunciation of, 48; liquid l, 48.
Letters, French names of, 52.
m, pronunciation of, 49.
Material, expressed by nouns with de, 519.
Modes of the verbs see verbs and subjunctive mode.
Month, day of, how expressed, 534.
Mute e, 54; mute h, 48; mute consonants, 50.
n, pronunciation of, 49.
Nasal sounds, 47.
Negation, 507.
Negative coujugation see conjugation.
Nouns, 519; no adjective use of nouns, 519; no possessive case in French, 519; plural of nouns, 519; irregular plurals, 520; feminine of nouns, 520; nouns derived from verbs, 520; gender, 168; English nouns derived from French substantives, 169.
Numeral adjectives see adjectives.
o, pronunciation of, 45.
oeu, pronunciation of, 46.
oi, pronunciation of, 46.
oin, nasal sound, 47.
on, nasal sound, 47.
on, indefinite pronoun, 550.
ou, pronunciation, 46.
p, pronunciation of, 49.
Participle, 501; difference between present participle and verbal adjective, 502; rules for use of the participles, 503; the past participle, 504; participle preceded by en, 507

Passive conjugation, 472; complement of passive verbs, 473.
Past anterior tense, 193.
Past definite tense, prétérit, 208; 492.
Past indefinite or past perfect tense, 208, 493.
Past participle see participle.
Past time, use of present tense, 491; distinction between imparfait, historical and conversational tense, 208; 492.
Personal pronouns see pronouns.
Pluperfect tense, 493.
Plural of adjectives see adjectives.
Plural of nouns see nouns.
Possessive adjectives see adjectives.
Possessive pronouns see pronouns.
Prepositions, 558; à and its use, 560; avant, devant, 560; de, 561; en, dans, à, 562; par, pour. 563.
Present participle see participle.
Present tense, indicative mode, 491; subjunctive mode, 500.
Prétérit see past time.
Pronouns, 535; use of le representing an adjective or sentence, 535; personal conjunctive pronouns, 312-320; 536; disjunctive personal pronouns, 537; compound personal pronouns, 538; demonstrative pronouns. 539; possessive pronouns, 540; interrogative pronouns, 541; relative pronouns, 544; indefinite pronouns, 559.
q, pronunciation of, 49.
r, pronunciation of, 49.
Reflexive verbs, 468; list of reflexive verbs, 471.
Regular conjugation see conjugation,
Repetition of article see article.
s, pronunciation of, 49
Second regular conjugation see conjugation.
Subjunctive mode, 496-499; concord of tenses in the subjunctive, 500-502.
Subordinate conjunctions see conjunctions.
Superlative see adjective.
Syllables, division of, 50
Tenses. use of, 490-496.
Third regular conjugation see conjugation.
Transitive verbs see verbs.
u, pronunciation of, 47.
Verbs, see conjugation
x, pronunciation of, 50
y, pronunciation of. 47
z, pronunciation of, 50.

The Tr

Fr

748330

The International College of Languages

New York London

THE

French Language

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its own author, Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part I.

he International Colle
of Languages

New York London

THE

rench Languag

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE
METHOD OF PRACTICAL
LINGUISTRY

perseding the Meisterschaft System by its own au
Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 2.

e International Coll
of Languages

New York London

THE

rench Langua

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

seding the Meisterschaft System by its own
Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 3.

P48039

The International College of Languages

New York London

THE

French Language

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its own author, Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 4.

749530

e International College of Languages

New York London

THE

rench Language

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

seding the Meisterschaft System by its own author,
Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 5.

745330

The International College of Languages

New York London

THE

French Language

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its own author, Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 6.

7 0 5 7

The International Colle
of Languages

New York London

THE

French Languag

*ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE
METHOD OF PRACTICAL
LINGUISTRY*

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its own au
Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 7.

748530

The International College of Languages

New York London

THE

French Language

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its own author, Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 8.

248530

The International College of Languages

New York London

THE

French Language

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENSE METHOD OF PRACTICAL LINGUISTRY

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its own author, Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 9

The International Co
of Languages

New York Lond

THE

French Langu

ROSENTHAL'S COMMON SENS
METHOD OF PRACTICAL
LINGUISTRY

Superseding the Meisterschaft System by its o
Dr. Richard S. Rosenthal

IN TEN PARTS

Part 10.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

MAY 8 - 1918
SEP 15 1918
JAN 27 1919
SEP 15 1919
FEB 9 1918
APR 7 1927
APR 24
MAY 1921
MAY 5 1921
JAN 24 1921
APR 3 1927
Form 410

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

MAY 8 - 1918
SEP 15 1918
JUN 27 1917
SEP 15 1918
SEP 9 1918
APR 7 1927
APR 24
MAY 2 1921
MAY 5 1921
JAN 20 1921
MAR 24 1921
APR 3 1927
Form 410